User Guide - Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent

TABLE OF CONTENTS

OVERVIEW

Introduction Key Features Add-On Components Terminology

SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS - EXCHANGE MAILBOX ARCHIVER AGENT

DEPLOYMENT - EXCHANGE SERVER AGENTS

INSTALL THE 64-BIT EXCHANGE AGENTS FOR EXCHANGE SERVER 2007 OR 2010

INSTALL THE 64-BIT EXCHANGE AGENTS FOR EXCHANGE SERVER 2007 OR 2010 - CLUSTERED ENVIRONMENT

INSTALL THE 32-BIT EXCHANGE AGENTS FOR EXCHANGE SERVER 2007 OR 2010

INSTALL THE 32-BIT EXCHANGE AGENTS FOR EXCHANGE SERVER 2007 OR 2010 - CLUSTERED ENVIRONMENT

INSTALL THE EXCHANGE AGENTS ON EXCHANGE SERVER 2003

INSTALL THE EXCHANGE AGENTS ON EXCHANGE SERVER 2003 - CLUSTERED ENVIRONMENT

INSTALL THE 32-BIT EXCHANGE AGENTS ON A NON-EXCHANGE SERVER

INSTALL THE EXCHANGE AGENTS FOR EXCHANGE SERVER 2003 ON A NON-EXCHANGE SERVER

GETTING STARTED CONFIGURATION - EXCHANGE MAILBOX ARCHIVER AGENT

GETTING STARTED ARCHIVE - EXCHANGE MAILBOX ARCHIVER AGENT

GETTING STARTED RECOVER - EXCHANGE MAILBOX ARCHIVER AGENT

ADVANCED CONFIGURATION - EXCHANGE MAILBOX ARCHIVER AGENT

Understanding the CommCell Console

Grouping Mailboxes Into User-Defined Subclients

By Active Directory User Groups By Databases Using Regular Expressions Disabling Automatic Discovery

Configuring Archive Rules

Based on Message Properties Based on Disk Space Based on Stubs Based on Attachments Based on PST Files

Configure End-User Message Recovery

Configure OFL Enable/Disable Stubbing

Configure Recovery from Mobile Devices

Configure Recalls to Recovered Items Folders

Outlook Application Outlook Web Access (OWA)

Configure Recall Status Messages

For Recalls from Disk Library For Recalls from Tape Library For Recalls when Media is Outside the Library

Configure Offline Archiving

Enable Offline Archiving

Specify the Offline Archive Candidate Period

Configure Archives of PST Files

Match PST File Locations with the Exchange Server Directories Configure the Exchange Server for PST Archiving >Configure the PST Files to be Archived

Configure Archives of Disabled Mailboxes

Configure Archives of Older Messages First

Customize Outlook for End-Users

Specify a New Location for the Recovered Items Folder Display Attachment Lists in an Archived Message Body Configure Creation of Custom Folders for Mailboxes Customize Subject Line Text for Archived Messages Delete Messages from Recovered Items Folder After a Specified Time Delete Stubs from the Deleted Items Folder

Exclude Exchange Interpersonal Message (IPM) Classes from Archives

Enhancing Archive and Recovery Performance

Optimize Archiving Speed Configure Stub Recall Timeout Limit Persistent Pipeline Usage During Idle Recoveries Limit the Number of Persistent Pipelines During Recoveries

Enhancing Mailbox Discovery Using CSVDE Filter

Specifying Domain Information

Configuring Mailboxes in Database Availability Group (DAG) Servers

Filtering Subclients

Exclude Specific Mailboxes Filter Mailboxes using Regular Expressions Filter Specific Folders Include Specific Folders

Managing the Default Subclient

Add Unassociated Mailboxes to the Default Subclient Automatically Manage Mailbox Groupings

Modifying an Agent, Archive Set, or Subclient

Deleting an Agent, Archive Set, or Subclient

ADVANCED ARCHIVE - EXCHANGE MAILBOX ARCHIVER AGENT

Scheduling an Archive Job

Running a Backup to Protect Stubs

Managing Jobs Restarting Jobs

Controlling Jobs

Additional Options

ADVANCED RECOVER - EXCHANGE MAILBOX ARCHIVER AGENT

Recovering a Message or a Mailbox Item

Recovering an Attachment

Finding and Recovering

Finding a Message with a Specific Subject Finding a Message From a Specific User Finding a Message Sent to a Specific User Finding a Message Received in a Specific Time Range Quick Search using Sampling Finding a Message Backed Up at a Specific Time Adding Search Results to a List Using Find from a Browse Window Recovering a Message or a Mailbox Item from the Search Results Save, Email, or Print Search Results

Performing an Out-of-Place Recovery

Recovering to Different Folder on the Same Client Recovering to a Different Client

Recovering to a Different Exchange Server Version

Recovering a Message in an Archived PST File

Recovering a Message from a Stub in an Archived PST File Using Outlook **Recovering to a PST File Recovering Messages from Deleted Mailboxes or Folders Recalling Messages for an Entire Mailbox** List Stubs Prior to Recall Recalling Messages to the Same Folder In a Mailbox Recalling Messages to a New Folder in a Mailbox **Recovering Messages Across Backup Cycles and Subclients** Scheduling a Recovery **Managing Recovery Jobs** Restarting Jobs Controlling Jobs **Additional Recovery Options** DATA AGING - EXCHANGE MAILBOX ARCHIVER AGENT ADDITIONAL OPERATIONS - EXCHANGE MAILBOX ARCHIVER AGENT OUTLOOK ADD-IN **DESKTOP BROWSE BEST PRACTICES** FAQ **TROUBLESHOOTING - EXCHANGE MAILBOX ARCHIVER AGENT ARCHIVE** TROUBLESHOOTING - EXCHANGE MAILBOX ARCHIVER AGENT RECOVER ONLINE HELP

Overview - Exchange Archiver Agents

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Introduction Key Features Add-On Components Terminology

INTRODUCTION

WHERE TO GO NEXT

Install the Exchange Agents Walks you through the process of installing the Exchange Agents.

The Exchange Archiver Agents provide a seamless vehicle for moving old or infrequently used mailbox items to secondary storage. In doing so, regular backups of more vital Exchange data are more efficient, costs are saved by freeing up primary disk space, and end-user mailboxes become easier to manage. Added options for Outlook integration, compliance searches, and reporting help ensure all archived Exchange data is easily traceable and retrievable whenever the need arises.

KEY FEATURES

The Exchange Archiver Agents offer the following key features:

COMPREHENSIVE MAILBOX AND PUBLIC FOLDER ARCHIVE AND RECOVERY OPTIONS

The Exchange Mailbox and Public Folder Archiver Agents seamlessly move messages meeting specified criteria to secondary storage. Optionally, archived messages can be replaced with special header icons in the original mailbox, known as stubs, which contain information for recovery. Users can double-click the message stub in Outlook or Outlook Web Access (OWA) to recover the original message. Alternatively, users can also ask the administrator to browse the CommCell Console to recover the message.

SEARCH OPTIONS FOR COMPLIANCE USERS

Exchange Compliance Archiver works in conjunction with the message journaling feature of Microsoft Exchange Server software to archive all incoming and outgoing messages and attachments. All incoming messages and outgoing messages are



The archived data remains available for retrieval for the length of time set by the retention rules. During this period the data is readily available for access and retrieval by authorized users. They can retrieve duplicate copies from the archive, which remains under the management of the Storage Policy. All archived data is protected from any edit or alteration from all users within the context of the archival system (i.e., the archived data on the storage media cannot be written to or altered).

ADD-ON COMPONENTS

OUTLOOK ADD-IN

Outlook Add-In fully integrates with Microsoft Outlook to provide users with a convenient way to browse, search and recover mailbox items directly from Outlook. All mailbox entities, including messages, attachments, calendar items, and notes, are retrievable from either the locally installed Outlook application or the Outlook Web Access web browser application.

DESKTOP BROWSE

Desktop Browse enables users to browse and restore data from a Web Browser, which provides the facility to access and restore data from anywhere.

CONTENT INDEXING AND SEARCH

Content Indexing and Search enables users to content index their data and later search the data from a user-friendly web interface. The users can also perform restore operations or other advanced actions on the searched data.





TERMINOLOGY

The Microsoft Exchange Server *i*DataAgent documentation uses the following terminology:

DATADACE	Includes all operational elements of the Exchange Server, such as Stores, Transaction Logs, Patch Files, and Exchange Organizational Data.
	A computer other than the Exchange Server on which the Mailbox and Public Folder <i>i</i> DataAgents may be installed. Using a non- Exchange Server often results in less overhead on the Exchange Server during backup and restore operations.
	An association between two entities used in Automatic Discovery scenarios. For example, automatic discovery of mailboxes by database affinity implies the mailbox is included in the selected database.

System Requirements - Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent

System Requirements Supported Features

The following requirements are for the Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent:

APPLICATION

Microsoft Exchange 2003 32-bit Server up to the latest service pack Microsoft Exchange 2007 64-bit Server up to the latest service pack Microsoft Exchange 2010 64-bit Server up to the latest service pack

OPERATING SYSTEM

WINDOWS SERVER 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 x64 Editions* *Core Editions not supported

WINDOWS SERVER 2003

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit and x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1

CLUSTER - SUPPORT

The software can be installed on a Cluster if clustering is supported by the above-mentioned operating systems.

For information on supported cluster types, see Clustering - Support.

HARD DRIVE

1 GB of minimum disk space is required for installing the software.
 256 MB of free disk space is required for job result directory.
 256 MB of free disk space is required for log directory.

OWA PROXY ENABLER

256 MB minimum of hard disk space for installing the software.

OUTLOOK ADD-IN CLIENT

50 MB minimum of hard disk space for installing the software.

721 MB of temp space required for install.

Ensure that your setup has disk space to install the following: Visual Studio Tools for Office

.NET Framework 4

MEMORY

32 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

PROCESSOR

All Windows-compatible processors supported

SUPPORTED COMPONENTS

OWA PROXY ENABLER

The OWA Proxy Enabler is supported on any platform supported by the Microsoft Exchange Server.

WEB PROXY AGENT

The Web Proxy Agent is supported on any platform supported by the Microsoft Exchange Server.

OUTLOOK ADD-IN CLIENT

The Outlook Add-In Client is supported with Microsoft Outlook 2003 or higher.

PERIPHERALS

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

MISCELLANEOUS

NETWORK

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

MICROSOFT VISUAL C++

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.

.NET FRAMEWORK

.NET Framework 2.0 is automatically installed. Note that .NET Framework 2.0 can co-exist with other versions of this software.

NOTES ON MICROSOFT EXCHANGE SERVER /DATAAGENT INSTALLATION

Microsoft Exchange 2007 64-bit Server Agents are 32-bit MAPI-based Agents installed on a Microsoft Windows x64 platform. See Installing 32-bit Components on a Microsoft Windows x64 Platform for information on installation and configuration requirements for these Agents.

- The Microsoft Exchange 2003 and 2007 Mailbox and Public Folder-based Agents can be installed in two ways:
- $\,\circ\,\,$ directly on the Microsoft Exchange Server computer
- o as Proxy Agents on a separate computer running a supported 32-bit operating system

NOTES ON OUTLOOK OWA PROXY ENABLER INSTALLATION

Prior to configuring Web Access for Exchange 2007 Mailbox/Public Folder Archiver, Exchange WebProxy Archiver Agent, or OWA Proxy Enabler, ensure that the Client Access Role has been configured on the Exchange Server.

NOTES ON OUTLOOK ADD-IN CLIENT INSTALLATION

For Windows clients, JRE 1.7.0_17 is installed automatically with the Outlook Add-In software if it is not already installed.

.NET Framework is needed to support RPC over HTTP connection mode, as well as support for the Exchange Offline Mining Tool. It is not automatically installed by the MSI package and must be manually installed.

Update 331320 must be installed on the client in order to use RPC over HTTP. Contact Microsoft Product Support Services and refer to KB 331320 to obtain this patch.

The Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is not automatically installed for MSI installs. However, the required subset of files from Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package are provided as part of the software and therefore, manual installation is not required.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

Deployment - Exchange Server Agents

PLANNING YOUR INSTALLATION

The Microsoft Exchange Server Agents can be installed individually or in any combination. However, your installation options will differ depending on your environment and the combination of Agents you intend to install.

To ensure you select the appropriate installation option for your environment, first compile the following information:

EXCHANGE AGENTS TO BE INSTALLED

For complete protection, it is recommended all Agents be installed in your environment.

EXCHANGE SERVER VERSION

The Exchange Server Version can be 2010, 2007, or 2003.

WILL THE AGENTS BE INSTALLED ON THE EXCHANGE SERVER?

You can install Agents on the Exchange Server or another computer (Non-Exchange Server). The Database iDataAgent, however, must be installed on the Exchange Server.

IS THE COMPUTER 32-BIT OR 64-BIT?

Whether installing on the Exchange Server or a Non-Exchange Server, the bit-rate can be 32-bit or 64-bit.

WHAT VERSION OF OUTLOOK IS INSTALLED ON THE COMPUTER?

Outlook must be installed on the computer for all Agents except the Database iDataAgent and can be version 2010 or 2007.

IS THE OUTLOOK VERSION 32-BIT OR 64-BIT?

The Outlook bit-rate can be 32-bit or 64-bit.

WILL YOU BE INSTALLING THE AGENTS IN A CLUSTERED ENVIRONMENT?

INSTALLATION OPTIONS

Once you have compiled the above information, choose the appropriate installation procedure as described in the tables below.

EXCHANGE SERVER 2013

	OUTLOOK VERSION	INSTALLATION PROCEDURE	SUPPORTED AGENTS
INSTALLING ON THE	EXCHANGE SERVER		
64-bit Exchange Server	N/A		Database Agent for Database Availability Group (DAG) Configuration

EXCHANGE SERVER 2010

RSION		
CHANGE SERVER		
	5 5 5	Database, Mailbox, and Public Folder iDataAgents
		Compliance, Mailbox, and Public Folder Archivers
· · · · ·	5 5 5	Database, Mailbox, and Public Folder iDataAgents
		Compliance, Mailbox, and Public Folder Archivers
	ook 2010 64-bit	book 2010 64-bitInstall the 64-bit Exchange Agents for Exchange Server 2010 or 2007book 2010/2007Install the 32-bit Exchange Agents for Exchange Server 2010 or 2007

64-bit Exchange Server	N/A	Install the 64-bit Exchange Agents for Exchange Server 2010 or 2007	Database Agent for Database Availability Group (DAG) Configuration
INSTALLING ON A N	ON-EXCHANGE SERVE	R	
32-bit Non-Exchange Server	Outlook 2010/2007 32-bit	Install the 32-bit Exchange Agents on a Non-Exchange Server	Mailbox and Public Folder iDataAgents Compliance, Mailbox, and Public Folder Archivers
64-bit Non-Exchange Server	Outlook 2010/2007 32-bit	Install the 32-bit Exchange Agents for Exchange Server 2010 or 2007	Mailbox and Public Folder iDataAgents Compliance, Mailbox, and Public Folder Archivers
64-bit Non-Exchange Server	Outlook 2010 64-bit	Install the 64-bit Exchange Agents for Exchange Server 2010 or 2007	Mailbox and Public Folder iDataAgents Compliance, Mailbox, and Public Folder Archivers

EXCHANGE SERVER 2007

SERVER SETUP	ουτιοοκ	INSTALLATION PROCEDURE	SUPPORTED AGENTS
	VERSION		
INSTALLING ON THI	E EXCHANGE SERVER		
64-bit Exchange Server	Outlook 2010 64-bit	Install the 64-bit Exchange Agents for Exchange Server 2010 or 2007	Database, Mailbox, and Public Folder iDataAgents
			Compliance, Mailbox, and Public Folder Archivers
64-bit Exchange Server - Cluster	Outlook 2010 64-bit	Install the 64-bit Exchange Agents for Exchange Server 2010 or 2007 - Clustered Environment	Database, Mailbox, and Public Folder iDataAgents
			Compliance, Mailbox, and Public Folder Archivers
64-bit Exchange Server	Outlook 2010/2007 32- bit	Install the 32-bit Exchange Agents for Exchange Server 2010 or 2007	Database, Mailbox, and Public Folder iDataAgents
			Compliance, Mailbox, and Public Folder Archivers
64-bit Exchange Server - Cluster	Outlook 2010/2007 32- bit	Install the 32-bit Exchange Agents for Exchange Server 2010 or 2007 - Clustered Environment	Database, Mailbox, and Public Folder iDataAgents
			Compliance, Mailbox, and Public Folder Archivers
INSTALLING ON A N	ON-EXCHANGE SERVE	R	
32-bit Non-Exchange	Outlook 2010/2007	Install the 32-bit Exchange Agents on a Non-Exchange Server	Mailbox and Public Folder iDataAgents
Server	32-bit		Compliance, Mailbox, and Public Folder Archivers
64-bit Non-Exchange	Outlook 2010/2007	Install the 64-bit Exchange Agents for Exchange Server 2010	Mailbox and Public Folder iDataAgents
Server	64-bit	or 2007	Compliance, Mailbox, and Public Folder

EXCHANGE SERVER 2003

SERVER SETUP	OUTLOOK VERSION	INSTALLATION PROCEDURE	SUPPORTED AGENTS
INSTALLING ON THE	E EXCHANGE SERVER		
Exchange Server	Not Required	Install the Exchange Agents on Exchange Server 2003	Database, Mailbox, and Public Folder iDataAgents
			Compliance, Mailbox, and Public Folder Archivers
Exchange Server - Cluster		Install the Exchange Agents on Exchange Server 2003 - Clustered Environment	Database, Mailbox, and Public Folder iDataAgents
			Compliance, Mailbox, and Public Folder Archivers
INSTALLING ON A N	ON-EXCHANGE SERVER		
Non-Exchange Server	Outlook 2010/2007 32-	Install the Exchange Agents for Exchange Server 2003 on a	Mailbox and Public Folder iDataAgents
	bit	Non-Exchange Server	Compliance, Mailbox, and Public Folder Archivers

Compliance, Mailbox, and Public Folder Archivers

Install the 64-bit Exchange Agents for Exchange Server 2010 or 2007

< Previous Next >

Follow the steps given below to install Exchange Agents on one of the following:

- 64-bit Exchange Server 2010
- 64-bit Exchange Server 2007
- 64-bit Non-Exchange Server

WHERE TO INSTALL

The Exchange Agents can be installed in one of two ways:

- Directly onto the Exchange Server. This method is referred to as an on-host installation and is useful if you want to preserve hardware resources.
- On a separate computer with connectivity to the Exchange Server. This method is referred to as an Non-Exchange Server installation and is useful if you want to offload the memory and processing resources required for backups and restores from the Exchange Server.

Install the Exchange Agents on all the nodes on which backups have to be run in a DAG configuration.

INSTALLATION

The software can be installed using one of the following methods:

METHOD 1: INTERACTIVE INSTALL

Use this procedure to directly install the software from the installation package or a network drive. System Requirements

METHOD 2: INSTALL SOFTWARE FROM COMMCELL CONSOLE

Use this procedure to remotely install the software on a client computer.

RELATED TOPICS

Download Software Packages Provides step-by-step procedure to download the latest packages for software install.

System Requirements Verify that the computer in which you wish to install the software satisfies the System Requirements.

Firewall

Provides comprehensive information on firewall.

PREREQUISITES

If you are installing the Exchange Agents on a 64-bit off-host proxy computer, perform the following pre-requisite task before installing these agents:

- Ensure that the proxy computer has been added to the same Domain in which the Exchange Server 2007 resides.
- Install Microsoft Outlook 2007 or higher on the off-host proxy computer in order to supply the software drivers necessary for Exchange-based agents to
 function in an off-host proxy configuration.

FOR EXCHANGE SERVER 2010

- Ensure that the service account is a member of Organization Management group.
- Ensure that the mail-enabled user is a member of the Local Administrator Group and have rights to all mailboxes on the server.

To assign full access follow the steps given below:

- Using ADSIEDIT navigate to Configuration | Services | Microsoft Exchange.
- Right-click your organization name, click Properties | Securities and click the Advanced tab.
- Click Edit to modify the permissions set for Organization Management group.
- Click to select Full Control, Receive As and Send As permissions and wait for replication.
- Click the Effective Permission tab and Select the name of the backup account.
- The backup account should display the following as selected:

Full Control

All Extended Rights

Send As

Receive As

• Start the PowerShell and type the following to add the backup account so it has full control over all the databases:

Get-MailboxDatabase -server (server name) | Add-ADPermission -user "backup account" -ExtendedRights Receive-As

Run the above PowerShell every time a new database is added.

Navigate to the Exchange Management Console, right-click the <mailbox> and click Manage Full Access Permissions to view the mailbox listed under Full Access Permissions.

FOR EXCHANGE SERVER 2007

3.

- Service account should be a member of Exchange Organization Administrators group.
- Ensure that the mail-enabled user is a member of the Local Administrator Group and have rights to all mailboxes on the server.

METHOD 1: INTERACTIVE INSTALL

- 1. Log on to the computer using an account with the following privileges:
 - Administrator of the local computer

Select the required language.

Click Next.

- Administrator of the Exchange Server
- 2. Run **Setup.exe** from the Software Installation Package.

Select the language you will use during installation.
Next > Cancel
 Install Software on this 64-bit computer Advanced options View Install Quick Stat Guide (Requires Adobe Acrobat Reader) Install Adobe Acrobat Reader
⊕ Exì
Installer License Agreement Please read the following License Agreement. Press the PAGE DOWN key to view the entile agreement.
End User License and Limited Warranty Agreement Software Release 90.0 (including Microsoft® SQL Server [™] 2008 Enterprise Edition, SQL Server [™] 2008 Express Edition and Windows Pre-Installation Environment) Edition Server Server [™] 2008 Enterprise Edition, SQL Server [™] 2008 Express Edition and Windows Pre-Installation Environment)
I do not accept the terms in the license agreement. Installer K Back Next > Cancel

4. Select the option to Install Calypso on this 64-bit computer.

Your screen may look different from the example shown.

 Select I accept the terms in the license agreement. Click Next.

- To install the Exchange iDataAgents expand Client Modules | Backup & Recovery | Exchange, and select one or more of the following:
 - Exchange Database iDataAgent
 - Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent
 - Exchange Public Folder iDataAgent

To install the **Exchange Archiver Agents**, expand **Client Modules | Archive Management**, and select one or more of the following:

- Exchange Compliance Archiver
- Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent
- Exchange Public Folder Archiver Agent

Administration Guide - Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent

Click Next.

For Non-Exchange Server, Exchange Database *i*DataAgent will not be applicable.

7. If this computer and the CommServe is separated by a firewall, select the **Configure** firewall services option and then click **Next**.

For firewall options and configuration instructions, see Firewall Configuration and continue with the installation.

If firewall configuration is not required, click **Next**.

8.	Enter the fully qualified domain name of the $\ensuremath{\textbf{CommServe Host Name}}.$
	Click Next.

Do not use space and the following characters when specifying a new name for the CommServe Host Name:

\|`~!@#\$%^&*()+=<>/?,[]{}:;'"

9. Click Next.

nstaller					
Select Platforms					
Select the platforms yo	u want to configu	re.			
	erve Modules ell Console gent Modules es & Recovery Indexing and Sea sed Search & Bro Management pusDataReplicato	wse	() III ()	platform nai description reasons whi disabled. Disk Spac (Reg/Reco Installatio 0 I Temporar 0 I	of the platform and y it may be ormmended) in Folder: MB/ 0 MB ity on C: drive: MB/ 0 MB
Installer	tore Only	< Back		Special He	gistry Keys In Use
nstaller Firewall Configura Configure firewall servic					
If there is a firewall bet	ween this machin	e and the CommS	erve, confi	gure firewall	services below.
Configure firewall s	ervices				
Please specify how y connection from here CommServe are bloc machine, or whether This machine can CommServe can o	to a CommServe ked, and setup sl there is a Proxy in open connection pen connection t	i's tunnel port, whe hould instead expe hetween. to CommServe on oward this machin	ther all co ct CommS tunnel po	nnections to erve to conr	ssible to open ward lect back to this
C CommServe is rea					
Installer			Ne	ext >	Cancel
Installer CommServe Name Specify the CommServi name	e computer name	and host			X
CommServe Name Specify the CommServe name CommServe (CommServe 1	Client Name Host Name		srople:		X
CommServe Name Specify the CommServe name CommServe (CommServe 1 (Enter a valid mycomputer.r	Client Name Host Name , fully-qualified, IF nycompany.com)	host name; for ex	ample:		×
CommServe Name Specify the CommServe name CommServe (CommServe 1 (Enter a valid mycomputer.r	Client Name Host Name , fully-qualified, IF	host name; for ex	ample:		X
CommServe Name Specify the CommServe name CommServe (CommServe 1 (Enter a valid mycomputer.r	Client Name Host Name , fully-qualified, IF nycompany.com)	host name; for ex		9X(>	Cancel
CommServe Name Specify the CommServe name CommServe (CommServe 1 (Enter a valid mycomputer.	Client Name Host Name , fully-qualified, IF nycompany.com)	' host name; for ex		ext >	
CommServe Name Specify the CommServe name CommServe (CommServe 1 (Enter a valid mycomputer.	Dient Name fost Name fully-qualified, IF nycompany.com mycompany.com	host name; for ex		×t>	
CommServe Name Specify the CommServe CommServe C CommServe C CommServe I Enter a vaid mycomputer. Installer Installer Communication Inf	Dient Name fost Name fully-qualified, IF nycompany.com mycompany.com	host name; for ex		< 20	
CommServe Name Specify the CommServe CommServe C CommServe C CommServe I Enter a vaid mycomputer. Installer Installer Communication Inf	Client Name	host name; for ex	Ne		
CommServe Name Specify the CommServe CommServe C CommServe C CommServe I Enter a vaid mycomputer. Installer Installer Communication Inf	Client Name	host name; for ex	N	▼ will use to	

10. Select Add programs to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List, to add CommCell programs and services to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List.

Click Next.

This option enables CommCell operations across Windows firewall by adding CommCell programs and services to Windows firewall exclusion list.

It is recommended to select this option even if Windows firewall is disabled. This will allow the CommCell programs and services to function if the Windows firewall is enabled at a later time.

11.

12.

13.

	nistatter
	Windows Firewall Exclusion List Allow programs to communicate through Windows Firewall
	Windows Firewall is ON
	Add programs to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List
	If you plan on using Windows Firewall, it is recommended to add the software programs to the exclusion list.
	Installer Cancel
Verify the default location for software installation.	Installer
Click Browse to change the default location.	Destination Folder Select the destination folder to install the program files.
Click Next.	
 Do not install the software to a mapped network drive. 	Click Next to accept the default location, or click Browse to choose an alternate location.
 Do not use the following characters when specifying the destination path: 	Destination Folder
/:*?"<> #	
It is recommended that you use alphanumeric characters only.	Drive List C: 928 MB Space Required / Recommended 1334 MB / 1670 MB
	Installer
Select a Client Group from the list.	Installer
Click Next.	Client Group Selection
	Select a client group for the client.
This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the CommCell Console.	The Client Group is a logical grouping of client machines which have the same associations at various levels like Schedule Policy, Activity Control, Security and Reports.
	Client group:
	None Selected client_group
	crein_yoop
	Installer
	< Back Next> Cancel
Click Next.	Installer
	Schedule Install of Automatic Updates Choose when you want to schedule an install of the downloaded updates.
	In Schedule Install of Automatic Updates
	C Once
	♥ Weekly ♥ Weekly ♥ Monday ♥ Tuesday
	··· mohoay ··· Tuesoay
	O Wednesday O Thursday
	⊂ Wednesday ⊂ Thursday ⊂ Friday ⊂ Saturday
	C Friday C Saturday

14. Select a Storage Policy. Click Next.

X

Installer				
Storage Policy Selection				
Select a storage policy for the default sub backed up.	client to be			
Configure for Laptop or Desktop Ba				
Configure for Laptop or Desktop Ba	скир			
Select a storage policy from the pu	II-down list.			
Unassigned				
Installer				
Installer	< Back	 Next>	-	Cancel
Installer	< Back	Next>		Cancel
Installer	< Back	Next >		Cancel
Installer	< Back	Next >]_	Cancel
Installar Storage Policy Selection		Next >		Cancel
Installer		Next >] _	Cancel
Installar Storage Policy Selection	olient to be	Next >] _	Cancel
Installer: Storage Policy Selection Select a storage policy for the default sub- backet of a	olient to be	Next >] _	Cancel
Installer: Storage Policy Selection Select a storage policy for the default sub- backet of a	olient to be	Next >		Cancel
Installer: Storage Policy Selection Select a storage policy for the default sub- backet of a	olient to be	Next>		Cancel
Instation Storage Pallcy Selection Select a screage policy for the default sub- bacter i.e.	olient to be	Next>		Cancel
Instation Storage Pallcy Selection Select a screage policy for the default sub- bacter i.e.	olient to be	Next>		Cancel

If you do not have Storage Policy created, this message will be displayed. Click ${\bf OK}.$

You can create the Storage Policy later in step 24.

- If you are installing the Exchange Database iDataAgent on the Exchange Server, click Configure Exchange Database Specific Information.
- If you are installing the Exchange Agents on the Non-Exchange Server, skip to Configure Exchange Agents Specific Information.

CONFIGURE EXCHANGE DATABASE SPECIFIC INFORMATION

- **15.** Select the backup type for Exchange Database backups. Choose either of the following options, then click **Next**.
 - Differential Specifies that each non-full Exchange Database backup secures all data that has changed since the last full backup. Transaction lobs are not purged.
 - **Incremental** Specifies that each non-full Exchange Database backup secures only that data that has changed since the last backup of any type. Committed transaction logs are purged.

Installer	
Exchange Backu Please select a defa	
C Differenti	ial Backs up changes in the Information Store and Directory Service ance the last Full backup. Does not purge the transaction logs.
Increment	ntal Backs up changes in the Information Store and Directory Service since the last Full backup or Incremental backup. The committed transaction logs are then purged.
Installer	Kack Next> Cancel
Enter Administrat Enter Administrator a	tor account information account information
	Account Name:
	Account Password:
	Domain: EXCH
	Next>

16. Enter the user credentials to access the Exchange Server to perform the backup operation.

- The User Account must have Exchange Administrator privileges.
- The installation detects the domain name. If necessary, you can modify the domain name by specifying Windows domain that the Exchange Server resides in.

17. Click Next.

- 18. The install program displays a reminder to verify that Circular Logging is disabled before performing any database backup operations. To verify that Circular Logging is disabled:
 - From Exchange System Manager, navigate to and expand the server that the Database *i*DataAgent is being installed on.
 - Verify that the Circular Logging check box has not been selected for each Storage Group. If Circular Logging has been enabled for a Storage Group, disable it at this time.

Click OK.

- If you are installing the Exchange Agents, then click Configure Exchange Agents Specific Information.
- If you are installing the Exchange Database iDataAgent, skip to Verify Summary of Install Options.

CONFIGURE EXCHANGE AGENTS SPECIFIC INFORMATION

19. Select **Exchange Server Name** and **Exchange Server Version** from drop-down list.

Click Next.

This screen will appear when you are installing $\ensuremath{\mathsf{Exchange}}$ Agents on Non-Exchange Server.

20. Click Next.

Installer		×
Exchange Server Name		
Please provide Exchange serve	er name	
Exc	e Server change Server Name: change_Server change Server Version	-
	change 2007	•
Installer		
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext	> <u>C</u> ancel
Installer		
Summary Summary of install selections		
Setup has enough informat install settings, click Next to	tion to start copying the program files. If yo o begin copying files.	ou are satisfied with the
Destination Path = C:\Prog CommServe Host = mycom Interface Name = audi.myc Client = audi Job Results Path = C:\Prog Global Filters = Use Cell lev	puter.mycompany.com company.com gram Files∖JobResults	
CommServe Host = mycom Interface Name = audi.myc Client =audi Job Results Path = C:\Prog	puter.mycompany.com company.com gram Files∖JobResults	×
CommServe Host = mycom Interface Name = audi.myc Client = audi Job Results Path = C:\Prog Global Filters = Use Cell lev	puter.mycompany.com company.com gram Files∖JobResults	× ×

- **21.** Enter the following Exchange Administrator information then click **Next**.
 - Account Name Domain user account created with the exchange server administrator permissions. Do not include the domain name here.
 - Account Password The password assigned to the domain user.
 - Mailbox Name for this Account Mailbox associated with the user above.
 - **Profile Name** Specify profile name to be created during agent install. This profile is associated with the domain user's mailbox.

• Exchange Server Name - Name of the Exchange Server that the agent will communicate with for data protection and recovery operations.

Enter the Mailbox Role Server name (NetBIOS). After installation configure the roles as described in Configure Mailboxes in Database Availability Group (DAG) Servers.

• **Domain** - The installation detects and enters a domain name. If necessary, modify the domain name by specifying Windows domain that the Exchange Server resides in.

Installer	
Exchange Administrator Account Information Mailbox and Profile information	
Please enter the Exchange account information the information supplied.	required below. A new profile will be created with
Account Name:	Profile Name:
Account Password:	Exchange Server Name:
Mailbox Name for this Account:	Domain:
Installer<	Back Next> Cancel

VERIFY SUMMARY OF INSTALL OPTIONS

22. Click Next.

23. Click Finish.

	\mathbf{X}
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder	1
Please note: You still need to create a Job Schedule for each iDataAgent that has been installed on this iclenc computer. Job Schedules are required to allow the iDataAgents to perform automated backup and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be accomplished through the CommCell Console administration interface. Installer	Thurst
Installer	
Completion Report Setup complete	

5 CHOICE

If you already have a storage policy selected in step 14, Click Next > button available at the bottom of the page to proceed to the **Configuration** section.

If you do not have Storage Policy created, continue with the following step.

- 24. Create a Storage Policy:
 - 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to **Policies**.
 - 2. Right-click the Storage Policies and then click New Storage Policy.
 - 3. Follow the prompts displayed in the Storage Policy Wizard. The required options are mentioned below:
 - Select the Storage Policy type as Data Protection and Archiving and click Next.
 - Enter the name in the Storage Policy Name box and click Next.
 - From the **Library** list, click the name of a disk library to which the primary copy should be associated and then click **Next**.

Ensure that you select a library attached to a MediaAgent operating in the current release.

- From the MediaAgent list, click the name of a MediaAgent that will be used to create the primary copy and then click Next.
- $\circ\;$ For the device streams and the retention criteria information, click Next to accept default values.



- $\circ~$ Select Yes to enable deduplication for the primary copy.
- From the **MediaAgent** list, click the name of the MediaAgent that will be used to store the Deduplication store.

Type the name of the folder in which the deduplication database must be located in the Deduplication Store Location or click the Browse button to select the folder and then click **Next**.

• Review the details and click **Finish** to create the Storage Policy.

25. Enable the following registry key to create job specific profiles:

- From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers.
- Right-click the <Client> in which you want to add the registry key, and then click Properties.
- Click the Registry Key Settings tab.
- Click Add.
- Enter CreateProcessSpecificProfile in the Name field.
- Enter MSExchangeMBAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

Enter MSExchangeDMAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

- Enter REG_DWORD in the Type filed.
- Enter 1 to enable and 0 to disable the key in the Value field.
- Click OK.

METHOD 2: INSTALL SOFTWARE FROM COMMCELL CONSOLE

1. From the CommCell Browser, select **Tools**, point to **Add/Remove Software**, and then click **Install Software**.



2. Click Next.

Select Windows.
 Click Next.

4. Select Manually Select Computers. Click Next.

5. Enter the fully qualified domain name of the computer on which you have Exchange Server.

For example: win08ex07.idclab.loc

Click Next.

6. Click Next.

< Back	Save Save	As Script	Finish	Cancel	Help
Installer					
Select how to discover t	he computer:	s for inst	alling the s	oftware	
Manually select computers Software will be installed of	only on the selecte	d list of corr	nuters		
		0 100 01 001	potoron		
 Automatically discover com Computers will be discover 		105			
compactors million abcorto		0.01			
< Back	Save i	As Sevint	Finish	Cancel	Help
- Ener	J = 24/8		1 1 1011	Curicer	1000P
-					
Installer					×
Enter the host names of the compu	ters				
Please enter the host names of the computers,	, one per line				
win08ex07.idclab.loc				Inport fro	n File
				Import From Acti	ve Directory
				Select from exis	ting clients
	< Back Nex	t> 🕑	Save As Script	Finish Cance	N Help
Installer					
Select Software Cache					
To use current Client or Client Group Override Software Cache and select	Software Cache sett	ings, click Nex	t. To override Sof	ware Cache setting:	s check
	the Software Cache	to be used.			
Override Software Cache					
Software Cache: murphy.do	main.company.com				
< Back	Next >	Save As S	ript Finis	Cancel	Help

Select the computer's operating system

Windows
 Unix and Linux

 Specify User Name and Password that must be used to access the computer. Click Next.

	Installer
	Enter Account Information
	The specified account should have administrative access to the computer. If you are installing
	multiple clients, the user should have access to all clients.
	Reuse Active Directory credentials
	User Name:
	Example:domain/username
	Password:
	Confirm Password:
	< Back Next > Save As Script Finish Cancel Help
8.	Installer X
	Solect Package(s) to Install
	Commercial devices Commercial device
	Signal Debalgert Signal Debalgert Signal Debalgert Decumentum Agent
	Control Contro Control Control Control Control Control Control Control Control Co
	Exchange Offline Mining Tool
	Coust Notes Datalagent Data Notes Datalagent
t be	SharePoint
	Content Indusing and Search Content Indusing and Search Content Indusing Content Indusing Content Indusing for Exchange Content Content Indusing for Exchange Content Content Indusing Content Conten
	the standard sta
	Lotar betec Add-In Claim: Lotar betech Add-In Claim: Lotarage Complexees Machine Lotarage Mather Address Agent Lotarage Mather Address Agent
	Dichange Public Folder Archiver Agent Dichange Mallow Archiver Agent Vertex Agent
	<back next=""> Save As Sock Presh Cancel Heb</back>
	Installer X
	Enter Recommended Settings for the selected Software
III Backup	Enter Recommended Settings for the selected Software Recommended Settings
	Enter Recommended Settings for the selected Software Recommended Settings Clenet Groups Avsible: Selected: Laptop Avsible: Aptop Bashap
y from the	Enter Recommended Settings for the selected Software Recommended Settings
y from the	Enter Recommended Settings for the selected Software
nll Backup y from the Laptop User	Enter Recommended Settings for the selected Software
y from the	Enter Recommended Settings for the solected Software
y from the	Enter Recommended Settings for the solected Software
y from the	Enter Recommended Settings for the solected Software
y from the	Enter Recommended Settings for the selected Software
y from the	Enter Recommended Settings for the solected Software
y from the	Enter Recommended Settings for the solected Software
y from the	Enter Recommended Settings for the solected Software
y from the	Enter Recommended Settings for the selected Software Check Groups Available: Available: Add All Add All Add All Configure For Leptop Bachupe: Storage Fairy to use Cencer Cencer Media Media Cencer Media Enter Cencer Media Media Cencer Media Cencer Media Media Media Cencer Media Media Cencer Media Media
y from the	Enter Recommended Settings for the selected Software
y from the	Enter Recommended Settings for the selected Software
y from the	Enter Recommended Settings for the solected Software
y from the	Enter Recommended Settings for the selected Software
y from the	Enter Recommended Settings for the solected Software
y from the	
y from the	Enter Recommended Settings for the selected Software
y from the	Enter Recommended Settings for the selected Software • Check Groups Available: • Available:
y from the	Enter Recommended Settings for the selected Software
y from the	Enter Recommended Settings for the selected Software

- To install the Exchange iDataAgents expand Client Modules | Backup & Recovery | Exchange, and select one or more of the following:
 - Exchange Database iDataAgent
 - Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent
 - Exchange Public Folder iDataAgent

Click Next.

For Non-Exchange Server, Exchange Database *i*DataAgent will not be applicable.

- 9. Select Client Group from Available and click Add.
 - Select a **Storage Policy** from the drop-down list. Click **Next**. **NOTES**:
 - Select the Configure for Laptop or Desktop Backup option to install Backup Monitor utility. This utility allows you to view the backup job summary from the client computer without opening the CommCell Console. See Monitor - Laptop User for more information.
- 10. Type the Agent Specific Settings information. Click Next.

11. Click Next.

12. Select Immediate. Click Next.

13. Click Finish.

14. You can track the progress of the job from the **Job Controller** or **Event Viewer** window.

Enter Additional Install Opti	
<i></i>	105
Installer Flags	
🖌 Install Updates	
Reboot (if required)	
Kill Browser Processes (if	nquired)
Ignore Running Jobs	(besture
	dy part of the CommCell component
Advanced Options	
Delete Packages After Ir	tal
Ignore Client/Host Name	Ionflict
Instal Result Log Location	
Optional Settings	i Only
 Job Result Direct 	xry
Path	
CVD Port	8400 #
Evengrc Port Install Directory	8402
Log File Location	
Commiserve Host Name	
	< [geck] (geck >) Save As Script Finish Cancel (geb
Installer	X
Please Select Wh	en To Run The Job
Job Initiation	
Run this job	now
🔿 Schedule	
Configure 9	chedule Pattern Configure
comgare .	Coningare
< Back	Save As Script Finish Cancel Help
Installer	X
Summary Reace verify all the celected options at	d click Finish to run the job immediately or click Save As Script to save the job options as a script.
Client Install Option	
Client Install Option Select Type Of Installation:	
Select Type Of Installation: Select Type Of Client Discov	ry: Manually select computers
Select Type Of Installation: Select Type Of Client Discov	ry: Manually select computers rs with SRM agents already installed: Yes
Select Type Of Installation: Select Type Of Client Discov Exclude discovery of compute Reuse Active Directory crede Client Authentication for Job	ry: Manadly select computers s with SRM agents already installed: Yes nitals: No
Select Type Of Installation: Select Type Of Client Discow Exclude discovery of compute Reuse Active Directory crede Client Authentication for Job User Name: IDCLAB'administ	ry: Manadly select computers s with SRM agents already installed: Yes nitals: No
Select Type Of Installation: Select Type Of Client Discov Exclude discovery of compute Reuse Active Directory crede Client Authentication for Job User Name: IDCLAB/administ Password: ****	ry: Manadly select computers s with SRM agents already installed: Yes nitals: No
Select Type Of Installation: Select Type Of Client Discov Exclude discovery of compute Reuse Active Directory crede Client Authentication for Job User Name: IDCLAB/administ Password: **** Install Flags Install Updates: Yes	ry: Manadly select computers s with SRM agents already installed: Yes nitals: No
Select Type Of Installation: Select Type Of Class Discov Exclude discovery of compute Reuse Active Directory crede Clernt Authentication for Job User Name: IDCLABVadminist Passwort: **** Install Liphates: Yes Rebox (f fragured): No	ry: Manzahy select computer: with SRM agents already installed: Yes nitals: No
Select Type Of Installation: Select Type Of Installation: Exclude discovery of compute Reuse Active Directory crede Cinet Anthenication for Job User Nume: CLCAPardminit Parsward: **** Install Edgs Install Lightnes: Yes Robot of required): No Kull Browser Processes (for Egnores Ruming Jobs: No	ry: Manauly refet computer: with SRM agents already installed: Yes nitals: No antate alter uired): No
Select Type Of Installation: Select Type Of Cleant Discor- Exclude discovery of compute Reuse Active Directory crede Cleant Arithmetication for 100 User Nume: IDCLAFMatimist Pattornet: **** Install Egge Install Updates: Yes Roboto (if required): 340 Kull Browser Processes (if req Ignere Rumning Jobs: 150 Stop Orack Services (if requi	ry: Manauly refect computers with SRM approx already installed: Yes nator mater mitredy: No refly: No
Select Type Of Installation: Select Type Of Installation: Exclude discovery of compute Reuse Active Directory rede Clark Arkithenstein for 130 User Name: IDCLAFMathinist Parsword: **** Install Eggs Install Eggs Install Eggs Install Updates: Yes Robot (If regulard): 130 Kull Browser Processes (If req Ignere Rumning Jobs: 130 Stop Orach Severice (If requ Sikp (clarits that are already Delete Parkages After Instal	ry: Manualy refect computers with SRM approx already installed: Yes nator nator nator nator Point Si No art of the ComanCell component: No : No
Select Type Of Installation: Select Type Of Installation: Exclude discovery of compute Reuse Active Directory crede Clent Anthenization for Job User Nome: IPCLeBachmint Password: **** Install Updates: Yes Reboot (ff required): No Full Brusser Processes (ff re- lgance Running Jobs: Ho Stop Oracle Services (ff required): Schip Clents that are already Delete Packages After Innia Lgance Clentfors Nome Co	ry: Manualy refet computers with SRM agents already installed: Yes nitile: No nator nator nator No Arrol: No Ref: No Ref: Yes
Select Type Of Installation: Select Type Of Installation: Exclude discovery of compute Reuse Active Directory rede Clark Arkithenstein for 130 User Name: IDCLAFMathinist Parsword: **** Install Eggs Install Eggs Install Eggs Install Updates: Yes Robot (If regulard): 130 Kull Browser Processes (If req Ignere Rumning Jobs: 130 Stop Orach Severice (If requ Sikp (clarits that are already Delete Parkages After Instal	ry: Manualy refet computers with SRM agents already installed: Yes nitile: No nator nator nator No Arrol: No Ref: No Ref: Yes
Select Type Of Installation: Select Type Of Installation: Exclude discovery of compute Reuse Active Directory rede Cirent Active Directory rede User Name: IPCLeBachmeint Password: ***** Install Updates: Yer Reboot (If required): No Sup Oracle Services (If req Jamer Running Jobs: H Sup Oracle Services (If req Delete Packages After Innia Ligner Clinch Jerk Name Co Install Agents For Restore Clinat Composition	ry: Manualy refet computers with SRM agents already installed: Yes ntals: No ntor ntor nured): No redy: No redy: No Ref: Yes No Marce Yes No
Select Type Of Installation: Select Type Of Clant Discor- Exclude discovery of compute Reuse Active Directory crede Clark Arkithensication for 100 User Name: IDCLAFMathinist Parsonal: **** Install Eggs Install Eggs Install Eggs Install Updates: Yes Robot (If regulard): 140 Kill Brower Processes (If req Ignere Rumning Johs: 150 Stop Orach Services (If requ Sick clients that are already Delete Parkages After Instal Ignere Client/Bost Name Co. Install Agents Presentero Client Composition	ry: Manualy refet computers with SRM agents already installed: Yes ntals: No ntor ntor nured): No redy: No redy: No Ref: Yes No Marce Yes No
Select Type Of Installation: Select Type Of Installation: Exclude discovery of compute Reuse Active Directory rede Cirent Active Directory rede User Name: IPCLeBachmeint Password: ***** Install Updates: Yer Reboot (If required): No Sup Oracle Services (If req Jamer Running Jobs: H Sup Oracle Services (If req Delete Packages After Innia Ligner Clinch Jerk Name Co Install Agents For Restore Clinat Composition	ry: Manualy refet computers with SRM appends abready installed: Yes nator mater iniredy: No refly: No refly: No Refl: Yes http://withinto.commodell.component: No the Yes http://withinto.commodell.component: No the Yes
Select Type Of Installation: Select Type Of Installation: Exclude discovery of compute Reuse Active Directory rede Cirent Active Directory rede User Name: IPCLeBachmeint Password: ***** Install Updates: Yer Reboot (If required): No Sup Oracle Services (If req Jamer Running Jobs: H Sup Oracle Services (If req Delete Packages After Innia Ligner Clinch Jerk Name Co Install Agents For Restore Clinat Composition	ry: Manualy refet computers with SRM appends abready installed: Yes natals: No nator nitrof): No part of the CommCell component: No : No filte: Yes into approximation of the second sec
Selet Type of Installation Selet Type of Clean Boro Exclude discovery of compute Reuse Active Directory crede Clean Arthonication for 100 User Name: DCLAPackmint Password: ***** Install Liphates: Yes Reboot of required): No Kill Browser Processes of req Ignere Rumning Jobs: No Kill Browser Processes of the Ignere Rumning Jobs: No Stop Oracle Secretics of the Ignere Rumning Jobs: No Clean Composition Override Software Cache: No Solutes Them. Of Installations	ry: Manually refer tomputer: with SRM spenses already installed: Yes intak: No
Selet Type Of Installation Selet Type Of Charablacien Exclude discovery of compute Reuse Active Directory rede Clear Arthonomes for John User Name: [DCLAFMedmint] Parsonal: **** Install Fage Install Igase Install Igase Rebat (if required): No Kill Browser Processes (if ref Ignere Ruming John; No Stop Oracle Services (if sequired): No Clear Composition Override Software Cache: No Clear Composition	ry: Manualy refet computers with SRM appends abready installed: Yes ntals: No ntor mirredy: No rendy: No rendy: No Ref: Yes http: No Ref: Yes http: No
Selet Type Of Installation Selet Type Of Charablacien Exclude discovery of compute Reuse Active Directory rede Clear Arthonomes for John User Name: [DCLAFMedmint] Parsonal: **** Install Fage Install Igase Install Igase Rebat (if required): No Kill Browser Processes (if ref Ignere Ruming John; No Stop Oracle Services (if sequired): No Clear Composition Override Software Cache: No Clear Composition	ry: Manually refet computers with SRM appends investig installed: Yes intak: No nator nator nator No No Mart of the CommCell component: No No Mart (Yes http://o Mart
Selet Type of Charabhaine Selet Type of Charabhaine Rune Achin Directory rote Char Arbitensian for Joh User Name: IDCLABUdamini Passand: **** Install Fagis Install Igaise: Yes Rebot of requirely: No Right Burners: Processes (for Ignore Running Joh: No Solo Charaber Merines Alter Install Against After Instal Ignore Charaber After Install Ignore Charaber After Instal Ignore Charaber After Instal Ignore Charaber After Install Ignore Ignore After Install Ignore Charaber After Install Ignore Charaber After Install Ignore Charaber After Install Ignore Charaber After Install Ignore Ignore After Ignore Ignore Ignore Ignore Ignore	ry: Manually refet computers with SRM appends investig installed: Yes intak: No nator nator nator No No Mart of the CommCell component: No No Mart (Yes http://o Mart
Select Type of Charachaltenic Select Type of Charachaltenic Reuse Active Directory rote Clear Arthenesis for John User Name: IDCLAB/Jackmini Install Fagis Install Igaze Install Igaze Rebot of regressively. No Rebot of regressively of requ John Pacesses (of req Johner Running John; No Non Orach Services of req Johner Running John; No Non Orach Services of Type Delete Package After Instal Jones Of Lanashtation.	ry: Manually refer to computers with SSM appends already installed: Yes ntais: No ntor nterd: No ref: No ref: No Ref: Yes by No Case As South Path Case A House No ref: Yes to address to see the set there ref: Terds State No ref: No Ref: Yes to address to set there ref: No Ref: Yes Ref: Yes Ref: No Ref: Yes Ref: No Ref: Yes Ref: No Ref: Yes Ref: No Ref: Yes Ref: No Ref: Yes Ref: No Ref: No
Select Type of Charathlinian Select Type of Charathlinian Exclude discovery of compute Neural Active Directory crede Clark Arithmetication for 1/0 Liers Neure: EDCLAB/hubmin Parsward: **** Below of Properties () Neural Liphanes: Yer Robot of Properties () Neural Liphanes: Yer Robot of Properties () Neural Liphanes: Yer Robot of Properties () Neural Liphanes: After Install Japare Charathoris Name Column Schutzer () Neural Composition Derived Schutzer () Neural Composition Derived Schutzer () Neural Composition Derived Schutzer () Neural Composition Derived Schutzer () Neural Composition () Neural Composition Derived Schutzer () Neural Composition () Neu	ry: Manually refet computer: with SNM spense already installed: Yes mile: No milerd): No red): No red): No red): No Mile: Yes (Clask) (Serie Ar Sout) (Frich) Carel (Heb) (Serie Ar Sout) (Frich) (Serie Ar Sout) (Frich) (Serie (Heb)) (Serie (Heb)) (Serie (
Select Type of Cherchlander Select Type of Cherchlander Rense Active Directory role of compute Rense Active Directory role of Cherchlander Selection (Cherchlander) Parsmart: **** Relson of requires : Yes Relson of research in the Cherchlander Cherchlander Relson of Lower Cherchlander Relson of Lower Relson of Relson of Lower Relson of Lower Relson of Relson of Lower Relson of Lower Relson of Relson of Lower Relson of Lower Relson of Lower Relson of Lower Relson of Relson of Lower Relson of Relson of Lower Relson of Lower Relson of	ry: Manually refect computers with SRM appends already installed: Yes miles: No milerd): No redy: No redy: No redy: No redy: No file: Yes (East:
Select Type of Chemitalismi Select Type of Chemitalismi Reuse Active Directory create Chemitalismic Chemitalismi Reuse Active Directory create Chemitalismic Chemitalismi Reusenit: """ Install Eggin Install Eggin Install Eggin Install Eggin Install Eggin Install Eggin Install Eggin Reuse (Instell-Reusessed fire Eggene Reuning Jobs: No Sing Orach Services of Freq Sing Orach Services of Tree Sing Orach Services of Tree Sing Orach Services of Tree Sing Orach Services of Tree Sing Orach Services of Tree Chemital Reuse After Install Eggene Chemitalismi Chemital Reuse After Install Overrife Software Chemitalismi Chemital Reuse After Install Services After Install Services After Install Chemital Reuse Active Software Chemitalismi Chemital Reuse After Install Services After Install Services After Install Services After Install Services After Install Services After Install Services After Install Services Services After Install Services Services After Install Services Services After Install Services Services After Install Assets After Install Services After Install Services Services After Install Services After Install Services After Install Services Services After Install Services After Install Services Services After Install Services After Install Services Services After Install Services After Inst	ry: Manually refect computers with SRM appends already installed: Yes miles: No milerd): No redy: No redy: No redy: No redy: No file: Yes (East:
Select Type of Cherchlander Select Type of Cherchlander Rense Active Directory role of compute Rense Active Directory role of Cherchlander Selection (Cherchlander) Parsmart: **** Relson of requires : Yes Relson of research in the Cherchlander Cherchlander Relson of Lower Cherchlander Relson of Lower Relson of Relson of Lower Relson of Lower Relson of Relson of Lower Relson of Lower Relson of Relson of Lower Relson of Lower Relson of Lower Relson of Lower Relson of Relson of Lower Relson of Relson of Lower Relson of Lower Relson of	ry: Manually refect computers with SRM appends already installed: Yes miles: No milerd): No media: No med
Select Type of CherchBarles Select Type of CherchBarles Exclude discovery of compute Neural Active Directory crede Cherch Active Directory crede Cherch Active Directory crede Parsward: """ Install Igains: Yes Robot of required; NA Sing Oracle Services of required Sing Cherch Barles Sing Cherch Barles Active Sing Sing Cherch Barles Active Sing Direct Cherch Barles Sing Cherch Barles Cherch Sing Chercher Cherch Barles Sing Cherch Barles Cherch Sing Direct Cherch Barles Sing Che	ry: Manually refer to computer i with SRM append abready installed: Yes ntable: No nterd: No refer: No refer: No refer: No refer: Yes is ho filte: Yes is

15. Once the job is complete, right-click the **CommServe** computer, click **View** and then click **Admin Job History**.

16. Select Install/Upgrade/Remove Software. Click OK.

- 17. You can view the following details about the job by right-clicking the job:
 - Items that succeeded during the job
 - Items that failed during the job
 - Details of the job
 - Events of the job
 - Log files of the job

Enable the following registry key to create job specific profiles:

- From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers.
- Right-click the <Client> in which you want to add the registry key, and then click Properties.
- Click the Registry Key Settings tab.
- Click Add.

18.

- Enter CreateProcessSpecificProfile in the Name field.
- Enter MSExchangeMBAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

Enter MSExchangeDMAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

- Enter REG_DWORD in the Type filed.
- Enter 1 to enable and 0 to disable the key in the Value field.
- Click OK.

idol.testlab.commvault.c	am CommColl Consola	
File View Tools Windows		
🍺 🔜 🖪 🗞 🗉		
		1.5.8
	🚴 apple ×	4 D D
All Tasks >		
Control Panel	Job History Q Admin Job History Client	👽 💱 🗈 🚔 Security Storage Policies
Properties	Log Files 3 Computer	s Resources 💌
Of File System Of Virtual Server	Users Logged In	4 ▷ Ⅲ
😑 📴 mustang	Schedules	÷ ت ۹
Off File System Off Virtual Server	Fl Job ID Operation Client 21 Data Aging	Co Agent Type Subclient Job Typer 1 Phas S N/A
(ii) security	4	8
Storage Resources Policies	II Pause Playing Runnin	
Reports Gontent Director	Event Viewer × 🎇 Admin Job His	tory × 4 ▷ B
	Event Viewer	+ C - D
	Severity Event ID Job ID Date	✓ 1 Program Computer Ev 🛠
		2010 12:00:23 JobManager apple 19:3 2010 12:00:08 JobManager apple 19:3
CommCell Browser	231 08/31/2	2010 11:52:42 FuMorS annie 35:
Agents		2010 11:46:15 DistributeSoftware apple 68: 2010 11:46:45 DistributeSoftware apple 68:
27 - 19110 27	Pause Playing Information, Minor,	>
	In Pause Praying Information, Minor,	Major, Critical, Maximum events shown: 200
8 object(s)		apple admin
Admin Job History F	ilter	
Job Type		
() All	O Data Aging	Export Media
Auxiliary Copy	 Inventory 	O Disaster Recovery Backup
O Data Verification	O Offline Content Indexing	C Erase Media
C Erase Backup/Archived		O Drive Cleaning
O Stamp Media	 Install/Remove Updates 	 Download/Copy Software
 Install/Upgrade/Removi 	Software Disk Library Maintenance	SRM Reports/Actions
Install/Upgrade/Remove Information Management	t O CommCell Export	 SRM Reports/Actions CommCell Import
Information Management Media Refreshing	t O CommCell Export	
O Information Management	t O CommCell Export	
Information Managemen Media Refreshing Specify Time Range	t O CommCell Export	
Information Managemen Media Refreshing Specify Time Range Time Zone: [GM]	CommCell Export Conver Store	CommCell Import
Information Management Media Refreshing Specify Time Range Time Zone: (GMT Start Time	ConvinCell Export	ConniCel Inport
Information Managemen Media Refreshing Specify Time Range Time Zone: (GM Kart Time Mon 08/30/201	CommCell Export Recover Store Recover Store Costern Time (US & Canada) End Tim	CommCel Inport
Information Management Media Refreshing Specify Time Range Time Zone: (GMT Start Time	CommCell Export Recover Store Recover Store Costern Time (US & Canada) End Tim	ConniCel Inport
Information Managemen Media Refreshing Specify Time Range Time Zone: (GM Refreshing) Kart Time Mon 08/30/201	CommCell Export Recover Store Recover Store Costern Time (US & Canada) End Tim	CommCel Inport
Information Management Media Refreshing Specify Time Range Time Zone: (cdf) Seart Time Men 08/30/201 122-3	CommCell Export Recover Store Recover Store Costern Time (US & Canada) End Tim	CommCel Inport
Information Manageme Media Refreching Specify Time Range Time Zone: (CMT Start Time Mon 08/30/201 122-3 Job Status	-05:00) Eastern Time (US & Canada)	CommCel Import
Information Management Media Refreshing Specify Time Range Time Zone: (cdf) Seart Time Men 08/30/201 122-3	CommCell Export CommCell Export Recover Store Coston Costern Time (US & Canada) Costern Time (US & Canada) Costern Time (US & Canada)	CommCel Inport
Information Manageme Media Refreshing Specify Time Range Time Zone: (CMT Start Time Men 08/30/201 122-9 Xab Status	-05:00) Eastern Time (US & Canada)	CommCel Import
Information Managemen Media Refreshing Specify Time Range Time Zone: CMI Start Time Men 00(30)(20) IB2 (S Al Number of Jobs	-05:00) Eastern Time (US & Canada)	CommCel Import
Information Managemen Media Refreshing Specify Time Range Time Zone: (CM Stat Time Men 08/30/201 Time 2/06: Status Al	-05:00) Eastern Time (US & Canada)	CommCel Import
Information Managemen Media Refreshing Specify Time Range Time Zone: CMI Start Time Men 00(30)(20) Time 200 Starts Al Number of Jobs	Completed Completed	CommCel Import
Information Managemen Media Refreshing Specify Time Range Time Zone: (CMT Start Time Mon 00/30/201 Starts Al Number of Jobs Otevall Jobs Destred Number of	Completed Completed	CommCel Import
Information Managemer Media Refreshing Specify Time Range Time Zone: (CM Start Time Men 00/30/201 IB2 (S Ad Number of Jobs Other Status Other Range Management Number of Jobs Other Rangement Other Rangement Number of Jobs	Completed Compl	CommCel Import
Information Managemen Media Refreshing Specify Time Range Time Zone: (CMT Start Time Mon 00/30/201 Start Time Mon 00/30/201 Starts O Al Number of Jobs O testred Number of	Completed Completed	CommCel Import
Information Managemen Media Refreshing Specify Time Range Time Zone: (CMT Start Time Mon 00/30/201 Start Time Mon 00/30/201 Starts O Al Number of Jobs O testred Number of	Completed Compl	CommCel Import
Information Manageme Media Refreshing Specify Time Range Time Zone: (CM Saft Time Menio(0)20(20) 22 - 3 Saft Time Menio(0)20(20) 22 - 3 Saft Time Menio(0)20(20) Saft Time Saft Time Menio(0)20(20) Saft Time Menio(0)20(20) Saft Time Saft T	Completed Feled	Connicel Import
	Completed	CommCel Import
Information Manageme Media Refreshing Specify Time Range Time Zone: (CM Saft Time Menio(0)20(20) 22 - 3 Saft Time Menio(0)20(20) 22 - 3 Saft Time Menio(0)20(20) Saft Time Saft Time Menio(0)20(20) Saft Time Menio(0)20(20) Saft Time Saft T	Completed	CommCel Import
Information Managemen Media Refreshing Specify Time Range Time Zone: Set Time Set Time Set Time Management Set Time Set Time Set Setup Addam Set Management Include Aged Data		CommCel Import
Information Managemen Media Refreshing Specify Time Range Time Zone: Set Time Set Time Set Time Management Set Time Set Time Set Setup Addam Set Management Include Aged Data		CommCel Import
		CommCel Import
Information Managemen Media Refreshing Specify Time Range Time Zone: Set Time Set Time Set Time Management Set Time Set Time Set Setup Addam Set Management Include Aged Data	Completed	CommCel Import



Install the 64-bit Exchange Agents for Exchange Server 2007 -Clustered Environment

< Previous Next >

Follow the steps given below to install the 64-bit Exchange Agents on Exchange Server 2007 or on Non-Exchange Server in a clustered environment.

WHERE TO INSTALL

The Exchange Agents can be installed in one of two ways:

- Directly onto the Exchange Server. This method is referred to as an on-host installation and is useful if you want to preserve hardware resources.
- On a separate computer with connectivity to the Exchange Server. This method is referred to as an Non-Exchange Server installation and is useful if you want to offload the memory and processing resources required for backups and restores from the Exchange Server.

RELATED TOPICS

Download Software Packages

Provides step-by-step procedure to download the latest packages for software install.

System Requirements

Verify that the computer in which you wish to install the software satisfies the System Requirements.

Firewall

Provides comprehensive information on firewall.

PREREQUISITES

If you are installing the Exchange Agents on a 64-bit off-host proxy computer, perform the following pre-requisite task before installing these agents:

- Ensure that the proxy computer has been added to the same Domain in which the Exchange Server 2007 resides.
- Install Microsoft Outlook 2007 or higher on the off-host proxy computer in order to supply the software drivers necessary for Exchange-based agents to
 function in an off-host proxy configuration.

The below mentioned prerequisites are for Mailbox Agents only. Ensure that you have the following:

- Service account is a member of Exchange Organization Administrators group.
- The mail-enabled user is a member of the Local Administrator Group and have rights to all mailboxes on the server.
- Ensure that you assign full access to all mailboxes on the server. For details, see How do I Assign Full Access to All Mailboxes on a Server.

INSTALL PROCEDURE

1. Log on to the computer using an account with the following privileges:

Select the option to Install Calypso on this 64-bit computer.

• Your screen may look different from the example shown.

- Administrator of the local computer
- Administrator of the Exchange Server
- 2. Run Setup.exe from the Software Installation Package.
- **3.** Select the required language.

Click Next.

NOTES:

4.



Select I accept the terms in the license agreement. 5. Click Next.

6. Select Configure a Virtual Server. Click Next.

7. Select the disk group in which the virtual server resides. Click Next.

- To install the Exchange iDataAgents expand Client Modules | Backup & 8. Recovery | Exchange, and select one or more of the following:
 - Exchange Database iDataAgent
 - Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent
 - Exchange Public Folder iDataAgent

To install the Exchange Archiver Agents, expand Client Modules | Archive Management, and select one or more of the following:

- Exchange Compliance Archiver
- Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent
- Exchange Public Folder Archiver Agent

Click Next.

For Non-Exchange Server, Exchange Database iDataAgent will not be applicable.

If this computer and the CommServe is separated by a firewall, select the **Configure** 9. firewall services option and then click Next.

For firewall options and configuration instructions, see Firewall Configuration and continue with the installation.

If firewall configuration is not required, click Next.

nstaller 🛛
License Agreement
Please read the following License Agreement. Press the PAGE DOWN key to view the entire agreement.
the PAGE DOWN key to view the entire agreement.
<u>^</u>
End User License and Limited Warranty Agreement
Software Release 9.0.0
(including Microsoft® SQL Server [™] 2008 Enterprise Edition, SQL Server [™] 2008 Express Edition and Windows Pre-Installation Environment)
Fud Hoov I incurs Amount
I accept the terms in the license agreement.
C I do not accept the terms in the license agreement.
Installer <back next=""> Cancel</back>
< Back Next > Cancel
nstaller 🛛
Cluster Type Selection
Configure the Physical Node or a Virtual Server
2
Configuration Options
C Configure the Physical node
C Configure a ⊻intual server
< <u>B</u> ack (<u>Next></u> <u>C</u> ancel
nstaller 🛛 🔀
Virtual Server Selection
Select the virtual server you would like to configure
Channel from the full-state first of state manual
Choose from the following list of disk groups configured on this cluster.
2003Cluster/VMS
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext> <u>C</u> ancel
nstaller 🛛
Select Platforms Select the platforms you want to configure.
Move the pointer over a
Ch. Common Technology Engine Indiferent platform name to see a
Common Technology Engine CommServe Modules
Common Technology Engine plafform name to see a description of the platform and reasons why it may be discription and reasons why it may be discription.
Common Technology Engine Common Technology Engine CommServe Modules CommCell Contole CommCell Contole Comt Modules Comt Modules Comt Modules
Common Technology Engine Disk Space Di
□ Common Technology Engine platform mane to see a discription of the platform and tescription of tescript
□ Common Technology Engine plafform mane to see a discription of the plafform and teacons why it may be disabled. □ CommGere Modules disabled. □ CommServe Modules disabled. □ Clernt Modules disabled. □ Modul
□ Common Technology Engine plafform mane to see a discription of the plafform and to see a discription of the plafform and the section of the plafform and the plafform and the section of the plafform and the section of the plafform and the pla
□ Common Technology Engine plafform mane to see a discription of the plafform and to see a discription of the plafform and the section of the plafform and the plafform and the section of the plafform and the se

Special Registry Keys In Us

Cancel

Installer

Install Agents for Restore Only

< Back

10. Enter the fully qualified domain name of the CommServe Host Name.

Click Next.

Do not use space and the following characters when specifying a new name for the CommServe Host Name:

\|`~!@#\$%^&*()+=<>/?,[]{}:;'"

11. Click Next.

12. Select **Add programs to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List**, to add CommCell programs and services to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List.

Click Next.

This option enables CommCell operations across Windows firewall by adding CommCell programs and services to Windows firewall exclusion list.

It is recommended to select this option even if Windows firewall is disabled. This will allow the CommCell programs and services to function if the Windows firewall is enabled at a later time.

Please specify how connection from her CommServe are bloo machine, or whether	Windows Firewall is finiting network traffic. Whether it is possible to open to a CommServe's turnel port, whether all connections toward keed, and seture bandla instead expect CommServe to connect back to this there is a Proxy in between.
	open connection to CommServe on tunnel port open connection toward this machine
	ichable only through a proxy
Installer	
	Next > Cancel
nstaller	X
CommServe Name Specify the CommServ name	e computer name and host
CommServe	Client Name
mycomputer.	j, fully-qualified, IP host name; for example: nycompany.com)
mycomputer	mycompany.com
Installer	< Back Next > Cancel
nstaller	X
Communication In	terface Name e communication paths.
	Select a client name
	Select an interface name that this computer will use to communicate with the CommServe
	audi.mycompany.com
	IP Address(es) for the selected host.
Installer	
mistaller	< Back Next > Cancel
	X
nstaller Windows Firewall Allow programs to com Firewall	
Windows Firewall	is ON
Add programs	to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List
If you plan on usir exclusion list.	${\rm gWindows}$ Firewall, it is recommended to add the software programs to the

< Back

Next:

If there is a firewall between this machine and the CommServe, configure firewall services below

Installer Firewall Configuration Configure firewall services

Configure firewall services

Installer

13. Verify the default location for software installation.

Click **Browse** to change the default location.

Click Next.

- Do not install the software to a mapped network drive.
- Do not use the following characters when specifying the destination path:

/:*?"<>|#

Cancel

		Installer	
	It is recommended that you use alphanumeric characters only.	Destination Folder Select the destination folder to	nstall the program files.
		Click Next to accept the defa Destination Folder ENProgram Filess Drive List C: 928 MB Installer	ult location, or click Browse to choose an alter Browse to choose an alter Browse Required / Recommend Space Required / Recommend 1394 MB / 1670 MB
14.	Select a Client Group from the list.	Installer	
	Click Next.	Client Group Selection Select a client group for the clie	st
	This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the	Select a client group for the clie	
	CommCell Console.	which have the	ected
		Installer	< Back Next >
			I
15.	Click Next.	Installer	
		Schedule Install of Auton Choose when you want to sche downloaded updates.	
		Schedule Install of Autor Once Weekly Installer	natic Updates Time: 08:31:12 PM Monday C Tuesday Wednesday C Thursday Finday C Saturday Sunday K Back Next>
16.	Select a Storage Policy .	Installer	
	Click Next.	Storage Policy Selection	
		Select a storage policy for the backed up.	default subclient to be
		Configure for Laptop or [Select a storage policy [Unase	rom the pull-down list.
		Installer	< Back Next >
	If you do not have Storage Policy created, this message will be displayed.	Storage Policy Selection Select a storage policy for the backed up.	
	Click OK .	Eacked up.	
	You can create the Storage Policy later in step 31.		

• If you are installing the Exchange Database iDataAgent on the Exchange Server, click Configure Exchange Database Specific Information.

X

ate location.

Cancel

Cancel

Cancel

Cancel

Cancel

< Back Next >

X

X

• If you are installing the Exchange Agents on the Non-Exchange Server, skip to Configure Exchange Agents Specific Information.

CONFIGURE EXCHANGE DATABASE SPECIFIC INFORMATION

- 17. Select the backup type for Exchange Database backups. Choose either of the following options, then click **Next**.
 - Differential Specifies that each non-full Exchange Database backup secures all data that has changed since the last full backup. Transaction lobs are not purged.
 - **Incremental** Specifies that each non-full Exchange Database backup secures only that data that has changed since the last backup of any type. Committed transaction logs are purged.

Installer	
Exchange Backup Please select a defau	Options
C Differentia	Backs up changes in the Information Store and Directory Service since the last Full backup. Does not purge the transaction logs.
€ Increment	al Backs up changes in the Information Store and Directory Service ance the last Full backup or Incremental backup. The committed itensaction logs are then purged.
Installer	< Back Next> Cancel
	×
Enter Administrato Enter Administrator ac	r account information
4	Account Name:
l	
,	Account Password:
[
	Domain:
	EXCH
	Next>
Installer	
Summary Summary of install sele	ctions
Setup has enough install settings, clic	information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the k Next to begin copying files.
Interface Name = Client =audi	C:\Program Files\ C:\Program Files\ C:\Program Files\ C:\Program Files\UcbResults a Cell level policy C:\Program Files\UcbResults a Cell level policy C:\Back Next> Cancel
Installer	
Please verify backup oper	v that Grcular Logging is disabled before performing any database ations.
	OF

- **18.** Enter the user credentials to access the Exchange Server to perform the backup operation.
 - The User Account must have Exchange Administrator privileges.
 - The installation detects the domain name. If necessary, you can modify the domain name by specifying Windows domain that the Exchange Server resides in.

19. Click Next.

- **20.** The install program displays a reminder to verify that Circular Logging is disabled before performing any database backup operations. To verify that Circular Logging is disabled:
 - From Exchange System Manager, navigate to and expand the server that the Database *i*DataAgent is being installed on.
 - Verify that the Circular Logging check box has not been selected for each Storage Group. If Circular Logging has been enabled for a Storage Group, disable it at this time.

Click OK.

- If you are installing the Exchange Agents, then click Configure Exchange Agents Specific Information.
- If you are installing the Exchange Database iDataAgent, skip to Install Remaining Cluster Nodes.

CONFIGURE EXCHANGE AGENTS SPECIFIC INFORMATION

21. Select Exchange Server Name and Exchange Server Version from drop-down list.

Click Next.

This screen will appear when you are installing Exchange Agents on Non-Exchange Server.

22. Click Next.

- 23. Enter the following Exchange Administrator information then click **Next**.
 - Account Name Domain user account created with the exchange server administrator permissions. Do not include the domain name here.
 - Account Password The password assigned to the domain user.
 - Mailbox Name for this Account Mailbox associated with the user above.
 - **Profile Name** Specify profile name to be created during agent install. This profile is associated with the domain user's mailbox.
 - Exchange Server Name Name of the Exchange Server that the agent will communicate with for data protection and recovery operations.
 - **Domain** The installation detects and enters a domain name. If necessary, modify the domain name by specifying Windows domain that the Exchange Server resides in.

Installer	×
Exchange Serve	nr Namo
	hange server name
T lease provide Exc	hange server hane
	Exchange Server
	Exchange Server Name:
	Exchange_Server
	Exchange Server Version
	Exchange 2007
Installer	
Installer	
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext> <u>C</u> ancel
Installer	
matutter	
Summary	
Summary of install :	selections
Setup has enou	ugh information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the
install settings,	click Next to begin copying files.
	<u></u>
Destination Pat	n = C:\Program Files\
CommServe Ho	h = C:\Program Files\ ist = mycomputer.mycompany.com = audi.mycompany.com
Client =audi	= aua:nycompany.com
Job Results Pat	h = C:\Program Files\JobResults
Global Filters =	Use Cell level policy 🧓
<	
Installer	
	<back next=""> Cancel</back>
Installer	
Exchange Admi	nistrator Account
Information	
Mailbox and Profile	information
the information sup	change account information required below. A new profile will be created with plied
ule monitation sup	pileu.
Account Name:	Profile Name:
Account Password	Exchange Server Name:
ACCOUNT PassWord	Exchange berver ivallie.
Mailbox Name for t	his Account: Domain:
	,
Installer	
Installer	(Back Next) Cancel
Installer	<back next=""> Cancel</back>

INSTALL REMAINING CLUSTER NODES

24. To install the software on the remaining nodes of the cluster, click Yes.To complete the install for this node only, click No.

25. Select cluster nodes from the **Preferred Nodes** list and click the arrow button to move them to the **Selected Nodes** list.

Once you complete your selections, click Next.

- The list of **Preferred Nodes** displays all the nodes found in the cluster; from this list you should only select cluster nodes configured to host this cluster group server.
- Do not select nodes that already have multiple instances installed.



- 26. Specify User Name and Password for the Domain Administrator account Information to perform the remote install on the cluster nodes you selected in the previous step.
 - Click Next.

27. The progress of the remote install for the cluster nodes is displayed; the install can be interrupted if necessary.

Click **Stop** to prevent installation to any nodes after the current ones complete.

Click Advanced Settings to specify any of the following:

- Maximum number of nodes on which Setup can run simultaneously.
- Time allocated for Setup to begin executing on each node, after which the install attempt will fail.
- Time allocated for Setup to complete on each node, after which the install attempt will fail.

If, during the remote install of a cluster node, setup fails to complete or is interrupted, you must perform a local install on that node. When you do, the install begins from where it left off, or from the beginning if necessary. For procedures, see Manually Installing the Software on a Passive Node.

28. Read the summary for remote installation to verify that all selected nodes were installed successfully.

Click Next.

- If any node installation fails, you must manually install the software on that node once the current installation is complete. See Manually Installing the Software on a Passive Node for step-by-step instructions.
- The message displayed on your screen will reflect the status of the selected nodes, and may look different from the example.

29. Click Next.

	,
	Account Password:
	< Back Next > Cancel
Instal	er (
prog	i can stop remote install at any time. Installed clients will not be uninstalled. Clients in ress will continue installation, but their results will not show correctly.
_	
	ient Name Client Status Start Time End Time Result Description al2
•	
	talled successfully: 0 Left to install: 1 led to install: 0 In progress: 0 Max: 1 $\frac{1}{-1}$
	psed time: 0 sec Estimated time left: 10 min 0 sec
	Installer
A	dvanced Settings
	Time to wait for Setup to complete on each remote machine: 15 🛃 minutes
nstall	<u> </u>
Resu	er e
Resu	o <u>k</u>
Resu Rer	er (
Resu Rer Su	er CK
Resu Rer Su The	
Resu Rer Su The	er C
Resu Rer Su The	
Resu Rer Su The	
Rest Rer Su Th	er Its Instel results Inmay of remote install Following software (Version) were selected to be installed:
Resu Rer Su The	C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C
Rest Rer Su Th	er Its Instel results Inmay of remote install Following software (Version) were selected to be installed:
Rest Rer Su Th RE	
Rest Rer Su Th RE	C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C
Resu Rer Su RE	
Resu Rer Su RE	C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C
Ress Rer Su Th RE	
Ress Rer Su Thi RE I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I	
Ress Rer Su Thi RE	
Ress Rer Su The RE	

Domain administrator account information

Please provide domain admir

Software i	istallation completed successfully.	
Visit the w	ebsite below to download latest Updates and Service Pa	acks.
Click Finis	n to complete Setup.	



If you do not have Storage Policy created, continue with the following step.

- 31. Create a Storage Policy:
 - 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Policies.
 - 2. Right-click the Storage Policies and then click New Storage Policy.
 - 3. Follow the prompts displayed in the Storage Policy Wizard. The required options are mentioned below:
 - Select the Storage Policy type as Data Protection and Archiving and click Next.
 - $\circ~$ Enter the name in the Storage Policy Name box and click Next.
 - From the **Library** list, click the name of a disk library to which the primary copy should be associated and then click **Next**.

Ensure that you select a library attached to a MediaAgent operating in the current release.

- From the MediaAgent list, click the name of a MediaAgent that will be used to create the primary copy and then click Next.
- For the device streams and the retention criteria information, click Next to accept default values.
- $\circ~$ Select Yes to enable deduplication for the primary copy.
- From the **MediaAgent** list, click the name of the MediaAgent that will be used to store the Deduplication store.

Type the name of the folder in which the deduplication database must be located in the Deduplication Store Location or click the Browse button to select the folder and then click **Next**.

 $\circ~$ Review the details and click Finish to create the Storage Policy.

32. Enable the following registry key to create job specific profiles:

- From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers.
- Right-click the <Client> in which you want to add the registry key, and then click Properties.
- Click the Registry Key Settings tab.
- Click Add.
- Enter CreateProcessSpecificProfile in the Name field.
- Enter MSExchangeMBAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

Enter MSExchangeDMAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

- Enter REG_DWORD in the Type filed.
- Enter 1 to enable and 0 to disable the key in the Value field.
- Click OK.



Previous Next >

Install the 32-bit Exchange Agents for Exchange Server 2010 or 2007



Follow the steps given below to install Exchange Agents on one of the following:

- 64-bit Exchange Server 2010
- 64-bit Exchange Server 2007
- 64-bit Non-Exchange Server

WHERE TO INSTALL

The Exchange Agents can be installed in one of two ways:

- Directly onto the Exchange Server. This method is referred to as an on-host installation and is useful if you want to preserve hardware resources.
- On a separate computer with connectivity to the Exchange Server. This method is referred to as an Non-Exchange Server installation and is useful if you want to offload the memory and processing resources required for backups and restores from the Exchange Server.

Install the Exchange Agents on all the nodes on which backups have to be run in a DAG configuration.

INSTALLATION

The software can be installed using one of the following methods:

METHOD 1: INTERACTIVE INSTALL

Use this procedure to directly install the software from the installation package or a **System Requirements** network drive.

METHOD 2: INSTALL SOFTWARE FROM COMMCELL CONSOLE

Use this procedure to remotely install the software on a client computer.

RELATED TOPICS

Download Software	Packages		
Provides step-by-step p packages for software i	procedure to install.	download	the latest

Verify that the computer in which you wish to install the software satisfies the System Requirements.

Firewall

Provides comprehensive information on firewall.

PREREQUISITES

If you are installing the Exchange Agents on a 64-bit off-host proxy computer, perform the following pre-requisite task before installing these agents:

- Ensure that the proxy computer has been added to the same Domain in which the Exchange Server 2007 resides.
- Install Microsoft Outlook 2007 or higher on the off-host proxy computer in order to supply the software drivers necessary for Exchange-based agents to function in an off-host proxy configuration.

The below mentioned prerequisites are for Mailbox Agents only. Ensure that you have the following:

FOR EXCHANGE SERVER 2010

- Ensure that the service account is a member of Organization Management group.
- Ensure that the mail-enabled user is a member of the Local Administrator Group and have rights to all mailboxes on the server.
- To assign full access follow the steps given below:
- Using ADSIEDIT navigate to Configuration | Services | Microsoft Exchange.
- Right-click your organization name, click Properties | Securities and click the Advanced tab.
- Click Edit to modify the permissions set for Organization Management group.
- Click to select Full Control, Receive As and Send As permissions and wait for replication.
- Click the Effective Permission tab and Select the name of the backup account.
- The backup account should display the following as selected:

Full Control

All Extended Rights

Send As

Receive As

• Start the PowerShell and type the following to add the backup account so it has full control over all the databases:

Get-MailboxDatabase -server (server name) | Add-ADPermission -user "backup account" -ExtendedRights Receive-As

Run the above PowerShell every time a new database is added.

• Navigate to the Exchange Management Console, right-click the <mailbox> and click Manage Full Access Permissions to view the mailbox listed under Full Access Permissions.

FOR EXCHANGE SERVER 2007

- Service account should be a member of Exchange Organization Administrators group.
- Ensure that the mail-enabled user is a member of the Local Administrator Group and have rights to all mailboxes on the server.

METHOD 1: INTERACTIVE INSTALL

INSTALL THE EXCHANGE DATABASE /DATAAGENT

The Exchange Database iDataAgent must be installed first. Follow the steps described below to install Exchange Database iDataAgent.

- **1.** Log on to the computer using an account with the following privileges:
 - Administrator of the local computer
 - Administrator of the Exchange Server

2. Run Setup.exe from Software Installation Package.

3. Select the required language.

Click Next.

4.	Select the option t	o Install	Calypso on	this	64-bit	computer
	beleet the option t				• • • • •	

Your screen may look different from the example shown.

5.	$eq:select_sele$
	Click Next.

Select the language you will use during installation.
<u>Next></u>
1
 Install Software on this 64-bit computer Advanced options
 View Install Quick Start Guide (Requires Adobe Acrobat Reader) Install Adobe Acrobat Reader Exit
Installer License Agreement Please read the following License Agreement. Press the PAGE DDWN key to view the entire agreement.
End User License and Limited Warranty Agreement Software Release 90.0
(including Microsoft/⊕ SQL Server™ 2008 Enterprise Edition, SQL Server™ 2008 Express Edition and Windows Pre-Installation Environment) Fuel House Lineare Assumement
 I accept the terms in the license agreement. I do not accept the terms in the license agreement.
Installer

6. Expand Client Modules | Backup & Recovery | Exchange | File System and select Exchange Database *i*DataAgent.

	Installer				
	Select Platforms Select the platforms you we	ant to configure.			
	Common Techn Common Techn CommServe CommCell C	ology Engine Modules ionsole	,	Move the pointe platform name to description of the reasons why it m disabled.	see a platform and
	MediaAgent Client Modules D Client Modules D Backup & B D Content Ind D Web Based	ecovery exing and Search Search & Browse		Disk Space (Req/Recomme Installation Fol	der:
	Carchive Mar Continuous Carcinu	DataReplicator		0 MB/1 Temporary on 0 MB/1	C: drive: D MB
	Installer —	: Only	< Back	Special Registry	Keys In Use Cancel
figure	Installer				X
	Firewall Configuration Configure firewall services	n			2
	If there is a firewall between If there is a firewall between If Configure firewall servi		the CommServe, co	nfigure firewall servi	ces below.
	Please specify how Win connection from here to CommServe are blocked machine, or whether the	dows Firewall is limiti a CommServe's tuni I, and setup should i re is a Proxy in betw	ng network traffic. V nel port, whether all nstead expect Comr een.	/hether it is possible connections toward nServe to connect b	to open rack to this
	 This machine can ope CommServe can oper CommServe is reachage 	o connection toward	this machine		
	Installer —			Next >	Cancel
	Installer CommServe Name				×
	Specify the CommServe co name	omputer name and h	ost		
	CommServe Clier	nt Name			
	mycomputer.myc	ly-qualified, IP host r ompany.com)	name; for example:		
	mycomputer.my	company.com			
	Installer —		< Back	Next>	Cancel
	Installer	6 N-			X
	Communication Interf Setup will configure the co				
		elect a client name Idi <u>c</u> n		•	
	c0	elect an interface na mmunicate with the idi.mycompany.com	CommServe	er will use to	
		adi.mycompany.com		Ŀ	
	Installer —		< Back	Next >	Cancel
nCell					

 If this computer and the CommServe is separated by a firewall, select the Configure firewall services option and then click Next.

For firewall options and configuration instructions, see Firewall Configuration and continue with the installation.

If firewall configuration is not required, click **Next**.

 Enter the fully qualified domain name of the CommServe Host Name. Click Next.

Do not use space and the following characters when specifying a new name for the CommServe Host Name:

\|`~!@#\$%^&*()+=<>/?,[]{}:;'"

9. Click Next.

 Select Add programs to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List, to add CommCel programs and services to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List.

Click Next.

This option enables CommCell operations across Windows firewall by adding CommCell programs and services to Windows firewall exclusion list.

It is recommended to select this option even if Windows firewall is disabled. This will allow the CommCell programs and services to function if the Windows firewall is enabled at a later time.

11.

12.

13.

	Windows Firewall Exclusion List Allow programs to communicate through Windows Firewall
	Windows Firewall is DN
	Add programs to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List
	If you plan on using Windows Firewall, it is recommended to add the software programs to the exclusion list.
	Installer Cancel
Verify the default location for software installation.	Installer
Click Browse to change the default location.	Destination Folder Select the destination folder to install the program files.
Click Next.	
 Do not install the software to a mapped network drive. 	Click Next to accept the default location, or click Browse to choose an alternate location.
 Do not use the following characters when specifying the destination path: 	Destination Folder ENProgram Files Browse
/:*?"<> #	
It is recommended that you use alphanumeric characters only.	Drive List C: 928 MB Space Required / Recommended 1394 MB / 1670 MB
	Installer < Back Cancel
Select a Client Group from the list.	Installer
Click Next.	Client Group Selection
Click Next .	
Click Next . This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the CommCell Console.	Client Group Selection
This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the	Client Group Selection Select a client group for the client. The Client Group is a logical grouping of client machines which have the same associations at various levels like Schedule Policy, Activity Control, Security and Reports.
This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the	Client Group Selection Select a client group for the client. The Client Group is a logical grouping of client machines which have the same associations at various levels like Schedule Policy, Activity Control, Security and Reports. Client group: None Selected
This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the	Client Group Selection Select a client group for the client. The Client Group is a logical grouping of client machines which have the same associations at various levels like Schedule Policy, Activity Control, Security and Reports. Client group:
This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the	Client Group Selection Select a client group for the client. The Client Group is a logical grouping of client machines which have the same associations at various levels like Schedule Policy, Activity Control, Security and Reports. Client group: None Selected client_group
This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the	Client Group Selection Select a client group for the client. The Client Group is a logical grouping of client machines which have the same associations at various levels like Schedule Policy, Activity Control, Security and Reports. Client group: None Selected
This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the CommCell Console.	Client Group Selection Select a client group for the client. The Client Group is a logical grouping of client machines which have the same associations at various levels like Schedule Policy, Activity Control, Security and Reports. Client group: None Selected client_group Installer < Back Next> Cancel
This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the	Client Group Selection Select a client group for the client. The Client Group is a logical grouping of client machines which have the same associations at various levels like Schedule Policy, Activity Control, Security and Reports. Client group: None Selected client_group
This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the CommCell Console.	Client Group Selection Select a client group for the client. The Client Group is a logical grouping of client machines which have the same associations at various levels like Schedule Policy, Activity Control, Security and Reports. Client group: None Selected client_group Installer Cancel Schedule Install of Automatic Updates Choose when you want to schedule an install of the
This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the CommCell Console.	Client Group Selection Select a client group for the client The Client Group is a logical grouping of client machines which have the same associations at various levels like Schedule Policy, Activity Control, Security and Reports. Client group: None Selected clien_group Installer Schedule Install of Automatic Updates Choose when you want to schedule an install of the downloaded updates. Schedule Install of Automatic Updates Choose when you want to schedule an install of the downloaded updates. Schedule Install of Automatic Updates Choose when you want to schedule an install of the downloaded updates. Schedule Install of Automatic Updates Choose when you want to schedule an install of the downloaded updates.
This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the CommCell Console.	Client Group Selection Select a client group for the client The Client Group is a logical grouping of client machines which have the same associations at various levels like Schedule Policy, Activity Control, Security and Reports. Client group: None Selected clien_group Installer Installer Schedule Install of Automatic Updates Choose when you want to schedule on install of the downloaded updates. Conce
This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the CommCell Console.	Client Group Selection Select a client group for the client. The Client Group is a logical grouping of client machines which have the same associations at various levels fike Schedule Policy, Activity Control, Security and Reports. Client group: None Selected client_group Installer Schedule Install of Automatic Updates Choose when you want to schedule an install of the downloaded updates. Choose when you want to schedule an install of the downloaded updates. Schedule Install of Automatic Updates Choose when you want to schedule an install of the downloaded updates. Conce Time: Distaller Time: Distaller Time: Distaller
This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the CommCell Console.	Client Group Selection Select a client group for the client The Client Group is a logical grouping of client machines which have the same associations at various levels like Schedule Policy, Activity Control, Security and Reports. Client group: None Selected clien_group Installer Installer Schedule Install of Automatic Updates Choose when you want to schedule on install of the downloaded updates. Conce
This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the CommCell Console.	Client Group Selection Select a client group for the client. The Client Group is a logical grouping of client machines which have the same associations at various levels like Schedule Policy, Activity Control, Security and Reports. Client group: None Selected Client_group Installer Activity Control, Security and Reports. Cancel Installer Cancel Next> Cancel Schedule Install of Automatic Updates Choose when you want to schedule an install of the downloaded updates. Choose when you want to schedule an install of the downloaded updates. Conce Weekly Weekly Weekly Weekly Weekley Time: 02:31:12 PM = Thussday
This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the CommCell Console.	Client Group is a logical grouping of client machines We client Group is a logical grouping of client machines We client Group is a logical grouping of client machines We client Group is a logical grouping of client machines We client Group is a logical grouping of client machines We client Group is a logical grouping of client machines We client group: Client group: None Selected Installer Cancel Install of Automatic Updates Checkule Install of Automatic Updates Once Imm: 08/31:12 PM 📩 We ekly We defeed Imm: 08/31:12 PM 📩 © Once Imm: 08/31:12 PM 📩 © Mondage Time: 08/31:12 PM 📩 © Mondage © Thu colspan="2"

14. Select a Storage Policy. Click Next.

X

Storage Policy Selection Select a storage policy for the default subclient to be backed up. 🔲 Configure for Laptop or Desktop Backup Select a storage policy from the pull-down list. -Unassigned Installe < Back Next> Cancel If you do not have Storage Policy created, this message will be displayed. nillo rage Policy Selection Select a storage policy for the default subcl ent to be Click OK. Configure for Laptop or Desktop Backup You can create the Storage Policy later in step 21. Next > Cancel Select the backup type for Exchange Database backups. Choose either of the 15. Installe following options, then click Next. Exchange Backup Options Please select a default backup type • Differential - Specifies that each non-full Exchange Database backup secures all data that has changed since the last full backup. Transaction lobs are not purged. • Incremental - Specifies that each non-full Exchange Database backup secures Backs up changes in the Information Store and Directory Service since the last Full backup. Does not purge the transaction logs. C Differential only that data that has changed since the last backup of any type. Committed transaction logs are purged. Incremental p changes in the minimum ad Directory Service since the kup or Incremental backup. ad transaction logs are then Installer <Back Next> Cancel 16. Enter the user credentials to access the Exchange Server to perform the backup × operation. Enter Administrator account information Enter Administrator account information • The User Account must have Exchange Administrator privileges. • The installation detects the domain name. If necessary, you can Account Name modify the domain name by specifying Windows domain that the Exchange Server resides in. Account Passwo Cancel 17. Click Next. Installer Summary Summary of install selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. ^ Destination Path = C:\Program Files\ CommServe Host = mycomputer.mycompany.com Interface Name = audi.mycompany.com Client = audi Job Results Path = C:\Program Files\JobResults Global Filters = Lise Cell level notice * Installer < Back Next > Cancel

Installer

18. The install program displays a reminder to verify that Circular Logging is disabled before performing any database backup operations. To verify that Circular Logging is

disabled:

- From Exchange System Manager, navigate to and expand the server that the Database *i*DataAgent is being installed on.
- Verify that the Circular Logging check box has not been selected for each Storage Group. If Circular Logging has been enabled for a Storage Group, disable it at this time.

Click OK.

19. Click Next.

20. Click Finish.



mstutter	للعن
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder	
Please note: You still need to create a Job Schedule for each iDataAgent that has been installed on this client computer. Job Schedule creation can be accomplished through the CommCell Console administration interface. Installer	
Installer (Completion Report Setup complete	×
Software installation completed successfully.]

If you already have a storage policy selected in step 14, Click Next > button available at the bottom of the page to proceed to the **Configuration** section.

If you do not have Storage Policy created, continue with the following step.

21. Create a Storage Policy:

5

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to **Policies**.
- 2. Right-click the Storage Policies and then click New Storage Policy.
- 3. Follow the prompts displayed in the Storage Policy Wizard. The required options are mentioned below:
 - Select the Storage Policy type as Data Protection and Archiving and click Next.
 - $\circ~$ Enter the name in the Storage Policy Name box and click Next.
 - From the Library list, click the name of a disk library to which the primary copy should be associated and then click Next.

Ensure that you select a library attached to a MediaAgent operating in the current release.

- From the MediaAgent list, click the name of a MediaAgent that will be used to create the primary copy and then click Next.
- For the device streams and the retention criteria information, click Next to accept default values.
- Select **Yes** to enable deduplication for the primary copy.
- From the **MediaAgent** list, click the name of the MediaAgent that will be used to store the Deduplication store.

Type the name of the folder in which the deduplication database must be located in the Deduplication Store Location or click the Browse button to select the folder and then click **Next**.

 $\circ~$ Review the details and click Finish to create the Storage Policy.

• If you want to install Exchange Agents (such as Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent, Exchange Public Folder iDataAgent, Exchange Mailbox Archiver



and/or Exchange Public Folder Archiver), click Create the Registry Keys.

 If you are installing the Exchange Database iDataAgent, click Next > button available at the bottom of the page to proceed to the Configuration section.

CREATE THE REGISTRY KEYS

Create the bAllowMultiInstances and bAllow32BitInstallOn64Bit registry keys.

22. Create the bAllowMultiInstances registry key.

To create the registry key, see the following steps:

- 1. Start the Registry Editor (Regedit.exe or Redegt32.exe)
- Locate the directory under which you want to create a key, e.g., HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\.
- 3. Right click the SOFTWARE and click New -> Key.
- 4. Name the key as GalaxyInstallerFlags.
- 5. Right click the GalaxyInstallerFlags and select New -> DWORD value, name it as bAllowMultiInstances and by double clicking the bAllowMultiInstances key modify the Value data to 1.

To create the registry key, see the following steps:

- 1. Start the Registry Editor (Regedit.exe or Regedit32.exe)
- Locate the directory under which you want to create a key, e.g., HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Wow6432Node.
- 3. Right click the SOFTWARE and click New -> Key.
- 4. Name the key as GalaxyInstallerFlags.
- 5. Right click the GalaxyInstallerFlags and select New > DWORD value, name it as bAllow32BitInstallOn64Bit and by double clicking the bAllow32BitInstallOn64Bit key modify the Value data to 1.

Select the language you will use during installation. English (United States)	
	Next > Cancel
= Software install options = 32-bit Software install options	⊜ Esit

24. Run Setup.exe from Software Installation Package.

Create the bAllow32BitInstallOn64Bit registry key.

25. Select the required language. Click Next.

23.

- 26. Select the Calypso 32-bit Software install options to install software.
 NOTES
 - This screen will only appear when the bAllow32BitInstallOn64Bit registry key has been created and enabled on this computer.

27. Select I accept the terms in the license agreement. Click Next.
28. Select **Create a new instance** option to install the Exchange Agents on separate instance.

NOTES

- This screen will appear when the bAllowMultiInstances registry key has enabled on this computer.
- This screen will not appear if no other software components are installed on the computer.
- 29. To install the Exchange iDataAgents expand Client Modules | Backup & Recovery | Exchange, and select one or more of the following:
 - Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent
 - Exchange Public Folder iDataAgent

To install the **Exchange Archiver Agents**, expand **Client Modules | Archive Management**, and select one or more of the following:

- Exchange Compliance Archiver
- Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent
- Exchange Public Folder Archiver Agent

Click Next.

Note that the Exchange Database *i*DataAgents must be installed on the Exchange Server, see Install the Exchange Database *i*DataAgent for stepby-step procedure.

30. If this computer and the CommServe is separated by a firewall, select the **Configure firewall services** option and then click **Next**.

For firewall options and configuration instructions, see Firewall Configuration and continue with the installation.

If firewall configuration is not required, click **Next**.

License Agr	eement
Please read the	ne following License Agreement. Press WN key to view the entire agreement.
dio Fride Do	
	3
En	d User License and Limited Warranty Agreement
	Software Release 9.0.0
(includin	ng Microsoft® SQL Server™ 2008 Enterprise Edition, SQL Server™
200	8 Express Edition and Windows Pre-Installation Environment)
	Eud Hoov I izouzo Azmoniaut 💉
I accept	the terms in the license agreement.
	accept the terms in the license agreement.
Install	
	< Back Next > Cancel
nstaller	
	nce Selection
Please specify	the instance you want to use during
install.	
	Instance Selection
	Create a new instance (Not recommended)
	Create a new instance (Not recommended) Install to existing instance
	Select an installed instance.
	Select an installeu instance.
	Client Name
	Client Host Name
	CommServe Name
Install	er
	< Back Next > Cancel
-	
nstaller	
Select Platfo	
Select Platfo	orms Informs you want to configure.
Select Platfo	
Select Platfo Select the plat	forms you want to configure.
Select Platfo Select the plat	forms you want to configure. mmon Technology Engine Compare Not the
Select Platfo Select the plat Cor Cor Cor Cor Cor Cor Cor Cor	tforms you want to configure. Move the pointer over a platform name to see a CommServe Modules CommCell Console
Select Platfo Select the plat Concernent Concernent Concernent Concernent Concernent Concernent Concernent Concernent Concernent Concernent Concernent Concernent Concernent Concerne	troms you want to configure. Move the pointer over a plation name to see a description of the plations a description of the p
Select Platfo Select the plat Cor Cor Cor Cor Cor Cor Cor Cor	troms you want to configure.
Select Platfic Select the plat Control Control Contro	troms you want to configure. mmon Technology Engine CommServe Modules CommCell Console MediaAgent Modules Rackup & Recovery Rackup & Recovery (Req/Recommended)
Select Platfo	troms you want to configure.
Select Platfic Select the plat	troms you want to configure.
Select Platfi Select the plat Cor	troms you want to configure. moon Technology Engine CommCel Console MediaAgent Modules Context Indexing and Search Wob Based Search & Browse Archive Management ContinuousDate Replacion SFM Supporting Modules
Select Platfe Select the plat Cor Cor Cor Cor Cor Cor Cor Cor	troms you want to configure.
Select Platfi Select the plat Cor	troms you want to configure.
Select Platfi Select the plat Con Con Con Con Con Con Con Con	troms you want to configure.
Select Platfi Select the plat Con Con Con Con Con Con Con Con	troms you want to configure.
Select Platf Select the plat Constant of th	troms you want to configure.
Select Platf Select the plat Construction	troms you want to configure.
Select Platfi Select the plat Corr	tioms you want to configure.
Select Platf Select the plat Construction	tioms you want to configure.
Select Platfi Select the plat Corr	tioms you want to configure.
Select Platfi Select the plat Con Con Con Con Con Con Configure firev	tioms you want to configure.
Select Platfi Select the plat Con Con Con Con Con Configure firev If there is a fir	tioms you want to configure.
Select Platfi Select the plat Con Con Con Con Con Configure firev If there is a fir	tioms you want to configure.
Select Platfi Select the plat Configure the plat Co	tioms you want to configure. moon Technology Engine CommCell Console MediaAgent Modules CommCell Console MediaAgent Modules modules Backup & Recovery Content Indexing and Search Web Based Search & Browse Archive Management ContinuouUDate Placiton SMM Gend/Recommended Installation Folde: UMB/OMB Sec Backup Vestor Special Registry Keys In Us set of Restore Only Cancel figuration figuration figuration figuration figures fies figures figures fies figures
Select Platfi Select the plat Configure the plat Co	tioms you want to configure. moon Technology Engine CommCell Console MediaAgent Modules CommCell Console MediaAgent Modules modules Backup & Recovery Content Indexing and Search Web Based Search & Browse Archive Management ContinuouUDate Placiton SMM Gend/Recommended Installation Folde: UMB/OMB Sec Backup Vestor Special Registry Keys In Us set of Restore Only Cancel figuration figuration figuration figuration figures fies figures figures fies figures
Select Platfi Select the plat Compared to the plat Compared to the plat Compared to the plat Compared to the plat Configure the plat Install Agent Install Agent If there is a fir Configure the Configure the Confi	troms you want to configure.
Select Platfi Select the plat Configure the plat Co	tioms you want to configure. moon Technology Engine CommCell Console MediaAgent Modules CommCell Console MediaAgent Modules modules Backup & Recovery Content Indexides Backup & Recovery Backup & Recovery Content Indexides Backup & Recovery Backu

Installer

31. Enter the fully qualified domain name of the **CommServe Host Name**.

Click Next.

Do not use space and the following characters when specifying a new name for the CommServe Host Name:

\|`~!@#\$%^&*()+=<>/?,[]{}:;'"

Next>

Cance

32. Click Next.

If there is any other instance installed on the computer, make sure that the host name does not match the client name entered in the **Select a client name** field in the previous instance.

33. Select Add programs to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List, to add CommCell programs and services to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List.

Click Next.

This option enables CommCell operations across Windows firewall by adding CommCell programs and services to Windows firewall exclusion list.

It is recommended to select this option even if Windows firewall is disabled. This will allow the CommCell programs and services to function if the Windows firewall is enabled at a later time.

34 Verify the default location for software installation.

Click **Browse** to change the default location.

Click Next.

- Do not install the software to a mapped network drive.
- Do not use the following characters when specifying the destination path:

/:*?"<>|#

It is recommended that you use alphanumeric characters only.

35. Select a Client Group from the list.

Click Next.

This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the CommCell Console.

nstaller	
CommServe Nam	
	rve computer name and host
name	
CommServe	e Client Name
J	
CommServe	e Host Name Ilid, fully-qualified, IP host name; for example:
mycompute	inu, rung-quanneu, re nosc name, ror example. er.mycompany.com)
mycomput	er. mycompany. com
Installer	
	<back next=""> Cancel</back>
	Carbon Carbon
taller	
ommunication I	
Jecup will configure t	he communication paths.
	Coloria di stati anno
	Select a client name
	audi_cn
	Select an interface name that this computer will use to communicate with the CommServe
	audi.mycompany.com
	IP Address(es) for the selected host.
Installer	
matalier	< Back Next > Cancel
	< Back Next > Cancel
4-11	
taller	
'indows Firewal	
findows Firewal Allow programs to co	II Exclusion List mmunicate through Windows
findows Firewal Allow programs to co	
findows Firewal Allow programs to co Firewall	mmunicate through Windows
findows Firewal Allow programs to co	mmunicate through Windows
Findows Firewal Allow programs to co Firewall Windows Firewa	mmunicate through Windows Il is ON
Findows Firewal Allow programs to co Firewall Windows Firewa	mmunicate through Windows
Tindows Firewall Allow programs to co Firewall Windows Firewa Add program	mmunicate through Windows Il is ON Is to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List
indows Firewal Allow programs to co Firewall Windows Firewa I Add program	mmunicate through Windows Il is ON
indows Firewal Allow programs to co Firewall Windows Firewa	mmunicate through Windows Il is ON Is to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List
indows Firewal Allow programs to co Firewall Windows Firewa I Add program	mmunicate through Windows Il is ON Is to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List
indows Firewal Allow programs to co Firewall Windows Firewa I Add program	mmunicate through Windows Il is ON Is to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List
Findows Firewal Allow programs to co Firewall Windows Firewa ✓ Add program	mmunicate through Windows Il is ON Is to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List
findows Firewal Allow programs to co Firewall Windows Firewa I Add program	mmunicate through Windows Il is ON Is to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List
Findows Firewal Allow programs to co Frewall Windows Firewal Add program If you plan on us exclusion list.	mmunicate through Windows Il is ON Is to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List
Findows Firewal Allow programs to co Firewall Windows Firewa ✓ Add program	mmunicate through Windows Il is ON Is to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List
indows Firewal Allow programs to co Frewall Windows Firewal ✓ Add program If you plan on us exclusion list.	mmunicate through Windows Il is ON Is to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List
Findows Firewal Allow programs to co Frewall Windows Firewal Add program If you plan on us exclusion list.	mmunicate through Windows all is DN is to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List ing Windows Firewall, it is recommended to add the software programs to the
Andows Firewal Allow programs to co Frewal Windows Firewal Add program If you plan on us exclusion list.	mmunicate through Windows all is DN is to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List ing Windows Firewall, it is recommended to add the software programs to the
Allow programs to co Freewall Windows Firewa I Add program If you plan on us exclusion list.	mmunicate through Windows all is DN is to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List ing Windows Firewall, it is recommended to add the software programs to the
Vindows Firewal Allow programs to co Firewal Windows Firewa I windows Firewa Add program If you plan on us exclusion list. Installer	mmunicate through Windows all is DN as to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List ing Windows Firewall, it is recommended to add the software programs to the
Vindows Firewal Allow programs to co Frewal Vindows Firewa Add program If you plan on us exclusion list. Installer	mmunicate through Windows all is DN as to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List ing Windows Firewall. it is recommended to add the software programs to the
Vindows Firewal Allow programs to co Frewal Vindows Firewa Add program If you plan on us exclusion list. Installer	mmunicate through Windows all is DN as to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List ing Windows Firewall, it is recommended to add the software programs to the
Vindows Firewal Allow programs to co Frewal Vindows Firewa Add program If you plan on us exclusion list. Installer	mmunicate through Windows all is DN as to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List ing Windows Firewall. it is recommended to add the software programs to the
Allow programs to co Frewall Windows Firewal Add program If you plan on us exclusion list.	mmunicate through Windows all is DN as to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List ing Windows Firewall. it is recommended to add the software programs to the
Vindows Firewal Allow programs to co Firewal Vindows Firewa Add program If you plan on us exclusion list. Installer	mmunicate through Windows all is DN as to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List ing Windows Firewall. it is recommended to add the software programs to the
Vindows Firewal Allow programs to co Firewal Vindows Firewa Add program If you plan on us exclusion list. Installer staller testination Folde Select the destination	mmunicate through Windows all is DN as to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List ing Windows Firewall. it is recommended to add the software programs to the
Andows Firewal Allow programs to co Frewall Windows Firewa If you plan on us exclusion list. Installer	mmunicate through Windows all is DN as to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List ing Windows Firewall, it is recommended to add the software programs to the Cancel To folder to install the program files.
findows Firewal Allow programs to co Frewall ✓ Windows Firewa ✓ Add program If you plan on us exclusion list. Installer	emunicate through Windows all is DN as to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List ing Windows Firewall, it is recommended to add the software programs to the cancel control of the software program files. The default location, or click Browse to choose an alternate location.
Tindows Firewal Allow programs to co Frewall Windows Firewal Add program If you plan on us exclusion list. Installer Statler Statler Click Next to accept Destination Folde	emunicate through Windows all is DN as to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List ing Windows Firewall Exclusion List cancel (Seck Next> Cancel (Seck Next>) (Seck Next+Next+Next+Next+Next+Next+Next+Next+
Andows Firewal Allow programs to co Freewall Windows Firewal & Add program If you plan on us exclusion list. Installer staller estimation Folde Select the destination	emunicate through Windows all is DN as to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List ing Windows Firewall Exclusion List cancel (Seck Next> Cancel (Seck Next>) (Seck Next+Next+Next+Next+Next+Next+Next+Next+
Allow programs to co Freewall Windows Firewal Windows Firewal If Add program If you plan on us exclusion list. Installer staller staller Click Next to accept Destination Folde	emunicate through Windows all is DN as to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List ing Windows Firewall Exclusion List cancel (Seck Next> Cancel (Seck Next>) (Seck Next+Next+Next+Next+Next+Next+Next+Next+
Vindows Firewal Allow programs to co Firewall Windows Firewa & Add program If you plan on us exclusion list. Installer statler estination Folde Select the destination Click. Next to accept Destination Folde Netrogram Files	emunicate through Windows all is DN as to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List ing Windows Firewall, it is recommended to add the software programs to the cancel ca
Allow programs to co Freewall Windows Firewal Addu programs to co Freewall Add program If you plan on us exclusion list. Installer staller estination Folde Select the destination Elick. Next to accept Destination Folde ENProgram Files	Interface and a second
Andows Firewal Allow programs to co Frewall Windows Firewal If Add program If you plan on us exclusion list. Installer Statler Estimation Folde Select the destination Click Next to accept Destination Folde	emunicate through Windows all is DN as to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List ing Windows Firewall, it is recommended to add the software programs to the cancel ca
Vindows Firewal Allow programs to co Frewall Windows Firewa Add program If you plan on us exclusion list. Installer staller estination Folde Select the destination Click. Next to accept Destination Folde ENProgram Fires	Interface and a second

< Back

Next>

Cancel

36. Click Next.

37. Select a Storage Policy. Click Next.

If you do not have Storage Policy created, this message will be displayed. Click ${\bf OK}.$

You can create the Storage Policy later in step 43.

38. Select **Exchange Server Name** and **Exchange Server Version** from drop-down list.

Click Next.

This screen will appear when you are installing $\ensuremath{\mathsf{Exchange}}$ Agents on Non-Exchange Server.

	2				
Client Group Selection Select a client group for the					
Select a client group for the					
The Clean	Crown is a lawingly exercises of alignst excelsions				
which have Schedule E	Group is a logical grouping of client machines e the same associations at various levels like Policy, Activity Control, Security and Reports.				
Schedule Policy, Activity Control, Security and reports.					
Client group:					
None	_group				
,					
Installer —					
	< Back Next > Cancel				
Installer	2				
Schedule Install of Au Choose when you want to					
downloaded updates.					
✓ Schedule Install of A	utomatic Undates				
C Once	Time: 09:21:12 DM				
Weekly	Time: 08:31:12 PM				
	Monday C Tuesday				
	C Wednesday C Thursday				
	C Friday C Saturday				
	C Sunday				
Installer —					
	< Back Next > Cancel				
Installer	Σ				
Storage Policy Selec	tion				
Select a storage policy for	the default subclient to be				
backed up.					
Configure for Laptop	or Deskton Backup				
,					
Select a storage po	licy from the pull-down list.				
Un	assigned 🔽				
,					
,					
Installer —					
	< Back Next > Cancel				
	< Back Next > Cancel				
Installer — Installer — Installer Storage Policy Solac					
Installer — Storage Policy Solac Select a storage policy for Sackad out	uon [5				
Installer — Storage Policy Solac Select a storage policy for Sackad out	tian Product substant to be				
Installer	tian Product substant to be				
Installer — Storage Policy Selec Select a torage policy for Select a up: Covigure for Lapto	tian Product substant to be				
Installer	tian Product substant to be				
Installer	Ilon The default substant to be p or Desktop Backup < Back. Next 5 Cancel				
Installer	Iton The default substant to be p or Desktop Backup Concel				
Installer	tim the default subclifient to be o or Desktop Backup <back concel<="" next="" td=""></back>				
Installer	tim the default subclifient to be o or Desktop Backup <back concel<="" next="" td=""></back>				
Installer	tim the default subclifient to be o or Desktop Backup <back concel<="" next="" td=""></back>				
Installer	the default substant to be o or Desklop: Backup < Back Teast Canval e ever name				
Installer	Here Cancel Cancel Reack React R				
Installer — Storage Policy Selece Sector a storage policy for Decker a storage policy for Decker a storage policy for Frankliker — Installer Exchange Server Nan Please provide Exchange s	the default substant to be o or Desklop: Backup < Back Teast Canval e ever name				
Installer	The default subsidient to be or of Dealshop Backup e Back Neart Conneal e ever name ange Server Exchange Server Exchange Server Exchange Server				
Installer	Tan The default volce/level to be p or Desktop Backup				
Installer	The default subsidient to be or of Dealshop Backup e Back Neart Conneal e ever name ange Server Exchange Server Exchange Server Exchange Server				
Installer	Tan The default volce/level to be p or Desktop Backup				
Installer	Tan The default volce/level to be p or Desktop Backup				
Installer	Tan The default volce/level to be p or Desktop Backup				

- **40.** Enter the following Exchange Administrator information then click **Next**.
 - Account Name Domain user account created with the exchange server administrator permissions. Do not include the domain name here.
 - Account Password The password assigned to the domain user.
 - Mailbox Name for this Account Mailbox associated with the user above.
 - Profile Name Specify profile name to be created during agent install. This profile is associated with the domain user's mailbox.
 - Exchange Server Name Name of the Exchange Server that the agent will communicate with for data protection and recovery operations.

Enter the Mailbox Role Server name (NetBIOS). After installation configure the roles as described in Configure Mailboxes in Database Availability Group (DAG) Servers.

- Domain The installation detects and enters a domain name. If necessary, modify the domain name by specifying Windows domain that the Exchange Server resides in.
- 41. Click Next.

42. Click Finish.

Installer	
Summary	
Summary of install selections	
Cotum lane execute information to at	art copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the
install settings, click Next to begin (copying files.
	<u>^</u>
Destination Path = C:\Program File	\$/ ا
CommServe Host = mycomputer.m Interface Name = audi.mycompany	ycompany.com y.com
Client =audi Job Results Path = C:\Program File	es VobResults
Global Filters = Use Cell level policy	y 💌
 	>
Installer	Const Nuts Const
	< Back Next > Cancel
Installer	×
Exchange Administrator Accou Information	int
Mailbox and Profile information	
Please enter the Exchange account in the information supplied.	formation required below. A new profile will be created with
Account Name:	Profile Name:
- Sourie Hand.	Trans.
Account Password:	I Exchange Server Name:
Account Password.	Exchange Server Name.
1	
Mailbox Name for this Account:	Domain:
I	
Installer	
Installer	<back next=""> Cancel</back>
Installer	
Installer Schedule Reminder	X
Installer Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder	X
Schedule Reminder	X
Schedule Reminder	
Schedule Reminder	
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch	Nedule for each iDateAgent that has been installed on
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer.	
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer.	redule for each DataAgent that has been installed on writhe DataAgents to perform automated backup
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to allo and restore operations.	w the iDataAgents to perform automated backup
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to allo and restore operations.	
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to ald and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be ac	w the iDataAgents to perform automated backup
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to ald and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be ac	w the iDataAgents to perform automated backup
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to ald and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be ac	w the iDataAgents to perform automated backup
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to all and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be ac administration interface.	w the iDataAgents to perform automated backup
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to all and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be ac administration interface.	w the iDataAgents to perform automated backup complished through the CommCell Console
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to allo and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be ac administration interface.	w the iDataAgents to perform automated backup complished through the CommCell Console
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedule are required to all and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be ac administration interface. Installer	w the iDataAgents to perform automated backup complished through the CommCell Console
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to allo and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be ac administration interface.	w the iDataAgents to perform automated backup complished through the CommCell Console
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to all and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be ac administration interface.	w the iDataAgents to perform automated backup complished through the CommCell Console
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to all and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be ac administration interface. Installer Installer Completion Report Setup complete	w the DataAgents to perform automated backup compliated through the CommCell Console
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to all and restore operation. Job Schedule creation can be ac administration interface. Installer Installer Installer Setup complete Software installation completed success	ow the DataAgents to perform automated backup complished through the CommCell Console
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to all and restore operation. Job Schedule creation can be ac administration interface. Installer Installer Setup complete Software installation completed success Visit the website below to download late	ow the DataAgents to perform automated backup complished through the CommCell Console
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to all and restore operation. Job Schedule creation can be ac administration interface. Installer Installer Completion Report Setup complete Software installation completed success	ow the DataAgents to perform automated backup complished through the CommCell Console
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to all and restore operation. Job Schedule creation can be ac administration interface. Installer Installer Setup complete Software installation completed success Visit the website below to download late	ow the DataAgents to perform automated backup complished through the CommCell Console
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to all and restore operation. Job Schedule creation can be ac administration interface. Installer Installer Setup complete Software installation completed success Visit the website below to download late	ow the DataAgents to perform automated backup complished through the CommCell Console
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to all and restore operation. Job Schedule creation can be ac administration interface. Installer Installer Setup complete Software installation completed success Visit the website below to download late	ow the DataAgents to perform automated backup complished through the CommCell Console
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to all and restore operation. Job Schedule creation can be ac administration interface. Installer Installer Setup complete Software installation completed success Visit the website below to download late	ow the DataAgents to perform automated backup complished through the CommCell Console
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to all and restore operation. Job Schedule creation can be ac administration interface. Installer Installer Setup complete Software installation completed success Visit the website below to download late	sw the IDataAgents to perform automated backup complished through the CommCell Console
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to all and restore operation. Job Schedule creation can be ac administration interface. Installer Installer Setup complete Software installation completed success Visit the website below to download late	sw the IDataAgents to perform automated backup complished through the CommCell Console
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedule are required to all and restore operation. Job Schedule creation can be ac administration interface. Installer Installer Setup complete Software installation completed succes Visit the website below to download late Dlick Finish to complete Setup.	sw the IDataAgents to perform automated backup complished through the CommCell Console Image: Stully: stully: stully:

If you already have a storage policy selected in step 37, Click Next > button available at the bottom of the page to proceed to the **Configuration** section.

If you do not have Storage Policy created, continue with the following step.

43. Create a Storage Policy:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to **Policies**.
- 2. Right-click the Storage Policies and then click New Storage Policy.
- 3. Follow the prompts displayed in the Storage Policy Wizard. The required options

are mentioned below:

- Select the Storage Policy type as Data Protection and Archiving and click Next.
- Enter the name in the Storage Policy Name box and click Next.
- From the Library list, click the name of a disk library to which the primary copy should be associated and then click Next.

Ensure that you select a library attached to a MediaAgent operating in the current release.

- From the MediaAgent list, click the name of a MediaAgent that will be used to create the primary copy and then click Next.
- $\circ\;$ For the device streams and the retention criteria information, click Next to accept default values.
- $\circ~$ Select Yes to enable deduplication for the primary copy.
- From the **MediaAgent** list, click the name of the MediaAgent that will be used to store the Deduplication store.

Type the name of the folder in which the deduplication database must be located in the Deduplication Store Location or click the Browse button to select the folder and then click **Next**.

- Review the details and click **Finish** to create the Storage Policy.
- 44. Enable the following registry key to create job specific profiles:
 - From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers.
 - Right-click the <Client> in which you want to add the registry key, and then click Properties.
 - Click the Registry Key Settings tab.
 - Click Add.
 - Enter CreateProcessSpecificProfile in the Name field.
 - Enter MSExchangeMBAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

Enter MSExchangeDMAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

- Enter REG_DWORD in the Type filed.
- Enter 1 to enable and 0 to disable the key in the Value field.
- Click OK.

METHOD 2: INSTALL SOFTWARE FROM COMMCELL CONSOLE

 From the CommCell Browser, select Tools, point to Add/Remove Software, and then click Install Software.



2. Click Next.



3. Select Windows. Click Next.

4. Select Manually Select Computers. Click Next.

5. Enter the fully qualified domain name of the computer on which you have Exchange Server.

For example: win08ex07.idclab.loc

Click Next.

Installer	_
install Wizard	
This wizard guides you through the steps required to install software on computers.	
Click Next to continue.	
< Back (Next >) Save As Script Finish Cancel He	ip 🛛
Installer	
Palast the computation exercises are for	
Select the computer's operating system	
(Windows	
Unix and Linux	
]	
	_
< Back (Next >) Save As Script Finish Cancel He	de
	-
Installer	
Installer Select how to discover the computers for installing the software	
Installer	
Installer Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Image: Select computers Software will be installed only on the selected list of computers. Automatically discover computers	
Installer Select how to discover the computers for installing the software O Minually select computers Software will be installed only on the selected lat of computers.	
Installer Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Image: Select computers Software will be installed only on the selected list of computers. Automatically discover computers	
Installer Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Image: Select computers Software will be installed only on the selected list of computers. Automatically discover computers	
Installer Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Image: Select computers Software will be installed only on the selected list of computers. Automatically discover computers	
Installer Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Image: Select computers Software will be installed only on the selected list of computers. Automatically discover computers	
Installer Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Image: Select computers Software will be installed only on the selected list of computers. Automatically discover computers	
Installer Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Image: Select computers Software will be installed only on the selected list of computers. Automatically discover computers	
Installer Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Image: Select computers Software will be installed only on the selected list of computers. Automatically discover computers	
Installer Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Image: Select computers Software will be installed only on the selected list of computers. Automatically discover computers	
Installer Select how to discover the computers for installing the software	
Installer Select how to discover the computers for installing the software	
Installer Select how to discover the computers for installing the software • Hanually select computers Software will be installed only on the selected list of computers. • Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs.	
Installer Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Image: Select computers Software will be installed only on the selected list of computers. Automatically discover computers	
Installer Select how to discover the computers for installing the software • Hanually select computers Software will be installed only on the selected list of computers. • Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs.	φ.
Installer Select how to discover the computers for installing the software • Manualy select computers • Manualy select computers • Manualy select computers • Automatically discover computers • Computers will be discovered when the job runs. • Computers will be discovered when the job runs. • Computers will be discovered when the job runs. • Computers will be discovered when the job runs. • Computers will be discovered when the job runs.	
Installer Select how to discover the computers for installing the software • Manually select computers • Manually select computers • Manually select computers • Automatically decover computers • Computers will be discovered when the job runs. • Computers will be discovered when the job runs.	φ.
Installer Select how to discover the computers for installing the software • Manually select computers Software will be installed only on the selected list of computers. • Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. • Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. • Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. • Qaak • Light >> Some Ad Societ • Fright Cancel • Restaure • Enter the host names of the computers	φ.
Installer Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Menually select computers Menually select computers Automatically decover computers Computers will be decovered when the job runs. Automatically decover diversed when the job runs. Automatically decovered when the job runs. Computers will be decovered when the job runs. Computers will be decovered when the job runs. Eventure Eventure	4p
Installer Select how to discover the computers for installing the software • Minually select computers Software will be installed only on the selected lat of computers. Automatically decover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Automatically decover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Example: Example: Example: Example: Example: Example: Example: Reare start that hout marker of the computers. Prove the soft marker of the computers. Example: Example: Prove the soft marker of the computers. Prove the soft marker of the computers. Example: Example: Example:<td>4p</td>	4p
Installer Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Menually select computers Menually select computers Automatically decover computers Computers will be decovered when the job runs. Automatically decover diversed when the job runs. Automatically decovered when the job runs. Computers will be decovered when the job runs. Computers will be decovered when the job runs. Eventure Eventure	4p
Installer Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Menually select computers Menually select computers Automatically decover computers Computers will be decovered when the job runs. Automatically decover diversed when the job runs. Automatically decovered when the job runs. Computers will be decovered when the job runs. Computers will be decovered when the job runs. Eventure Eventure	4p
Installer Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Menually select computers Menually select computers Automatically decover computers Computers will be decovered when the job runs. Automatically decover diversed when the job runs. Automatically decovered when the job runs. Computers will be decovered when the job runs. Computers will be decovered when the job runs. Eventure Eventure	4p
Installer Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Menually select computers Menually select computers Automatically decover computers Computers will be decovered when the job runs. Automatically decover diversed when the job runs. Automatically decovered when the job runs. Computers will be decovered when the job runs. Computers will be decovered when the job runs. Eventure Eventure	4p
Installer Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Menually select computers Menually select computers Automatically decover computers Computers will be decovered when the job runs. Automatically decover diversed when the job runs. Automatically decovered when the job runs. Computers will be decovered when the job runs. Computers will be decovered when the job runs. Eventure Eventure	4p
Installer Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Menually select computers Menually select computers Automatically decover computers Computers will be decovered when the job runs. Automatically decover diversed when the job runs. Automatically decovered when the job runs. Computers will be decovered when the job runs. Computers will be decovered when the job runs. Eventure Eventure	4p
Installer Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Menually select computers Menually select computers Automatically decover computers Computers will be decovered when the job runs. Automatically decover diversed when the job runs. Automatically decovered when the job runs. Computers will be decovered when the job runs. Computers will be decovered when the job runs. Eventure Eventure	4p
Installer Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Menually select computers Menually select computers Automatically decover computers Computers will be decovered when the job runs. Automatically decover diversed when the job runs. Automatically decovered when the job runs. Computers will be decovered when the job runs. Computers will be decovered when the job runs. Eventure Eventure	4p
Installer Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Menually select computers Menually select computers Automatically decover computers Computers will be decovered when the job runs. Automatically decover diversed when the job runs. Automatically decovered when the job runs. Computers will be decovered when the job runs. Computers will be decovered when the job runs. Eventure Eventure	4p
Installer Select how to discover the computers for installing the software • Manualy select computers • Automatically decover computers • Computers will be decovered when the job runs. • Manualy select • Solve As Scopt • Manualy • Solve As Scopt • Back • Back • Solve As Scopt • Back model • Solve As Scopt • Back • Back mo	

6. Click Next.

 Specify User Name and Password that must be used to access the computer. Click Next.

- To install the Exchange iDataAgents expand Client Modules | Backup & Recovery | Exchange, and select one or more of the following:
 - Exchange Database iDataAgent
 - Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent
 - Exchange Public Folder iDataAgent

Click Next.

For Non-Exchange Server, Exchange Database iDataAgent will not be applicable.

9.

- Select Client Group from Available and click Add.
 - Select a **Storage Policy** from the drop-down list. Click **Next**.

NOTES:

 Select the Configure for Laptop or Desktop Backup option to install Backup Monitor utility. This utility allows you to view the backup job summary from the client computer without opening the CommCell Console. See Monitor - Laptop User for more information.

	current Client or Client Group Software Cache settings, click Next. To override Software Cache settings check de Software Cache and select the Software Cache to be used.
	de Software Cache and select the Software Cache to be used.
	Override Software Cache
	oftware Cache: murphy.domain.company.com
	<back best="" cancel="" finish="" help<="" script="" th=""></back>
Installe	er 🛛 🕅
IIIstatu	
Ente	r Account Information
The	specified account should have administrative access to the computer. If you are installing
mult	tiple clients, the user should have access to all clients.
	Reuse Active Directory credentials
	User Name: Example:domain\username
	Password:
	Confirm Password:
	commit dation.
]	
< <u>B</u> ac	ck Next> Save As Script Finish Cancel Help
Installer	
Select Pa	ickage(\$) to Install
	SQL Server DataAgent SQL Server DataAgent SAP for Oxade SAP for Mxx08
	Sybase DetaAgent NSOL DetaAgent
	Documentum Agent Conung Euclarge Database DataAgent
	Exchange Usbobse Usbagent Exchange Public Relativesement Exchange Public Relativesement Exchange Public Relativesement
	Exchange Web Folder DataAgent Exchange Offline Mining Tool
9-6	Lotus Notes Lotus Notes Datalagent Lotus Notes Datalagent Lotus Notes Datalagent
8-6	Sharehort Sharehort Content Indexing and Search Content Indexing and Search
÷.	Collection and content in the deal of the first sector of the
	Online Content Indexing Online Content Indexing for Exchange
• 😂 A	Control Context Extension Control Context Exclusion Control Context Exclusion Control Context Exclusion Control Context Exclusion Context Exclusion Context Exclusion Context Exclusion
• 😂 •	Other Context Scheining Other Context Scheining
• 😂 •	Control Context Extension Control Context Exclusion Control Context Exclusion Control Context Exclusion Control Context Exclusion Context Exclusion Context Exclusion Context Exclusion
• 😂 •	Other Context Scheining Other Context Scheining
• 😂 •	Control Toleray
• 😂 •	Control Toleray
Installer	Bartin Gorren Solering Bartin Solering Bartin Solering Bartin Solering Bartin Solering Composition Composition Colorging Bartin Solering Colorging Colorging Bartin Solering Colorging Solering Solering Solering Solering Solering Solering Solering Solering Solering
Installer Enter Ri	Bartin Gorren Solering Bartin Holder, Karlow Roget Bartin Holder, Karlow Roget Composition Registric And
Installer Enter Records	Commended Settings for the selected Software
Installer Enter Record	Commended Settings for the selected Software centered Statings Centered Center
Installer Enter Record	Commended Settings for the selected Software centered Saftrage centered centeretered centered centered centered cent
Installer Enter Record	Commended Settings
Installer Enter Record	Commended Setting Commended S
Installer Enter Records	Commended Settings for the selected Software commended Settings commended
Installer Enter Ru Go	
Installer Enter Ru Go	Configure for Latage Backage
Installer Enter Ru Go	
Installer Enter Ru Go	Configure for Latage Backage
Installer Enter Ru Go	Configure for Latage Backage
Installer Enter Record Goo	Configure for Latage Backage

Installer

X

10. Type the Agent Specific Settings information. Click **Next**.

11. Click Next.

12. Select Immediate. Click Next.

13. Click Finish.

Agent Specific Settings					
Components					
	nformation (Optional)				
Server Name win08					
😑 Exchange Profile (
User Account EDCLAE Mailbox Name				Configure Pass	aword
Profile Name					
😑 Exchange Databa	se (Optional)				
User Account IDCLAR				Configure Pase	aword
O Differential Backup					
 Incremental Backup 	,				
	< 590	Sex >	Save As Script	- Hinshi Can	
taller					
nter Additional Install Opt	ions				
Installer Flags					
 Install Updates 					
Reboot (if required)					
Kill Browser Processes (i	f required)				
Stop Oracle Services (if					
Skip clients that are alre					
Advanced Options	ou) part of the comment.				
🖌 Delete Packages After I	nstall				
✓ Ignore Client/Host Name					
Install Result Log Location					
Install Agents For Resto	re Only				
Optional Settings					
3 Job Result Direct	tory				
Path CVD Port					
Evergrc Port					8400
Install Directory					
Log File Location					
CommServe Host Name					
	< gack	Next >	Save As Script	Finish Can	cel []
nstaller					
Please Select Wr	en To Run T	he Job			
Job Initiation					
	~				
(Immediate	シ				
Run this jo	b now				
O Schedule					
Configure :	Schedule Pattern		Configure		

- 14. You can track the progress of the job from the Job Controller or Event Viewer window.
- 15. Once the job is complete, right-click the **CommServe** computer, click **View** and then click Admin Job History.

16. Select Install/Upgrade/Remove Software. Click OK.

Page 45 of 245

2 OK Cancel Help

Summary -ase verify all the selected options and click Finish to run the job immediately or click Save As Script to save the job options as a script. Client Install Option Select Type Of Installation: Windows Select Type Of Client Discovery: Manually select computers Exclude discovery of computers with SRM agents already installed: Yes Reuse Active Directory credentials: N_0 Client Authentication for Job User Name: IDCLAB/administrator Password: **** Install Flags Initial Plagi Initial Plagi Initial Updates: Yes Roboti (ff required): No Egnore Running, Ados: No Stop Oracle Services (ff required): No Stop Cate Services (ff required): No Delse Packages After Initial: No Ignore ClearchForts Name Catflics: Yes Initial Agents For Restore Only: No Client Composition Override Software Cache: No Salast Time Of Installation: C <Back Ment > Save As Script Finish Cancel Help C Playing St Adm Job ID Date wing Information, Mro. 🆻 🖪 🖳 🗞 🖾 📓 🕏 3 🚴 apple > P 🗆 I) 2 , la la 0 89 Admin Job H Log Files Storage Users Logged In Schedules Fl... Job ID Operat 21 Data Agi Pause Playing Run 🛛 😥 Event Viewer 🗴 🎆 Admin Job History 🗙

M

 View All Jobs O Desired Number of Jobs

- Ev 3 19:1 19:1 35:1 68:1 Playing Information, Minor, Major, Critical, Maximu 30 ¥ Admin Job History Filter loh Ty O All O Data Aging O Export Media O Disaster Recovery Backup O Auxiliary Copy O Inventory O Data Verification Offline Content Indexing 🔿 Erase Media O Erase Backup/Archi O Drive Validation O Drive Cleaning Stamp Media Install/Remove Update: O Download/Copy Software Install/Upgrade/Remove Software
 Disk Library Maintenance O SRM Reports/Actions O CommCell Export O CommCell Import 1 O Recover Store Media Refreshing Specify Time Range Start Time End Tir ÷ Job Stab • All O Completed O Failed ◯ Killed Number of Jobs
- You can view the following details about the job by right-clicking the job: 17.
 - Items that succeeded during the job
 - Items that failed during the job
 - Details of the job

- Events of the job
- Log files of the job

Job Type	Job ID	Status	Start Time	End Time	User N	Error C	Storag	Auton	Legal	Legal	
Install Software	20	S Complete	View Job Details	11.	, admin			NIA.	N/A	N/A	
			Resubmit Job								
			View Events								
			View Content In	dex 🔸							
			View Logs								
			Send Logs								

18.

Enable the following registry key to create job specific profiles:

- From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers.
- Right-click the <Client> in which you want to add the registry key, and then click Properties.
- Click the Registry Key Settings tab.
- Click Add.
- Enter CreateProcessSpecificProfile in the Name field.
- Enter MSExchangeMBAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

Enter MSExchangeDMAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

- Enter REG_DWORD in the Type filed.
- Enter 1 to enable and 0 to disable the key in the Value field.
- Click OK.



Install the 32-bit Exchange Agents on Exchange Server 2007/2010 or 64-bit Non-Exchange Server - Clustered Environment

Previous Next >

The Exchange Agents are designed to protect an entire Exchange Server database. Follow the steps given below to install the 64-bit Exchange Agents on Exchange Server 2007/2010 or on Non-Exchange Server.

WHERE TO INSTALL

The Exchange Agents can be installed in one of two ways:

- Directly onto the Exchange Server. This method is referred to as an on-host installation and is useful if you want to preserve hardware resources.
- On a separate computer with connectivity to the Exchange Server. This method is referred to as an Non-Exchange Server installation and is useful if you want to offload the memory and processing resources required for backups and restores from the Exchange Server.

Make sure the computer satisfies the minimum requirements specified in the System Requirements.

RELATED TOPICS

Download Software Packages

Provides step-by-step procedure to download the latest packages for software install.

System Requirements

Verify that the computer in which you wish to install the software satisfies the System Requirements.

Firewall

Provides comprehensive information on firewall.

PREREQUISITES

The below mentioned prerequisites are for Mailbox Agents only. Ensure that you have the following:

FOR EXCHANGE SERVER 2010

- Ensure that the service account is a member of Organization Management group.
- Ensure that the mail-enabled user is a member of the Local Administrator Group and have rights to all mailboxes on the server.

To assign full access follow the steps given below:

- Using ADSIEDIT navigate to Configuration | Services | Microsoft Exchange.
- Right-click your organization name, click Properties | Securities and click the Advanced tab.
- Click Edit to modify the permissions set for Organization Management group.
- Click to select Full Control, Receive As and Send As permissions and wait for replication.
- Click the Effective Permission tab and Select the name of the backup account.
- The backup account should display the following as selected:

Full Control

All Extended Rights

Send As

Receive As

• Start the PowerShell and type the following to add the backup account so it has full control over all the databases:

Get-MailboxDatabase -server (server name) | Add-ADPermission -user "backup account" -ExtendedRights Receive-As

Run the above PowerShell every time a new database is added.

 Navigate to the Exchange Management Console, right-click the <mailbox> and click Manage Full Access Permissions to view the mailbox listed under Full Access Permissions.

FOR EXCHANGE SERVER 2007

- Service account should be a member of Exchange Organization Administrators group.
- Ensure that the mail-enabled user is a member of the Local Administrator Group and have rights to all mailboxes on the server.

EXCHANGE AGENTS IN X64 CLUSTERS

When installing 32-bit agents on a x64 virtual server, the 32-bit File System *i*DataAgent must be installed on each physical node in the cluster prior to installing the 32-bit agents on the virtual server.

For example, to support a two-node cluster with one Exchange virtual server instance supporting both x64 and 32-bit Agents, a minimum of two installation instances (one 32-bit

and one x64) are required on the virtual server and each physical node. This configuration will result in six client objects in the CommCell console; three x64 instances and three 32-bit instances.

The sample image shown on the right illustrates the required configuration for installing 32-bit Exchange Agents in an x64 cluster.



INSTALL THE EXCHANGE DATABASE *i***DATAAGENT**

The Exchange Database iDataAgent must be installed first. Follow the steps described below to install Exchange Database iDataAgent.

- Log on to the computer using an account with the following privileges:
 - Administrator of the local computer
 - Administrator of the Exchange Server
- 2. Run Setup.exe from Software Installation Package.
 - Select the required language.

Click Next.

1.

з.

4.	Select the option to Install Calypso on this 64-bit computer.
	NOTES:

• Your screen may look different from the example shown.

5. Click Next.

6. Click OK.

Select the language you will use during installation.
English (United States)
Next > Cancel
Install Software on this 64-bit computer
Advanced options
View Install Quick Start Guide (Requires Adobe Acrobat Reader)
Install Adobe Acrobat Reader
Devit
€ Ext
Installer XVelcome
Installer 🗙
Installer Xelcome The Installer will suide you through the
Installer Xelcome The Installer will suide you through the
Installer Welcome The Installer will guide you through the setup process for Software This program will install Software on your computer. It is stongly recommended that you exit all Windows programs before running this
Installer Welcome The Installer will puide you through the setup process for Software This program will install Software on your computer.
Installer Welcome The Installer will guide you through the setup process for Software This program will install Software on your computer. It is strongly recommended that you exit all Windows programs before running this Setup program. Click Cancel to guit Setup and then close any programs you have running. Click Next to continue with Setup.
Installer Welcome The Installer will guide you through the setup process for Software This program will install Software on your computer. It is strongly recommended that you exit all Windows programs before running this Setup program. Click Carole to gui Setup and then close any programs you have running. Click Next to continue with Setup. WARNING: This program is protected by copyright law and international treates.
Installer Welcome The Installer will guide you through the setup process for Software This program will install Software on your computer. It is strongly recommended that you exit all Windows programs before running this Setup program. Click Cancel to guit Setup and then close any programs you have running. Click Next to continue with Setup.
Installer Image: Comparison of the setup process for Software This program will install Software on your computer. It is stongly recommended that you exit all Windows programs before running this Setup program. Dick Carnel to quit Setup and then close any programs you have running. Click Next to continue with Setup. WARNING: This program is protected by copyright law and international treates. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this program, or any portion of it, may result in severe coil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.
Installer Welcome The Installe will guide you through the setup process for Software This program will install Software on your computer. It is strongly recommended that you exit all Windows programs before running this Setup program. Click Carrel to guid Setup and then close any programs you have running. Click Next to continue with Setup. WARNING: This program is protected by copyright law and international treates. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this program, or any portion of it. may result in severe only and original provides, and will be prosecuted to the maximum
Installer Velcome The Installer will guide you through the setup process for Software This program will install Software on your computer. It is stongly recommended that you exit all Windows programs before running this Setup program. Dick Cancel to guid Setup and then close any programs you have running. Click Next to continue with Setup. WARNING: This program is protected by copyright law and international treaties. UwARNING: This program is protected by copyright law and international treaties. UwARNING: This program is protected by copyright law and international treaties. Umachine and exist and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law. Installer
Installer Velcome The Installer will guide you through the setup process for Software This program will install Software on your computer. It is stongly recommended that you exit all Windows programs before running this Setup program. Dick Cancel to guid Setup and then close any programs you have running. Click Next to continue with Setup. WARNING: This program is protected by copyright law and international treaties. UwARNING: This program is protected by copyright law and international treaties. UwARNING: This program is protected by copyright law and international treaties. Umachine and exist and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law. Installer
Installer Image: Comparison of the setup process for Software This program will install Software on your computer. It is stongly recommended that you exit all Windows programs before running this Setup program. Dick Carcel to quil Setup and then close any programs you have running. Click Next to continue with Setup. WARNING: This program is protected by copyright law and international treates. Unsubforced reproduction or distribution of this program, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalities, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law. Installer Next > Cancel
Installer We Icome The Installer will guide you through the setup process for Software This program will install Software on your computer. It is stongly recommended that you exit all Windows programs before running this Setup program. Click Cancel to guid Setup and then close any programs you have running. Click New to continue with Setup. WARNING: This program is protected by copyright law and international treates. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this program, or any portion of it, may result in severe oil and climinal penalities, and will be proceeded to the maximum extent possible under the law. Installer Next > Cancel
Installer Velcome The Installer will guide you through the setup process for Software This program will install Software on your computer. It is storagly recommended that you exit all Windows programs before running this Setup program. Caccel to guid Setup and then close any programs you have running. Click Next to continue with Setup. WARNING: This program is protected by copyright law and international treates. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this program, or any portion of it. may result in severe oil and original penalises, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law. Installer Next > Cancel Installer Installer Installer Installer Installer Installer Installer Installer Installer InstalleR Install

7. Select I accept the terms in the license agreement. License Agreement Click Next. Please read the following License Agreement. Press the PAGE DOWN key to view the entire agreement. End User License and Limited Warranty Agreement Software Release 9.0.0 (including Microsoft® SQL Server™ 2008 Enterprise Edition, SQL Server™ 2008 Express Edition and Windows Pre-Installation Environment) Fud Hoan I lanuas Ages • Laccept the terms in the license agreement. C I do not accept the terms in the license agreement Installer Next > Cancel < Back 8. Select Configure a Virtual Server. Cluster Type Selection Configure the Physical Node or a Virtual Server Click Next to continue. - Configuration Options C Configure the Physical node ○ Configure a ⊻irtual server < Back Cancel 9. Select the disk group in which the cluster group resides. nstalle Click Next to continue. Virtual Server Selection Select the virtual server you would like to configure Choose from the following list of disk groups configured on this cluster. 2003ClusterVMS -<<u>B</u>ack <u>N</u>ext> <u>C</u>ancel 10. Expand Client Modules | Exchange | File System and select Exchange Database iDataAgent. Select Platforms Select the platforms you want to configure.



11. If this computer and the CommServe is separated by a firewall, select the Configure firewall services option and then click Next.

For firewall options and configuration instructions, see Firewall Configuration and continue with the installation.

If firewall configuration is not required, click **Next**.

^

12. Enter the fully qualified domain name of the **CommServe Host Name**.

Click Next.

Do not use space and the following characters when specifying a new name for the CommServe Host Name:

\|`~!@#\$%^&*()+=<>/?,[]{}:;'"

13. Click Next.

14. Select Add programs to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List, to add CommCell programs and services to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List.

Click Next.

This option enables CommCell operations across Windows firewall by adding CommCell programs and services to Windows firewall exclusion list.

It is recommended to select this option even if Windows firewall is disabled. This will allow the CommCell programs and services to function if the Windows firewall is enabled at a later time.

15.	Click	Next
15.	Click	Next

NOTES

• It is recommended to select the Download latest update pack(s) option to automatically install the available updates during installation.

	ration
Configure firewall ser	
If there is a farmer of	which are the second the Course Course Course Course Town
in there is a firewall b	etween this machine and the CommServe, configure firewall services below.
Configure firewa	Il services
Connection from h	 Windows Firewall is limiting network traffic. Whether it is possible to open ere to a CommServe's tunnel port, whether all connections toward ocked, and setup should instead expect CommServe to connect back to this
CommServe are bl machine, or wheth	ocked, and setup should instead expect CommServe to connect back to this er there is a Proxy in between.
	an open connection to CommServe on tunnel port
	open connection toward this machine
C CommServe is n	eachable only through a proxy
Installer	
	Next > Cancel
staller	
ommServe Narr	
Specify the CommSe name	rve computer name and host
hane	
CommSarv	e Client Name
Commonia	
J	
CommServ (Enter a va	e Host Name Ilid, fully-qualified, IP host name; for example:
mycompute	er.mycompany.com)
mycompul	er. mycompany. com
Internet	
Installer	
in istalion	
staller	< Back Next> Cancel
staller ommunication I	
staller ommunication I	nterface Name
staller ommunication I	nterface Name
staller ommunication I	nterface Name he communication paths.
staller ommunication I	nterface Name he communication paths.
staller ommunication I	Interface Name the communication paths. Select a client name Select an interface name that this computer will use to
staller ommunication I	nterface Name he communication paths. Select a client name
staller ommunication I	Select a client name select a client name select a ninterface name that this computer will use to communicate with the CommServe
staller ommunication I	he communication paths. Select a client name Select a client name Select an interface name that this computer will use to communicate with the CommServe audi.mycompany.com
staller ommunication I	Select a client name select a client name select a ninterface name that this computer will use to communicate with the CommServe
staller ommunication I	Select a client name Select a client name Select an interface name that this computer will use to communicate with the CommServe audi.mycompany.com
staller ommunication I Setup will configure I	Select a client name Select a client name Select an interface name that this computer will use to communicate with the CommServe audi.mycompany.com
staller ommunication I	terface Name the communication paths. Select a client name Select an interface name that this computer will use to communicate with the CommServe audi.mycompany.com
staller ommunication I Setup will configure I	Select a client name Select a client name Select an interface name that this computer will use to communicate with the CommServe audi.mycompany.com
staller ommunication I Setup will configure I	terface Name the communication paths. Select a client name Select an interface name that this computer will use to communicate with the CommServe audi.mycompany.com
staller ommunication I Setup will configure I Setup will configure I	terface Name the communication paths. Select a client name Determined Select an intelface name that this computer will use to communicate with the CommServe audi.mycompany.com
staller ommunication I Setup will configure I Setup will configure I Installer	te communication paths. Select a client name Select an interface name that this computer will use to communicate with the CommServe audi.mycompany.com IP Address(es) for the selected host. < Back Next > Cancel
staller ommunication I Setup will configure I Installer Installer	terface Name the communication paths. Select a client name Select an interface name that this computer will use to communicate with the CommServe audi.mycompany.com IP Address(es) for the selected host. Cancel Exclusion List
staller ommunication I Setup will configure I Installer Installer	te communication paths. Select a client name Select an interface name that this computer will use to communicate with the CommServe audi.mycompany.com IP Address(es) for the selected host. < Back Next > Cancel
staller ommunication I Setup will configure I Installer Installer Staller Aindows Firewa Allow programs to co	
staller ommunication I Setup will configure I Installer Installer Staller Aindows Firewa Allow programs to co	terface Name the communication paths. Select a client name Select an interface name that this computer will use to communicate with the CommServe audi.mycompany.com IP Address(es) for the selected host. Cancel Exclusion List mmunicate through Windows
staller ommunication I Setup will configure I Setup will configure I Installer Installer	terface Name the communication paths. Select a client name Select an interface name that this computer will use to communicate with the CommServe audi.mycompany.com IP Address(es) for the selected host. Cancel Exclusion List mmunicate through Windows
staller ommunication I Setup will configure I Installer Installer Staller Findows Firewai Windows Firewa	te communication paths. Select a client name Select an interface name that this computer will use to communicate with the CommServe audi.mycompany.com IP Address(es) for the selected host. Cancel Exclusion List mmunicate through Windows
staller ommunication I Setup will configure I Installer Installer Staller Findows Firewai Windows Firewa	Iterface Name the communication paths. Select a client name Select an interface name that this computer will use to communicate with the CommServe audi.mycompany.com IP Address[ee] for the selected host. Iterface Interface Name Iterface Name Iterface Interface Name Iterface Name I
staller ommunication I Setup will configure I Setup will configure I Installer Installer Findows Firewa Mindows Firewa Windows Firewa Windows Firewa	Iterface Name the communication paths. Select a client name Select an interface name that this computer will use to communicate with the CommServe audi.mycompany.com IP Address[ee] for the selected host. Iterface Interface Name Iterface
staller ommunication I Setup will configure I Setup will configure I Installer Installer Aldows Firewa Aldow Firewa Vindows Firewa	
staller ommunication I Setup will configure I Setup will configure I Installer Installer Findows Firewa Mindows Firewa Windows Firewa Windows Firewa	
staller ommunication I Setup will configure I Setup will configure I Installer Installer Findows Firewa Mindows Firewa Windows Firewa Windows Firewa	
staller ommunication I Setup will configure I Setup will configure I Installer Installer Findows Firewa Mindows Firewa Windows Firewa Windows Firewa	
staller ommunication I Setup will configure I Setup will configure I Installer Installer Findows Firewa Mindows Firewa Windows Firewa Windows Firewa	
staller ommunication I Setup will configure I Setup will configure I Installer Findows Firewa Alow programs to co Firewall Windows Firewa Windows Firewa I wou plan on us exclusion list.	
staller ommunication I Setup will configure I Setup will configure I Installer Installer Findows Firewa Mindows Firewa Windows Firewa Windows Firewa	Iterface Name the communication paths. Select a client name Select an interface name that this computer will use to communicate with the CommServe aud.mycompany.com IP Address(ee) for the selected host. I P Address(ee) for the selected host. I Exclusion List mmunicate through Windows All is DN as to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List aing Windows Firewall. It is recommended to add the software programs to the
staller ommunication I Setup will configure I Setup will configure I Installer Findows Firewa Alow programs to co Firewall Windows Firewa Windows Firewa I wou plan on us exclusion list.	Iterface Name the communication paths. Select a client name Select an interface name that this computer will use to communicate with the CommServe audi.mycompany.com IP Address(es) for the selected host. IER Address(es) for the selected host.

16.

17.

18.

	Installer
	Download and Install Latest Update Packs Download and Install the latest service pack and post pack from the software provider website.
	Download latest update pack(s) Make sure you have internet connectivity at this time. This process may take som depending on download speed.
	Installer < Back Next >
Verify the default location for software installation.	Installer
Click Browse to change the default location.	Destination Folder
Click Next.	Select the destination folder to install the program files.
 Do not install the software to a mapped network drive. Do not use the following characters when specifying the destination path: 	Click Next to accept the default location, or click Browse to choose an alternate
/:*?"<> #	C:\Program Files\ Brows
It is recommended that you use alphanumeric characters only.	Drive List C: 928 MB Space Required / Recommended 1394 MB / 1670 MB
	Installer Kext >
Select a Client Group from the list.	Installer
Select a Client Group from the list. Click Next .	Installer Client Group Selection Select a client group for the client.
	Client Group Selection
Click Next. This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the	Client Group Selection Select a client group for the client.
Click Next. This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the	Client Group Selection Select a client group for the client. The Client Group is a logical grouping of client machines which have the same associations at various levels like Schedule Policy, Activity Control, Security and Reports. Client group: None Selected
Click Next . This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the CommCell Console.	Client Group Selection Select a client group for the client. The Client Group is a logical grouping of client machines which have the same associations at various levels like Schedule Policy. Activity Control, Security and Reports. Client group: Nore Selected client_group Installer < Back Next >
Click Next. This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the	Client Group Selection Select a client group for the client. The Client Group is a logical grouping of client machines which have the same associations at various levels like Schedule Policy. Activity Control, Security and Reports. Client group: None Selected client_group
Click Next . This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the CommCell Console.	Client Group Selection Select a client group for the client. The Client Group is a logical grouping of client machines which have the same associations at various levels like Schedule Policy. Activity Control, Security and Reports. Client group: Nore Selected client_group Installer Installer Schedule Install of Automatic Updates Choose when you want to schedule an install of the
Click Next . This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the CommCell Console.	Client Group Selection Select a client group for the client. The Client Group is a logical grouping of client machines which have the same associations at various levels like Schedule Policy, Activity Control, Security and Reports. Client group: Nore Selected client_group Installer Schedule Install of Automatic Updates Chose when you want to schedule an install of the downloaded updates. Schedule Install of Automatic Updates Conce Client_group Time: D8:31:12 PM Client
Click Next . This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the CommCell Console.	Client Group Selection Select a client group for the client. The Client Group is a logical grouping of client machines which have the same associations at various levels like Schedule Policy, Activity Control, Security and Reports. Client group: None Selected Client_group Installer Robot Restall of Automatic Updates Choose when you want to schedule an install of the downloaded updates. Client group want to schedule an install of the downloaded updates. Client group at the schedule an install of the Conce Tree: Destaller
Click Next . This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the CommCell Console.	Client Group Selection Select a client group for the client. The Client Group is a logical grouping of client machines which have the same associations at various levels like Schedule Policy, Activity Control, Security and Reports. Client group: Nore Selected Client_group Installer Schedule Install of Automatic Updates Choces when you want to schedule an install of the downloaded updates. Schedule Install of Automatic Updates Conce Client_group Time: D0:33:12 PM Client Client_group Client Client Client_group Client Client Client Client_group Client Client_group Client Client Client Client_group Client Client Client_group Client

19. Select a Storage Policy. Click Next.

X

e tim

Cancel

Cancel

Cancel

Cancel

X

	Storage Policy Selection
	Select a storage policy for the default subclient to be
	backed up.
	Select a storage policy from the pull-down list.
	Unassigned 🗾
	Installer < Back Next > Cancel
If you do not have Storage Policy created, this message will be displayed. Click OK .	Installar. Storage Policy Selection Select a droage policy for the default subclient to be backed up.
You can create the Storage Policy later in step 31.	F Configure for Laptop of Decklop Backop
	Installer Cancel Cancel
20. Select the backup type for Exchange Database backups. Choose either of the following options, then slick Next	Installer
 following options, then click Next. Differential - Specifies that each non-full Exchange Database backup secures all data that has changed since the last full backup. Transaction lobs are not purged. 	Exchange Backup Options Please select a default backup type
• Incremental - Specifies that each non-full Exchange Database backup secures only that data that has changed since the last backup of any type. Committed transaction logs are purged.	C Differential Backs up changes in the Information Store and Directory Service since the last Full backup. Description logs.
	Incremental Backs up changes in the Information Store and Directory Service since the last Full backup or Incremental backup. The committed transaction logs are then purged.
	Installer
 Enter the user credentials to access the Exchange Server to perform the backup operation. 	Enter Administrator account information
·	Enter Administrator account information
 The User Account must have Exchange Administrator privileges. The installation detects the domain name. If necessary, you can modify the domain name by specifying Windows domain that the Exchange Server resides in. 	Account Name:
	Domain: EXCH
	Next> Cancel
22. Click Next.	Installer
	Summary Summary of install selections
	Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files.
	Destination Path = C\Program Files\ CommServe Host = mycomputer.mycom Interface Name = audi.mycompany.com Dent = audi.mycompany.com Global Filetres = Uas Cell evel policy

23. The install program displays a reminder to verify that Circular Logging is disabled before performing any database backup operations. To verify that Circular Logging is

disabled:

- From Exchange System Manager, navigate to and expand the server that the Database *i*DataAgent is being installed on.
- Verify that the Circular Logging check box has not been selected for each Storage Group. If Circular Logging has been enabled for a Storage Group, disable it at this time.

Click OK.

24. To install the software on the remaining nodes of the cluster, click **Yes**.

To complete the install for this node only, click No.

25. Select cluster nodes from the **Preferred Nodes** list and click the arrow button to move them to the **Selected Nodes** list.

Once you complete your selections, click Next.

- The list of **Preferred Nodes** displays all the nodes found in the cluster; from this list you should only select cluster nodes configured to host this cluster group server.
- Do not select nodes that already have multiple instances installed.
- 26. Specify User Name and Password for the Domain Administrator account Information to perform the remote install on the cluster nodes you selected in the previous step.

Click Next.

27. The progress of the remote install for the cluster nodes is displayed; the install can be interrupted if necessary.

Click Stop to prevent installation to any nodes after the current ones complete.

Click **Advanced Settings** to specify any of the following:

- Maximum number of nodes on which Setup can run simultaneously.
- Time allocated for Setup to begin executing on each node, after which the install attempt will fail.
- Time allocated for Setup to complete on each node, after which the install attempt will fail.

If, during the remote install of a cluster node, setup fails to complete or is interrupted, you must perform a local install on that node. When you do, the install begins from where it left off, or from the beginning if necessary. For procedures, see Manually Installing the Software on a Passive Node.

Cluster Node Selection Select cluster nodes to configure Preferred Nodes Image: Selected Nodes		
Installer Dister Node Selection Select dutier nodes to configure Preferred Nodes Vincluster Image: Select dutier	Would you like to install the software on remaining nodes on the cluster?	
Cluster Node Selection Select cluster nodes to configure Preferred Nodes Select cluster Select cluster <th>Yes No</th> <th></th>	Yes No	
Select duster nodes to configure Preferred Nodes Configured Con	nstaller	
Petered Nodes machateles machateles State State	Cluster Node Selection Select cluster nodes to configure	
Statistical > <td< td=""><td></td><td></td></td<>		
Installer Ormain Administrator account information Please provide domain administrator account Domain Account Information User Name (<domainuser>): [</domainuser>	VmcLuste2	
Domain administrator account information Please provide domain administrator account Domain Account Information User Name {DOMAINUUSER>} [Next > Cancel	
Domain administrator account information Please provide domain administrator account Domain Account Information User Name {DOMAINUUSER>} [
Please provide domain administrator account	nstaller Domain administrator account information	
User Name [<ddmain\user>]: LAB\Vachimistrator Account Password: <</ddmain\user>		
User Name [<ddmain\user>]: LAB\Vachimistrator Account Password: <</ddmain\user>		
LABVAdministrator Account Password < gack		
Account Password: (Back New) Cancel Installer Cancel Cancel Staller Cancel Canc		
staller Cancel Client Name Client Status Installed Clients will not be uninstalled. Clients in progress will continue installation, but their results will not show correctly. Client Name Client Status Start Time End Time Result Description read2 Installed successfully. 0 Left to install: 1 Ingregress: 0 Max 1 Image: Client Status Start Time End Time Result Description read2 0 Left to install: 1 Image: Client Status Start Time End Time Nax 1 Image: Client Status Start Time Status Status Status Status Status Status Status Image: Client Status	LABVAdministrator	
Installer Client Name Client Status Start Time End Time Result Description real2 Installed successfully: 0 Left to install: 1 Installer Advanced Settings Staller Number of simultaneous remote machines to run Setup: 10 Installer	Account Password:	
Installer Client Name Client Status Start Time End Time Result Description real2 Installed successfully: 0 Left to install: 1 Installer Advanced Settings Staller Number of simultaneous remote machines to run Setup: 10 Installer		
Installer Client Name Client Status Start Time End Time Result Description real2 Installed successfully: 0 Left to install: 1 Installer Advanced Settings Staller Number of simultaneous remote machines to run Setup: 10 Installer		
You can stop remote install at any time. Installed clients will not be uninstalled. Clients in progress will continue installation, but their results will not show correctly. Client Name Client Status Start Time End Time Result Description real2 Installed successfully: 0 Left to install: 1 Installed successfully: 0 Left to install: 1 Image: Status Failed to install: 0 In progress: 0 Max: 1 1 Elapsed time: 0 sec Estimated time left: 10 min 0 sec Installer	< <u>B</u> ack Next> Cancel	1
You can stop remote install at any time. Installed clients will not be uninstalled. Clients in progress will continue installation, but their results will not show correctly. Client Name Client Status Start Time End Time Result Description real2 Installed successfully: 0 Left to install: 1 Installed successfully: 0 Left to install: 1 Image: Status Failed to install: 0 In progress: 0 Max: 1 1 Elapsed time: 0 sec Estimated time left: 10 min 0 sec Installer		
You can stop remote install at any time. Installed clients will not be uninstalled. Clients in progress will continue installation, but their results will not show correctly. Client Name Client Status Start Time End Time Result Description real2 Installed successfully: 0 Left to install: 1 Installed successfully: 0 Left to install: 1 Image: Status Failed to install: 0 In progress: 0 Max: 1 1 Elapsed time: 0 sec Estimated time left: 10 min 0 sec Installer		
progress will continue installation, but their results will not show correctly. Client Name Client Status Start Time End Time Result Description real2 Installed successfully: 0 Left to install: 1 1 Installed successfully: 0 Left to install: 1 1 1 Failed to install: 0 In progress: 0 Max: 1 1 Elapsed time: 0 sec Estimated time left: 10 min 0 sec 1 <td>nstaller</td> <td></td>	nstaller	
real2 Installed successfully: Installed successfully: Installed to install: Inprogress: Max 1 == Installer Installer Advanced Settings Stop Staller Number of smultaneous remote machines to run Setup: 10 == machines Time to wait for Setup to start on each remote machine: 2 == machines Time to wait for Setup to start on each remote machine: Installer Instal		
real2 Installed successfully: Installed successfully: Installed to install: Inprogress: Max 1 == Installer Installer Advanced Settings Stop Staller Number of smultaneous remote machines to run Setup: 10 == machines Time to wait for Setup to start on each remote machine: 2 == machines Time to wait for Setup to start on each remote machine: Installer Instal		
Installed successfully: 0 Left to install: 1 Failed to install: 0 In progress: 0 Max 1 = Elapsed time: 0 sec Estimated time left: 10 min 0 sec Installer Advanced Settings Stop staller Number of simultaneous remote machines to run Setup: 10 = machines Time to wait for Setup to start on each remote machine: 2 = minutes		
Installed successfully: 0 Left to install: 1 Failed to install: 0 In progress: 0 Max 1 = Elapsed time: 0 sec Estimated time left: 10 min 0 sec Installer Advanced Settings Stop Staller Number of simultaneous remote machines to run Setup: 10 = machines Time to wait for Setup to start on each remote machine: 2 = minutes		
Installed successfully: 0 Left to install: 1 Failed to install: 0 In progress: 0 Max 1 = Elapsed time: 0 sec Estimated time left: 10 min 0 sec Installer Advanced Settings Stop Staller Number of simultaneous remote machines to run Setup: 10 = machines Time to wait for Setup to start on each remote machine: 2 = minutes		
Installed successfully: 0 Left to install: 1 Failed to install: 0 In progress: 0 Max 1 = Elapsed time: 0 sec Estimated time left: 10 min 0 sec Installer Advanced Settings Stop Staller Number of simultaneous remote machines to run Setup: 10 = machines Time to wait for Setup to start on each remote machine: 2 = minutes		
Failed to install 0 In progress: 0 Max 1 Elapsed time: 0 sec Estimated time left: 10 min 0 sec Installer		ľ
Elapsed time: 0 sec Estimated time left: 10 min 0 sec Installer Advanced Settings Stoller Number of simultaneous remote machines to run Setup: 10 $\frac{1}{2}$ machines Time to wait for Setup to start on each remote machine: 2 $\frac{1}{2}$ minutes		
Installer Advanced Settings stoller Number of simultaneous remote machines to run Setup: 10 + machines Time to wait for Setup to start on each remote machine: 2 + minutes		
Advanced Settings Stop stoller Number of simultaneous remote machines to run Setup: 10 + machines Time to wait for Setup to start on each remote machine: 2 + minutes	I	1
Staller Number of simultaneous remote machines to run Setup: 10 📩 machines Time to wait for Setup to start on each remote machine: 2 📩 minutes		
Number of simultaneous remote machines to run Setup: 10 📩 machines Time to wait for Setup to start on each remote machine: 2 🛓 minutes	Advanced Settings Stop	Annual
Number of simultaneous remote machines to run Setup: 10 📩 machines Time to wait for Setup to start on each remote machine: 2 🛓 minutes	Installer	
Time to wait for Setup to start on each remote machine:		
	Number of simultaneous remote machines to run Setup: 10 🚊 machines	
	Number of simultaneous remote machines to run Setup: 10 📩 machines Time to wait for Setup to start on each remote machine: 2 🚽 minutes	

Please verify that Orcular Logging is disabled before perfor backup operations.

ОК

ng any database

28. Read the summary for remote installation to verify that all selected nodes were

installed successfully.

Click Next.

staller	×
Results	
Remote install results	
Summary of remote install	
The following software (Version) were s	elected to be installed:
+ CommCell	
REAL2: Install succeeded.	
न	▼ ▶
	Einish
staller	X
chedule Reminder	
Job schedule creation reminder	
Please note:	
You still need to create a Joh Schedu	le for each iDataAgent that has been installed on
this client computer.	
Job Schedules are required to allow th	he iDataAgents to perform automated backup
and restore operations.	and a second second
lah Cahadula anatian ang ka arawa	plished through the CommCell Console
administration interface.	pisited a rough are connices console
Installer	
	[Next>]
	_
taller	× * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * *
ompletion Report	
Setup complete	
Software installation completed successfully	<i>.</i>
/isit the website below to download latest U	Ipdates and Service Packs.
Click Finish to complete Setup.	
and the second second	
	<u>*</u>
	_
Installer Technical Support Website	Existe

29. Click Next.

30. Click Finish.



If you already have a storage policy selected in step 19, Click Next > button available at the bottom of the page to proceed to the **Configuration** section.

If any node installation fails, you must manually install the software on that node once the current installation is complete. See Manually Installing the Software on a Passive Node for step-by-step instructions.
The message displayed on your screen will reflect the status of the selected nodes, and may look different from the example.

If you do not have Storage Policy created, continue with the following step.

31. Create a Storage Policy:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to **Policies**.
- 2. Right-click the Storage Policies and then click New Storage Policy.
- 3. Follow the prompts displayed in the Storage Policy Wizard. The required options are mentioned below:
 - Select the Storage Policy type as Data Protection and Archiving and click Next.
 - Enter the name in the Storage Policy Name box and click Next.
 - From the **Library** list, click the name of a disk library to which the primary copy should be associated and then click **Next**.

Ensure that you select a library attached to a MediaAgent operating in the current release.

- From the **MediaAgent** list, click the name of a MediaAgent that will be used to create the primary copy and then click **Next**.
- For the device streams and the retention criteria information, click Next to accept default values.
- $\circ~$ Select Yes to enable deduplication for the primary copy.
- From the **MediaAgent** list, click the name of the MediaAgent that will be used to store the Deduplication store.



Type the name of the folder in which the deduplication database must be located in the Deduplication Store Location or click the Browse button to select the folder and then click **Next**.

 $\circ~$ Review the details and click Finish to create the Storage Policy.

32.

- Enable the following registry key to create job specific profiles:
 - From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers.
 - Right-click the <Client> in which you want to add the registry key, and then click
 - Properties.Click the Registry Key Settings tab.
 - Click Add.
 - Enter CreateProcessSpecificProfile in the Name field.
 - Enter MSExchangeMBAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).
 Enter MSExchangeDMAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox

iDataAgent).

- Enter REG_DWORD in the Type filed.
- Enter 1 to enable and 0 to disable the key in the Value field.
- Click OK.

INSTALL THE EXCHANGE AGENTS

The Windows File System iDataAgent must be first installed onto all of the physical nodes of the cluster. See Install the Microsoft Windows File System iDataAgent if you have not installed it on all of the physical nodes.

Once it has been installed onto the physical nodes, the Exchange Agents (such as Exchange Mailbox *i*DataAgent, Exchange Public Folder *i*DataAgent, Exchange Mailbox Archiver and/or Exchange Public Folder Archiver) and Windows File System *i*DataAgent can be installed from the active node to the virtual server using the following steps described below to install Exchange Agents.

The software can also be automatically installed on all available passive nodes when the software is installed onto the virtual server, or you can choose to install any passive node(s) separately.

CREATE THE REGISTRY KEYS

Before installing the Exchange Agents, create the bAllowMultiInstances and bAllow32BitInstallOn64Bit registry keys.

1. Create the bAllowMultiInstances registry key.

To create the registry key, see the following steps:

- 1. Start the Registry Editor (Regedit.exe or Redegt32.exe)
- Locate the directory under which you want to create a key, e.g., HKEY LOCAL MACHINE\SOFTWARE\.
- 3. Right click the SOFTWARE and click **New -> Key**.
- 4. Name the key as GalaxyInstallerFlags.
- 5. Right click the GalaxyInstallerFlags and select New -> DWORD value, name it as bAllowMultiInstances and by double clicking the bAllowMultiInstances key modify the Value data to 1.

2. Create the bAllow32BitInstallOn64Bit registry key.

- To create the registry key, see the following steps:
- 1. Start the Registry Editor (Regedit.exe or Regedit32.exe)
- Locate the directory under which you want to create a key, e.g., HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Wow6432Node.
- 3. Right click the SOFTWARE and click New -> Key.
- 4. Name the key as GalaxyInstallerFlags.
- 5. Right click the GalaxyInstallerFlags and select New -> DWORD value, name it as bAllow32BitInstallOn64Bit and by double clicking the bAllow32BitInstallOn64Bit key modify the Value data to 1.

INSTALL PROCEDURE

Log on to the computer using an account with the following privileges:
 Administrator of the local computer

- Administrator of the Exchange Server
- 2. Run **Setup.exe** from Software Installation Package.
- Select the required language.
 Click Next.

- 4. Select the Calypso 32-bit Software install options to install software.
 NOTES
 - This screen will only appear when the bAllow32BitInstallOn64Bit registry key has been created and enabled on this computer.

5. Click Next.

- 6. Click OK.
- 7. Select I accept the terms in the license agreement. Click Next.

	Select the language you will use during installation.
	English (United States)
	New Scened
	<u>N</u> ext > <u>Cancel</u>
= :	Software install options
I	
	32-bit Software install options
	⇔ Exit
Installe	r 🔀
Welcor	ne
The In:	staller will guide you through the
setup p	rocess for Software
	This program will install Software on your computer.
	It is strongly recommended that you exit all Windows programs before running this Setup program.
	Click Cancel to quit Setup and then close any programs you have running. Click
	Next to continue with Setup.
	WARNING: This program is protected by copyright law and international treaties.
	Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this program, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum
	result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.
Installe	
	Next > Cancel
nstaller	
Istatter	
٢	It is strongly recommended that any and all virus scanning software be disabled
\checkmark	immediately before continuing with this Software installation. Failure to do so may result in file-locking by the virus scanner and subsequent failure for setup to install its own files.
	Click DK once you have disabled them and setup will continue.
	OK
nstaller	X
	e Agreement
Please	read the following License Agreement. Press 3E DOWN key to view the entire agreement.
the PA	at DUWN key to view the entire agreement.
	End User License and Limited Warranty Agreement
	End User License and Limited Warranty Agreement
	End User License and Limited Warranty Agreement Software Release 900
(ir	Software Release 9.0.0 scluding Microsoft® SQL Server™ 2008 Enterprise Edition, SQL Server™
(ir	Software Release 9.0.0
(ir	Software Release 9.0.0 scluding Microsoft® SQL Server™ 2008 Enterprise Edition, SQL Server™
	Software Release 90.0 acluding Microsoft® SQL Server™ 2008 Enterprise Edition, SQL Server™ 2008 Express Edition and Windows Pre-Installation Environment)
(°	Software Release 9.0.0 cluding Microsoft® SQL Server ¹⁰⁴ 2008 Enterprise Edition, SQL Server ¹⁰⁴ 2008 Express Edition and Windows Pre-Installation Environment) Fuel Houry Learner Assessment
(°	Software Release 9.0.0 cluding Microsoft® SQL Server TM 2008 Enterprise Edition, SQL Server TM 2008 Express Edition, and Windows Pre-Installation Environment) Full House Lineare Assument accept the terms in the license agreement.
(°)	Software Release 9.0.0 Acluding Microsoft® SQL Server ⁷⁶ 2008 Enterprise Edition, SQL Server ⁷¹⁴ 2008 Express Edition and Windows Pre-Installation Environment) Cut Hour I favore Assumates accept the terms in the license agreement. do not accept the terms in the license agreement.

8. Select **Create a new instance** option to install the Exchange Agents on separate instance.

Administration Guide - Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent

NOTES

- This screen will appear when the bAllowMultiInstances registry key has enabled on this computer.
- This screen will not appear if no other software components are installed on the computer.

Select Configure a Virtual Server.
 Click Next to continue.

 Select the disk group in which the cluster group resides. Click Next to continue.

- 11. To install the Exchange *i*DataAgents expand Client Modules | Exchange, and select one or more of the following:
 - Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent
 - Exchange Public Folder iDataAgent

To install the **Exchange Archiver Agents**, expand **Client Modules | Archive Management**, and select one or more of the following:

- Exchange Compliance Archiver
- Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent
- Exchange Public Folder Archiver Agent

Click Next.

Note that the Exchange Database *i*DataAgents must be installed on the Exchange Server, see Install the Exchange Database *i*DataAgent for step-by-step procedure.

 If this computer and the CommServe is separated by a firewall, select the Configure firewall services option and then click Next.

For firewall options and configuration instructions, see Firewall Configuration and continue with the installation.

If firewall configuration is not required, click **Next**.

_	
Installer	
Install Instan	ce Selection the instance you want to use during
install.	the instance you want to use during
	Instance Selection
	Create a new instance (Not recommended)
	 Create a new instance (Not recommended) C Install to existing instance
	Select an installed instance.
	Client Name
	Client Host Name
	CommServe Name
Installe	
	< Back Next > Cancel
Installer	
Cluster Type	
	Physical Node or a Virtual Server
	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
C	Generation Online
	figuration Options
0	Configure the Physical node
0	Configure a ⊻irtual server
-	
	< Back (<u>Next></u> Cancel
	_
Installer	×
	er Selection
Select the vir	ual server you would like to configure
	Choose from the following list of disk groups
	configured on this cluster.
	2003ClusterVMS
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext> <u>C</u> ancel
_	
Installer	
Select Platfo	
Select the plat	forms you want to configure.
	mon Technologu Engine
H 🖬	CommServe Modules description of the platform and
± 🗅	CommCell Console disabled.
E 🗅 Clier	MediaAgent Modules
	Backup & Recovery Disk Space
H 🗅	Content Indexing and Search (Req/Recommended)
+ Ci + Ci + Ci	Content Indexing and Search (Req/Recommended) Web Based Search & Browse Installation Folder: Archive Management 0 MB/ 0 MB
± C	Content Indexing and Search (Reg/Recommended) Web Based Search & Browse Installation Folder: Archive Management 0 MB/0 MB ContinuousDataReplicator
	Content Indexing and Search (Reg/Recommended) Web Based Search & Browse Archive Management 0 MB / 0 MB Continuous0 ataReplicator SRM Temporary on C: drive: Supporting Modules 0 MP / 0 MP

Installer

Install Agents for Restore Only

< Back

Special Registry Keys In Us

Cancel

13.	Enter the fully	qualified	domain	name	of the	CommServe	Host N	ame

Click Next.

Do not use space and the following characters when specifying a new name for the CommServe Host Name:

\|`~!@#\$%^&*()+=<>/?,[]{}:;'"

14. Click Next.

If there is any other instance installed on the computer, make sure that the host name does not match the client name entered in the **Select a client name** field in the previous instance.

15. Select **Add programs to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List**, to add CommCell programs and services to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List.

Click Next.

This option enables CommCell operations across Windows firewall by adding CommCell programs and services to Windows firewall exclusion list.

It is recommended to select this option even if Windows firewall is disabled. This will allow the CommCell programs and services to function if the Windows firewall is enabled at a later time.

connection from here to a Comméerve's turnnel port, whether all connections toward Comméerve are blocked, and setup should instead expect Comméerve to connect back to this machine, or whether there is a Proxy in between.				
	n open connection t			
	eachable only throu			
Installer				
			Next>	Cancel
Installer				
CommServe Nan Specify the CommSe		and host		
name	are comparer name	and nost		
CommServ	ve Client Name			
1				
(Enter a va	ve Host Name alid, fully-qualified, IF	host name; for exa	mple:	
	er.mycompany.com)			
mycompu	ter.mycompany.com			
Installer				
		< Back	Next>	Cancel
Installer				
Communication				
Setup will configure	the communication (paths.		
	Select a client r	ame		
	Select a client r audi <u>cn</u>	ame	-	
	audi_cn			
	audi_cn Select an interfa		computer will use to	
	audi_cn Select an interfa communicate w	ace name that this (th the CommServe	computer will use to	
	Select an interfa communicate w	ace name that this ith the CommServe y.com	computer will use to	
	Select an interfa communicate w	ace name that this (th the CommServe	computer will use to	
	Select an interfa communicate w	ace name that this ith the CommServe y.com	computer will use to	
Installer	Select an interfa communicate w	ace name that this ith the CommServe y.com	computer will use to	
Installer	Select an interfa communicate w	ace name that this ith the CommServe y.com	computer will use to	Cancel
Installer	Select an interfa communicate w	ace name that this th the CommServe y.com or the selected hos	computer will use to	Cancel
	Select an interfa communicate w	ace name that this th the CommServe y.com or the selected hos	computer will use to	
Installer	Select an interfe communicate w audi.mycompar IP Address(es) f	ace name that this the CommServe y.com or the selected hos < Back	computer will use to	Cancel
Installer Windows Firewa	Select an interfa communicate w audi.mycomper IP Address(es) f	ace name that this th the CommServe y com or the selected hor < Back	computer will use to	
Installer	Select an interfa communicate w audi.mycomper IP Address(es) f	ace name that this th the CommServe y com or the selected hor < Back	computer will use to	
Installer Windows Firewa Allow programs to co Firewall	Select an interfa communicate w audi.mycompar IP Address(es) f	ace name that this th the CommServe y com or the selected hor < Back	computer will use to	
Installer Windows Firewa	Select an interfa communicate w audi.mycompar IP Address(es) f	ace name that this th the CommServe y com or the selected hor < Back	computer will use to	
Installer Windows Firewa Allow programs to co Firewall Windows Firewa	Select an interfa communicate w audi.mycompar IP Address(es) f	use name that this the CommServe y com or the selected host < Back d Windows	t.	
Installer Windows Firewa Allow programs to co Firewal Windows Firew Z Add program	Eucli en Select an interfa communicate w audi.mycompar IP Address(es) f II Exclusion Lis mmunicate through all is ON ns to the Windows F	see name that this th the CommServe y com or the selected hos < Back d Windows	t.	
Installer Windows Firewa Allow programs to co Firewal Windows Firew Z Add program	Eucli en Select an interfa communicate w audi.mycompar IP Address(es) f II Exclusion Lis mmunicate through all is ON ns to the Windows F	see name that this th the CommServe y com or the selected hos < Back d Windows	t.	
Installer Windows Firewa Allow programs to co Firewal Windows Firew Z Add program	Eucli en Select an interfa communicate w audi.mycompar IP Address(es) f II Exclusion Lis mmunicate through all is ON ns to the Windows F	see name that this th the CommServe y com or the selected hos < Back d Windows	t.	
Installer Windows Firewa Allow programs to co Firewal Windows Firew Z Add program	Eucli en Select an interfa communicate w audi.mycompar IP Address(es) f II Exclusion Lis mmunicate through all is ON ns to the Windows F	see name that this th the CommServe y com or the selected hos < Back d Windows	t.	
Installer Windows Firewa Allow programs to co Firewal Windows Firew Z Add program	Eucli en Select an interfa communicate w audi.mycompar IP Address(es) f II Exclusion Lis mmunicate through all is ON ns to the Windows F	see name that this th the CommServe y com or the selected hos < Back d Windows	t.	
Installer Windows Firewa Allow programs to co Firewal Windows Firew Z Add program	Eucli en Select an interfa communicate w audi.mycompar IP Address(es) f II Exclusion Lis mmunicate through all is ON ns to the Windows F	see name that this th the CommServe y com or the selected hos < Back d Windows	t.	
Installer Windows Firewa Allow programs to co Firewal Windows Firew Z Add program	Eucli en Select an interfa communicate w audi.mycompar IP Address(es) f II Exclusion Lis mmunicate through all is ON ns to the Windows F	we name that this the CommServe y com	t.	e programs to the
Installer Windows Firewa Alow program to co Firewal Windows Firew Add program If you plan on u exclusion list.	Eucli en Select an interfa communicate w audi.mycompar IP Address(es) f II Exclusion Lis mmunicate through all is ON ns to the Windows F	see name that this th the CommServe y com or the selected hos < Back d Windows	t.	

If there is a firewall between this machine and the CommServe, configure firewall services below.

Installer Firewall Configuration Configure firewall services

Configure firewall services

16. Click Next.

17.

18.

19.

	Installer
	Download and Install Latest Update Packs Download and Install the latest service pack and post pack from the software provider website.
	Download latest update pack(s) Make sure you have internet connectivity at this time. This process may take som depending on download speed.
Verify the default location for software installation.	Installer < Back Next >
	Destination Folder
Click Browse to change the default location. Click Next .	Select the destination folder to install the program files.
 Do not install the software to a mapped network drive. Do not use the following characters when specifying the destination path: : * ? " <> # It is recommended that you use alphanumeric characters only. 	Click Next to accept the default location, or click Browse to choose an alternate Destination Folder Destination Folder Browse Drive List Space Required / Recommended C: 323 MB \$Space Required / Recommended Installer Kale Next >
Select a Client Group from the list.	Installer
Click Next.	Client Group Selection
This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the CommCell Console.	Select a client group for the client. The Client Group is a logical grouping of client machines which have the same associations at various levels like Schedule Policy. Activity Control, Security and Reports. Client group: Nore Selected client_group
	Installer < BackNext >
Click Next.	Installer
	Schedule Install of Automatic Updates Choose when you want to schedule an install of the downloaded updates.
	Schedule Install of Automatic Updates
	C Once Time: 08.31.12 PM
	✓ Wednesday C Thursday ✓ Friday C Saturday ✓ Sunday Installer ✓ 8ack Next >

20. Select a Storage Policy. Click Next.

Cancel

Cancel

Cancel

Cancel

X

X

in.

To install the software on the remaining nodes of the cluster, click $\ensuremath{\textbf{Yes}}$.

24.

		Installer
		Storage Policy Selection
		Select a storage policy for the default subclient to be backed up.
		Configure for Laptop or Desktop Backup
		Select a storage policy from the pull-down list.
		Unassigned 🔽
		Installer
		< Back Next > Cancel
	If you do not have Storage Policy created, this message will be displayed.	Installer Storage Policy Selection
	Click OK .	Select a storage policy for the default subclient to be backed up.
		Configure for Laptop or Desktop Backup
	You can create the Storage Policy later in step 31.	
		Installer < Back Next > Cancel
21	Colort Evaluation Convex Name and Evaluation Convex Version from dran down	Installer
21.	Select Exchange Server Name and Exchange Server Version from drop-down list.	Exchange Server Name
	Click Next.	Please provide Exchange server name
	This screen will appear when you are installing Exchange	
	Agents on Non-Exchange Server.	Exchange Server
		Exchange Server Name:
		Exchange_Server
		Exchange Server Version
		Exchange 2007
		Installer (Back Next) Cancel
		Installer <u>Cancel</u>
22.	Click Next .	
22.	Click Next .	<u> < ₿</u> ack <u>N</u> ext> <u>C</u> ancel
22.	Click Next.	Kext > Cancel Installer Summary Summary Summary of install selections
22.	Click Next.	< <u>Back</u> <u>Next></u> <u>Cancel</u> Installer Summary
22.	Click Next .	Kext > Cancel Installer Cancel Summary Summary Summary Summary of install selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the
22.	Click Next.	Kext> Cancel Installer Summary Summary Summary of install selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files.
22.	Click Next.	Kext> Cancel Installer Summary Summary Summary of install selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files.
22.	Click Next.	Kext> Cancel Installer Summary Summary Summary of install selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. Destination Path = C-Vprogram Files.h CommServe Host = repromputer reprompany.com Interface Name = aud.mycompany.com
22.	Click Next.	Kext> Cancel Installer Summary Summary Summary Summary Summary Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. Destination Path = C.\Program Files/ CommSorve Host = mpcomputer mpcompary.com Interface Name = audit (mpcompary.com
22.	Click Next.	<
22.	Click Next.	< Back
		< Back Next> Cancel Installer Summary Summary of install selections Subp has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying lifes. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying lifes. Destination Path = C:\Program Files\ CommServe Host = mycomputer.mycompany.com Interface Name = audi.mycompany.com User = audi. If you are satisfied with the interface Name = audi.mycompany.com Interface Name = audi.mycompany.com User = use Cell evel policy Image: Cancel Installer < Back Next>
22.	Enter the following Exchange Administrator information then click Next .	< Back Next> Cancel Installer Summary Summary of install selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. Destination Path = C:\Program Files\ CommServe Host = mycomputer mycompany.com Interface Name = audi.mycompany.com Lick Texts Click Texts Click Texts Click Texts Job Pesuits Path = C:\Program Files\UobResuits Click Texts Click Texts Lick Texts Click Texts Click Texts Click Texts Installer Eack Next> Cancel
	Enter the following Exchange Administrator information then click Next . • Account Name - Domain user account created with the exchange server	<back< td=""> Next> Cancel Installar Summary Summary of install selections Support of the encough information to start copping the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copping files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copping files. Destination Path = C.\Program Files \ CommServe Host = mycomputer.mycompany.com Interface Name = audi.mycompany.com Destination Path = C.\Program Files \ Company Files \Ubersubstrates Click Files = Use Cell evel policy Unitabler < Back Next> Cancel Installer < Back Next> Cancel</back<>
	 Enter the following Exchange Administrator information then click Next. Account Name - Domain user account created with the exchange server administrator permissions. Do not include the domain name here. 	< Back Next> Cancel Installer Summary Summary Summary Summary of install selections Setup has enough information to stat copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. Destination Path = C-QProgram Files/A Commission Heath = repromptive mycompany.com Licent = aud Job Results Path = C-VProgram Files/AbDRiesults Global Filters = Use Cell level policy Installer < Back Next> Installer Cancel Exchange Administrator Account
	 Enter the following Exchange Administrator information then click Next. Account Name - Domain user account created with the exchange server administrator permissions. Do not include the domain name here. Account Password - The password assigned to the domain user. 	<back< td=""> Next> Cancel Installer Summary Summary of install selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. Destination Path = C.\Program Files\ CommServe Host = mycomputer.mycom linefs. Some = audi mycompany.com linefs. Job Results Path = C.\Program Files\UobResults Global Filters = Use Cell level policy Installer Cancel Installer Mailbox and Profile information Mailbox and Profile information Please enter the Exchance account information required below. A new profile will be created with</back<>
	 Enter the following Exchange Administrator information then click Next. Account Name - Domain user account created with the exchange server administrator permissions. Do not include the domain name here. Account Password - The password assigned to the domain user. Mailbox Name for this Account - Mailbox associated with the user above. 	<back< td=""> Next> Cancel Installer Summary Summary of install selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. Destination Path = C.\Program Files\ CommServe Host = mycomputer.mycom lineface. Next to begin copying files. Destination Path = C.\Program Files\ Destination Path = C.\Program Files\ Destination Path = C.\Program Files\UobFilesults Diob Filest Path - C.\Program Files\UobFilesults Diob Filest Path - C.\Program Files\UobFilesults Dioba Filest Path - C.\Program Files\UobFilesults Mailbox and Profile information Mailbox and Profile information Please enter the Exchange account information required below. A new profile wi</back<>
	 Enter the following Exchange Administrator information then click Next. Account Name - Domain user account created with the exchange server administrator permissions. Do not include the domain name here. Account Password - The password assigned to the domain user. 	<back< td=""> Next> Cancel Installar Summary Summary of install selections Support of the sensitive of the program files. If you are satisfied with the install selections Destination Path = C.\Program Files\ CommServe Host = mycomputer.mycompary.com Interface Name = audi mycompary.com Thereface Name = audi mycompary.com Ubertination Path = C.\Program Files\ CommServe Host = mycomputer.mycompary.com Destination Files = Use Cell level policy Image: Cancel Installer < Back</back<>
	 Enter the following Exchange Administrator information then click Next. Account Name - Domain user account created with the exchange server administrator permissions. Do not include the domain name here. Account Password - The password assigned to the domain user. Mailbox Name for this Account - Mailbox associated with the user above. Profile Name - Specify profile name to be created during agent install. This profile is associated with the domain user's mailbox. Exchange Server Name - Name of the Exchange Server that the agent will 	<back< td=""> Next> Cancel Installer Summary Summary of install selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. Destination Path = C.\Program Files\ CommServe Host = mycomputer.mycom lineface. Next to begin copying files. Destination Path = C.\Program Files\ Destination Path = C.\Program Files\ Destination Path = C.\Program Files\UobFilesults Diob Filest Path - C.\Program Files\UobFilesults Diob Filest Path - C.\Program Files\UobFilesults Dioba Filest Path - C.\Program Files\UobFilesults Mailbox and Profile information Mailbox and Profile information Please enter the Exchange account information required below. A new profile wi</back<>
	 Enter the following Exchange Administrator information then click Next. Account Name - Domain user account created with the exchange server administrator permissions. Do not include the domain name here. Account Password - The password assigned to the domain user. Mailbox Name for this Account - Mailbox associated with the user above. Profile Name - Specify profile name to be created during agent install. This profile is associated with the domain user's mailbox. 	<back< td=""> Next> Cancel Installer Summary Summary of install selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. Destination Path = C-VProgram Files/ CommSorve Host = nycomputer mycompany.com If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. Use Results Path = C-VProgram Files/VoOBFeults Client = audi If you are satisfied with the information Piles VoOBFeults Use Results Path = C-VProgram Files/VoOBFeults Client = audi If you are satisfied with the information Installer Sack Next> Cancel Installer Sack Next> Cancel Mailoxs and Prolie information Piles are the Exchange account information required below. A new profile will be created with the information supplied. Account Name: Profile Name: Exchange Server Name: Exchange Server Name:</back<>
	 Enter the following Exchange Administrator information then click Next. Account Name - Domain user account created with the exchange server administrator permissions. Do not include the domain name here. Account Password - The password assigned to the domain user. Mailbox Name for this Account - Mailbox associated with the user above. Profile Name - Specify profile name to be created during agent install. This profile is associated with the domain user's mailbox. Exchange Server Name - Name of the Exchange Server that the agent will communicate with for data protection and recovery operations. For Exchange Server 2010, enter the Client Access Role. After installation 	<back< td=""> Next> Cancel Installer Summary Summary of install selections Summary of install selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. Destination Path = C-VProgram Files/ CormoServe Host = mocmputer, mycompary.com Client = audi Job Results Path = C-VProgram Files/VobResults Client = audi Verogram Files/VobResults Client = C-VProgram Files/VobResults Cancel Installer Verogram Files/VobResults Clobal Filters = Use Cell level policy Verogram Files/VobResults Malbox and Police information Malbox and Police information Malbox and Police information Proteile Information Proteile Name: Proteile Name:</back<>
	 Enter the following Exchange Administrator information then click Next. Account Name - Domain user account created with the exchange server administrator permissions. Do not include the domain name here. Account Password - The password assigned to the domain user. Mailbox Name for this Account - Mailbox associated with the user above. Profile Name - Specify profile name to be created during agent install. This profile is associated with the domain user's mailbox. Exchange Server Name - Name of the Exchange Server that the agent will communicate with for data protection and recovery operations. For Exchange Server 2010, enter the Client Access Role. After installation configure the roles as described in Configure Mailboxes in Database Availability 	<back< td=""> Next> Cancel Installer Summary Summary of install selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. Destination Path = C-VProgram Files/ CommSorve Host = nycomputer mycompany.com If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. Use Results Path = C-VProgram Files/VoOBFeults Client = audi If you are satisfied with the information Piles VoOBFeults Use Results Path = C-VProgram Files/VoOBFeults Client = audi If you are satisfied with the information Installer Sack Next> Cancel Installer Sack Next> Cancel Mailoxs and Prolie information Piles are the Exchange account information required below. A new profile will be created with the information supplied. Account Name: Profile Name: Exchange Server Name: Exchange Server Name:</back<>
	 Enter the following Exchange Administrator information then click Next. Account Name - Domain user account created with the exchange server administrator permissions. Do not include the domain name here. Account Password - The password assigned to the domain user. Mailbox Name for this Account - Mailbox associated with the user above. Profile Name - Specify profile name to be created during agent install. This profile is associated with the domain user's mailbox. Exchange Server Name - Name of the Exchange Server that the agent will communicate with for data protection and recovery operations. For Exchange Server 2010, enter the Client Access Role. After installation 	<back< td=""> Next> Cancel Installer Summary Summary of install selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. Destination Path = C-VProgram Files/ CommSorve Host = nycomputer mycompany.com If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. Use Results Path = C-VProgram Files/VoOBFeults Client = audi If you are satisfied with the information Piles VoOBFeults Use Results Path = C-VProgram Files/VoOBFeults Client = audi If you are satisfied with the information Installer Sack Next> Cancel Installer Sack Next> Cancel Mailoxs and Prolie information Piles are the Exchange account information required below. A new profile will be created with the information supplied. Account Name: Profile Name: Exchange Server Name: Exchange Server Name:</back<>

X

×

×

To complete the install for t	this node only, click No.
-------------------------------	---------------------------

25. Select cluster nodes from the **Preferred Nodes** list and click the arrow button to move them to the **Selected Nodes** list.

Once you complete your selections, click Next.

- The list of **Preferred Nodes** displays all the nodes found in the cluster; from this list you should only select cluster nodes configured to host this cluster group server.
- Do not select nodes that already have multiple instances installed.

Yes	No
Installer Cluster Node Selection Select cluster nodes to configure	
Preferred Nodes Selected N vmckuter2 > <	odes Configured Nodes

Would you like to install the software on remaining nodes on the cluster?

2

26. Specify User Name and Password for the Domain Administrator account Information to perform the remote install on the cluster nodes you selected in the previous step.

Click Next.

27.	The progress of the remote install for the cluster nodes is displayed; the install can be
	interrupted if necessary.

Click **Stop** to prevent installation to any nodes after the current ones complete.

Click **Advanced Settings** to specify any of the following:

- Maximum number of nodes on which Setup can run simultaneously.
- Time allocated for Setup to begin executing on each node, after which the install attempt will fail.
- Time allocated for Setup to complete on each node, after which the install attempt will fail.

If, during the remote install of a cluster node, setup fails to complete or is interrupted, you must perform a local install on that node. When you do, the install begins from where it left off, or from the beginning if necessary. For procedures, see Manually Installing the Software on a Passive Node.

ostal	ler	

Domain administrator account information

Please provide domain admir

LAB \Administrator

Domain Account Information

mstatter					
	mote install at any time ntinue installation, but t				
Client Name	Client Status	Start Time	End Time	Result Description	1
real2					
				<u>.</u>	1
Installed succes Failed to install:	ssfully: 0		oinstall:	1 0 Max 1	
Elapsed time:	ll sec		- stimated time	left 10 min 0 sec	
Elapsed time:	Usec		stimated time	ierc i u min u sec	_
Installer					
Advanced Se	ttings			Stop	
nstaller					
	of simultaneous remo wait for Setup to start		· · ·	machines	
Time to wait I	for Setup to complete	e on each remote n	nachine: 15	; 🛨 minutes	
		OK			

< <u>B</u>ack

Cancel

28. Read the summary for remote installation to verify that all selected nodes were installed successfully.

Click Next.

- If any node installation fails, you must manually install the software on that node once the current installation is complete. See Manually Installing the Software on a Passive Node for step-by-step instructions.
- The message displayed on your screen will reflect the status of the selected nodes, and may look different from the example.

29. Click Next.

30. Click Finish.

Installer	X
Results	
Remote install results	
Summary of remote install	
The following software (Version) were selected to be installed:	A
+ CommCell	-
REAL2: Install succeeded.	
	_1
ا	▼ ▼
	<u>F</u> inish
	1
staller	X
Schedule Reminder	
Job schedule creation reminder	
Please note:	
You still need to create a Job Schedule for each iDataAgent that ha this client computer.	as been installed on
Job Schedules are required to allow the iDataAgents to perform aut and restore operations.	omated backup
and results operations.	
Job Schedule creation can be accomplished through the CommCell administration interface.	Console
dunimisti duuli inikeni ace.	
Installer	
11 Bi carror	Next>
	L. Hony
istaller	X
Completion Report	
Setup complete	
Software installation completed successfully.	A
Visit the website below to download latest Updates and Service Packs.	
Click Finish to complete Setup.	
Lick Finish to complete Setup.	
	<u>_</u>
Installer	
Technical Support Website	Einish

3

If you already have a storage policy selected in step 20, Click Next > button available at the bottom of the page to proceed to the **Configuration** section.

If you do not have Storage Policy created, continue with the following step.

31. Create a Storage Policy:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to **Policies**.
- 2. Right-click the Storage Policies and then click New Storage Policy.
- 3. Follow the prompts displayed in the Storage Policy Wizard. The required options are mentioned below:
 - Select the Storage Policy type as Data Protection and Archiving and click Next.
 - Enter the name in the Storage Policy Name box and click Next.
 - From the **Library** list, click the name of a disk library to which the primary copy should be associated and then click **Next**.

Ensure that you select a library attached to a MediaAgent operating in the current release.

- From the **MediaAgent** list, click the name of a MediaAgent that will be used to create the primary copy and then click **Next**.
- $\circ\;$ For the device streams and the retention criteria information, click Next to accept default values.
- $\circ~$ Select Yes to enable deduplication for the primary copy.
- From the **MediaAgent** list, click the name of the MediaAgent that will be used to store the Deduplication store.



Type the name of the folder in which the deduplication database must be located in the Deduplication Store Location or click the Browse button to select the folder and then click ${\bf Next}.$

 $\circ\;$ Review the details and click Finish to create the Storage Policy.

32.

- Enable the following registry key to create job specific profiles:
 - From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers.
 - Right-click the <Client> in which you want to add the registry key, and then click Properties.
 - Click the Registry Key Settings tab.
 - Click Add.
 - Enter CreateProcessSpecificProfile in the Name field.
 - Enter MSExchangeMBAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

 $\ensuremath{\mathsf{Enter}}$ MSExchangeDMAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

- Enter REG_DWORD in the Type filed.
- Enter 1 to enable and 0 to disable the key in the Value field.
- Click OK.

Previous Next >

Install the 32-bit Exchange Agents on a Non-Exchange Server

< Previous Next >

The following procedure describes the steps involved in installing the 32-bit Exchange Agents on 32-bit Non-Exchange Server computer.

WHERE TO INSTALL

The 32-bit Exchange Agents can be installed on a separate computer with connectivity to the Exchange Server. This method is referred to as an Non-Exchange Server installation and is useful if you want to offload the memory and processing resources required for backups and restores from the Exchange Server.

INSTALLATION

The software can be installed using one of the following methods:

METHOD 1: INTERACTIVE INSTALL

Use this procedure to directly install the software from the installation package or a **System Requirements** network drive.

METHOD 2: INSTALL SOFTWARE FROM COMMCELL CONSOLE

Use this procedure to remotely install the software on a client computer.

RELATED TOPICS

Download Software Packages Provides step-by-step procedure to download the latest packages for software install.

System Requirements Verify that the computer in which you wish to install the software satisfies the System Requirements.

Firewall

Provides comprehensive information on firewall.

PREREQUISITES

The below mentioned prerequisites are for Mailbox Agents only. Ensure that you have the following:

- Service account is a member of Exchange Organization Administrators group.
- The mail-enabled user is a member of the Local Administrator Group and have rights to all mailboxes on the server.
- Ensure that you assign full access to all mailboxes on the server. For details, see How do I Assign Full Access to All Mailboxes on a Server.

METHOD 1: INTERACTIVE INSTALL

- 1. Log on to the computer using an account with the following privileges:
 - Administrator of the local computer
 - Administrator of the Exchange Server
- 2. Run Setup.exe from Software Installation Package.
- 3. Select the required language.

Click Next.

Select the language you will use during installation.	
<u>N</u> ext >	Cancel
Install Software on this computer Advanced options	
View documentation website	
View Install Quick Start Guide (Requires Adobe Acrobat Reader)	
Install Adobe Acrobat Reader	
	🖨 Exit

- 4. Select the option to Install Calypso on this computer. NOTES:
 - Your screen may look different from the example shown.

5. Select I accept the terms in the license agreement. Click Next. 6. Select **Create a new instance** option to install the Exchange Agents on separate instance for the purpose of different Exchange Servers.

NOTES

- This screen will appear when the bAllowMultiInstances registry key has enabled on this computer.
- This screen will not appear if no other software components are installed on the computer.
- 7. To install the **Exchange** *i***DataAgents** expand **Client Modules | Exchange**, and select one or more of the following:
 - Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent
 - Exchange Public Folder iDataAgent

To install the **Exchange Archiver Agents**, expand **Client Modules | Archive Management**, and select one or more of the following:

- Exchange Compliance Archiver
- Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent
- Exchange Public Folder Archiver Agent

Click Next.

8. If this computer and the CommServe is separated by a firewall, select the **Configure firewall services** option and then click **Next**.

For firewall options and configuration instructions, see Firewall Configuration and continue with the installation.

If firewall configuration is not required, click Next.

Installer				
License Agreement				573 AUS
Please read the following License Ag the PAGE DOWN key to view the er	greement. Press ntire agreement.			1
				1 (11) (11) (11) (11) (11)
				^
F 117 T				
End User License :	and Limited War	ranty .	Agreemen	it
Softw	vare Release 9.0.0			
(including Microsoft® SQL	Server™ 2008 Entern	rise Edit	ion SOLSe	
2008 Express Edition an	d Windows Pre-Inst	allation	Environment)
Eus II	aan T isanaa Asman	~~+		~
 I accept the terms in the licens 	e agreement.			
I do not accept the terms in the	e license agreement.			
Installer				
	< Back	N	ext >	Cancel
Installer				
Install Instance Selection				
Please specify the instance you wan install.	it to use during			
- Instance Selection				
	w instance (Not recomm	nended)		
Install to exi				
Select a	n installed instance.	_		a
, 				-
Client Na	,			
Client Ho	ist Name			
CommSe	rve Name			
Installer				
	< Back	N	ext >	Cancel
Installer				
Select Platforms				×
	figure.			×
Select Platforms Select the platforms you want to con	figure.			×
Select Platforms Select the platforms you want to con		<	Move the po	ne to see a
Select Platforms Select the platforms you want to con		•	platform nam description or reasons why	ne to see a of the platform and
Select Platforms Select the platforms you want to cor		•	platform nam	ne to see a of the platform and
Select Platforms Select the platforms you want to con Common Technology Eng CommCel Console CommCel Console MedsAgent Modules Com Medar		<	platform nam description or reasons why	ie to see a of the platform and oit may be
Select Platforms Select the platforms you want to corr Common Technology Eng CommCel Console CommCel Console Console CommCel Console CommCel Console Console CommCel Console	ine Search		platform nam description of reasons why disabled. — Disk Spac (Req/Record	e to see a of the platform and it may be e mmended)
Select Platforms Select the platforms you want to con Common Technology Eng CommCel Console CommCel Console CommCel Console Client Modules Contert Indexing and Contert Indexing and Contert Contert Index Contert Contert In	ine Search	•	platform nam description of reasons why disabled. Disk Spac (Reg/Record Installation	e to see a of the platform and it may be e mmended) n Folder:
Select Platforms Select the platforms you want to con- Common Technology Eng CommCel Console CommCel Console MedSadgent Modules Context Indexing and Context Indexing and Sector Sector Se	ine Search Browse	()	platform nam description o reasons why disabled. - Disk Spac (Reg/Record Installation 0 M	it he platform and if the platform and it may be e mmended) h Folder: 1B/0 MB
Select Platforms Select the platforms you want to cor Common Technology Eng CommServe Modules CommCell Console CommCell Console Content Modules Content Modules Content Indexing and Content Indexing and	ine Search Browse		platform nam description of reasons why disabled. — Disk Spac (Req/Recon Installation 0 M Temporary	e to see a if the platform and it may be mmended) n Folder: (B / 0 MB y on C: drive:
Select Platforms Select the platforms you want to cor Common Technology Eng CommServe Modules CommServe Modules Content Modules Content Modules Content Indexing and Content Indexing and Con	ine Search Browse		platform nam description of reasons why disabled. - Disk Spac (Req/Recon Installation 0 M Temporary 0 M	ie to see a of the platform and it may be e mmended) h Folder: 18 / 0 MB y on C: drive: 18 / 0 MB
Select Platforms Select the platforms you want to corr Common Technology Eng CommCell Console CommCell Console Content Indexing and Content Indexing and Content Indexing and Content Indexing and Content Indexing and Supporting Nodules	ine Search Browse		platform nam description of reasons why disabled. - Disk Spac (Req/Recon Installation 0 M Temporary 0 M	e to see a if the platform and it may be mmended) n Folder: (B / 0 MB y on C: drive:
Select Platforms Select the platforms you want to corr Common Technology Eng CommCell Console CommCell Console Select Modules CommCell Console Select Modules CommCell Console CommCell	ine Search Browse		platform nam description of reasons why disabled. - Disk Spac (Req/Recon Installation 0 M Temporary 0 M	ie to see a of the platform and it may be e mmended) h Folder: 18 / 0 MB y on C: drive: 18 / 0 MB
Select Platforms Select the platforms you want to corr Common Technology Eng CommCel Console CommCel Console MedSadgent Modules Client Modules Content Modules Content Indexing and Control Veb Based Search & Continuoud Seleph Shi Supporting Modules Control Supporting Modules Console	ine Search Browse zator		platform nam description of reasons why disabled. - Disk Spac (Req/Recon Installation 0 M Temporary 0 M Special Reg	e to see a it he platform and it may be e mmended) is Folder: 187 0 MB istry Keys In Use
Select Platforms Select the platforms you want to cor Common Technology Eng CommCel Console Co	ine Search Browse zator		platform nam description of reasons why disabled. - Disk Spac (Req/Recon Installation 0 M Temporary 0 M Special Reg	e to see a it he platform and it may be e mmended) is Folder: 187 0 MB istry Keys In Use
Select Platforms Select the platforms you want to cor Common Technology Eng CommCel Console Co	ine Search Browse zator		platform nam description of reasons why disabled. - Disk Spac (Req/Recon Installation 0 M Temporary 0 M Special Reg	e to see a it he platform and it may be e mmended) is Folder: 187 0 MB istry Keys In Use
Select Platforms Select He platforms you want to cor Common Technology Eng Common Technology Eng CommCel Console Common Console Commo	ine Search Browse zator		platform nam description of reasons why disabled. - Disk Spac (Req/Recon Installation 0 M Temporary 0 M Special Reg	e to see a it he platform and it may be e mmended) is Folder: 187 0 MB istry Keys In Use
Select Platforms Select the platforms you want to corr Common Technology Eng CommCell Console CommCell Console CommCell Console CommCell Console Content Indexing and Content Indexing and Content Indexing and Content Indexing and Content Indexing and Content Indexing and SRM SIM Installer Installer Firewall Configuration	ine Search Browse zator		platform nam description of reasons why disabled. - Disk Spac (Req/Recon Installation 0 M Temporary 0 M Special Reg	e to see a it he platform and it may be e mmended) is Folder: 187 0 MB istry Keys In Use
Select Platforms Select the platforms you want to corr Common Technology Eng CommCell Console CommCell Console CommCell Console CommCell Console Context Indexing and Context Index Index Index Context Index Index Index Context Index Index Index Index Index Context Index Index Index Index Index Context Index	ine Search Browse cator < Back		platform nam description or reasons why disabled. Disk Space (Req/Record Installation 0 M Temporary 0 M Special Reg	ie to see a i the platform and it may be e mmended) i Folder: 187 0 MB istry Keys In Use Cancel
Select Platforms Select the platforms you want to corr Common Technology Eng CommCell Console CommCell Console CommCell Console CommCell Console CommCell Console Context Indexing and Context Indexing and Context Indexing and Context Indexing and Context Indexing and ControuceD stateppi SHM ControuceD stateppi SHM ControuceD stateppi Installer Installer Firewall Configuration Configure firewall services If there is a firewall between this man	ine Search Browse cator < Back		platform nam description or reasons why disabled. Disk Space (Req/Record Installation 0 M Temporary 0 M Special Reg	ie to see a i the platform and it may be e mmended) i Folder: 187 0 MB istry Keys In Use Cancel
Select Platforms Select the platforms you want to corr Common Technology Eng CommCell Console CommCell Console CommCell Console CommCell Console CommCell Console Context Indexing and Context Indexing and Context Indexing and Context Indexing and Context Indexing and ControuceD stateppi SHM ControuceD stateppi SHM ControuceD stateppi Installer Installer Firewall Configuration Configure firewall services If there is a firewall between this man	ine Search Browse cator < Back		platform nam description or reasons why disabled. Disk Space (Req/Record Installation 0 M Temporary 0 M Special Reg	ie to see a i the platform and it may be e mmended) i Folder: 187 0 MB istry Keys In Use Cancel
Select Platforms Select He platforms you want to corr Common Technology Eng CommCel Console Common Technology Eng Common Technolo	ine Search Browse color < Back	ive, conf	platform nam description or reasons why disabled. Disk Space (Req/Recor Installation 0 M Special Reg Next >	ie to see a it hen platform and it may be e mmended) 1 Folder: 18 / 0 MB istry Keys In Use Cancel Earcel ervices below. sible to open
Select Platforms Select He platforms you want to corr Common Technology Eng CommCel Console CommCel Console CommCel Console Content Indexing and Configure freewall services Content Index and Decked and each Content Index And Decked A	ine Search Browse cator < Back	ive, conf	platform nam description or reasons why disabled. Disk Space (Req/Recor Installation 0 M Special Reg Next >	ie to see a it hen platform and it may be e mmended) 1 Folder: 18 / 0 MB istry Keys In Use Cancel Earcel ervices below. sible to open
Select Platforms Select Platforms Select the platforms you want to corr Common Technology Eng CommSele Concole CommCele Concole CommCele Concole CommCele Concole CommCele Concole CommCele Concole Content Indexing and Co	ine Search Browse cator	affic. Wh her all co	platform nam description or reasons why disabled. Disk Spac (Req/Recor Installation 0 M Special Reg Next > Special Reg Next > S	ie to see a it hen platform and it may be e mmended) 1 Folder: 18 / 0 MB istry Keys In Use Cancel Earcel ervices below. sible to open
Select Platforms Select Platforms Select the platforms you want to corr Common Technology Eng CommCell Concole Common Technology Eng CommCell Concole Common Technology Eng CommCell Content Indexing and Content Indexing and Content Modules Continuous DetRepti Continuous De	ine Search Browse cator Chine and the CommSet Search Searc	affic. Wh her all co	platform nam description or reasons why disabled. Disk Spac (Req/Recor Installation 0 M Special Reg Next > Special Reg Next > S	ie to see a it hen platform and it may be e mmended) 1 Folder: 18 / 0 MB istry Keys In Use Cancel Earcel ervices below. sible to open
Select Platforms Select Platforms Select the platforms you want to corr Common Technology Eng Common Technology Context Indesing and Common Technology Context Indesing and Common Technology Context Indesing and Context Indext Index	ine Search Browre color Search	affic. Wh her all co	platform nam description or reasons why disabled. Disk Spac (Req/Recor Installation 0 M Special Reg Next > Special Reg Next > S	ie to see a it hen platform and it may be e mmended) 1 Folder: 18 / 0 MB istry Keys In Use Cancel Earcel ervices below. sible to open
Select Platforms Select Platforms Select the platforms you want to corr Common Technology Eng CommCell Concide CommCell Concide CommCell Concide CommCell Concide CommCell Concide Content Modules Configure Iterval Sector Content Modules Configure Iterval Configure C	ine Search Browre color Search	affic. Wh her all co	platform nam description or reasons why disabled. Disk Spac (Req/Recor Installation 0 M Special Reg Next > Special Reg Next > S	ie to see a it hen platform and it may be e mmended) 1 Folder: 18 / 0 MB istry Keys In Use Cancel Earcel ervices below. sible to open
Select Platforms Select Platforms Select the platforms you want to corr Common Technology Eng CommCell Console CommCell Console CommCell Console Content Indexing and Conten	ine Search Browre color Search	affic. Wh her all co	platform nam description or reasons why disabled. Disk Spac (Req/Recor Installation 0 M Special Reg Next > Special Reg Next > S	ie to see a it hen platform and it may be e mmended) 1 Folder: 18 / 0 MB istry Keys In Use Cancel Earcel ervices below. sible to open
Select Platforms Select Platforms Select the platforms you want to corr Common Technology Eng CommSelect Modules CommEdia Console MedaSagent Modules Content Indexing and Veb Based Search A Content Indexing and Conten	ine Search Browre color Search	ive, conf affic. Wh her all co t Comms unnel po	platform nam description or reasons why disabled. Disk Spac (Req/Recor Installation 0 M Special Reg Next > Special Reg Next > S	ie to see a it hen platform and it may be e mmended) 1 Folder: 18 / 0 MB istry Keys In Use Cancel Earcel ervices below. sible to open

9. Enter the fully qualified domain name of the **CommServe Host Name**.

Click Next.

Do not use space and the following characters when specifying a new name for the CommServe Host Name:

\|`~!@#\$%^&*()+=<>/?,[]{}:;'"

		CommServe Host Name [Enter a valid, fully-qualified, IP host name; for example nyccomputer.nyccompany.com) myccomputer.nyccompany.com
		Installer CBack
10.	Click Next.	Installer
	If there is any other instance installed on the computer, make sure that the host name does not match the client name entered in the Select a client name field in the	Communication Interface Name Setup will configure the communication paths.
	previous instance.	Select a client name
		audi_cn
		Select an interface name that this comp communicate with the CommServe
		audi.mycompany.com
		IP Address(es) for the selected host.
		Installer < Back
11.	Select Add programs to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List, to add CommCell	Installer
	programs and services to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List.	Windows Firewall Exclusion List Allow programs to communicate through Windows
	Click Next.	Firewall
	This option enables CommCell operations across Windows firewall by adding CommCell programs and services to Windows firewall exclusion	Windows Firewall is ON
	list.	Add programs to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List
	It is recommended to select this option even if Windows firewall is disabled. This will allow the CommCell programs and services to function if the Windows firewall is enabled at a later time.	If you plan on using Windows Firewall, it is recommended to exclusion list.
		Installer < Back
12.	Verify the default location for software installation.	Installer
	Click Browse to change the default location.	Destination Folder
	Click Next.	Select the destination folder to install the program files.
	 Do not install the software to a mapped network drive. 	Click Next to accept the default location, or click Browse to ch
	 Do not use the following characters when specifying the destination path: 	Destination Folder
	/:*?"<> #	C:\Program Files\

CommServe Name Specify the CommServe computer name and host name

CommServe Client Name

Cancel

Next>

-

•

ded to add the software programs to the

Next >

e to choose an alternate location

Space Required / Recommended

1394 MB / 1670 MB

Next >

Drive List

C: 928 MB

Installer

-

< Back

Browse.

Next >

Cancel

Cancel

Cancel

X

computer will use to

It is recommended that you use alphanumeric characters only.

13. Select a Client Group from the list.

Click Next.

This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the CommCell Console.

14. Click Next.

15. Select a Storage Policy. Click Next.

If you do not have Storage Policy created, this message will be displayed. Click ${\bf OK}.$

You can create the Storage Policy later in step 21.

16. Select Exchange Server Name and Exchange Server Version from drop-down list. Click Next.

Client Group Selection Select a client group for the cli	
Select a client group for the cli	
	ern.
The Client Gro which have th	up is a logical grouping of client machines ie same associations at various levels like cy, Activity Control, Security and Reports.
Schedule Poli	cy, Activity Control, Security and Reports.
Client gr	oup:
None Se	lected
client_gr	oup
Installer	
	< Back Next > Cancel
ootallar	X
nstaller	
Schedule Install of Auto Choose when you want to sch	
downloaded updates.	
🔽 Schedule Install of Auto	amatic Undates
C Once	
Weekly	Time: 08:31:12 PM
Sony	Monday C Tuesday
	C Wednesday C Thursday
	C Friday C Saturday
	C Sunday
Installer	
	<back next=""> Cancel</back>
Installer	
Storage Policy Selectio	n
Select a storage policy for the backed up.	e default subclient to be
Configure for Laptop or	Desktop Backup
Select a storage policy	from the pull-down list.
Unass	igned 🔽
1 Contraction	
Installer	
Installer	< Back Next> Cancel
	<back next=""> Cancel</back>
Installer	
Installer	
installor Storage Policy Selectio	n Jedeudi subcieret to be
Installer Storage Policy Selectio Select a storage policy for the backed up.	n Jedeudi subcieret to be
Installer Storage Policy Selectio Select a storage policy for the backed up.	n Jedeudi subcieret to be
Installer Storage Policy Selectio Select a storage policy for the backed up.	n Jedeudi subcieret to be
Installer Storage Policy Selectio Select a storage policy for the backed up.	n Read subclime to be
Installar Storage Delicy Selectio Select a dege poley for the Select action Configure for Laptop o	n Jedeudi subcieret to be
Installer	n Reskitop Backup
Installer Storage Policy Selectio Select a storage policy for the Selection Jup Configure for Laptop o Installer	n Read subclime to be
Installer	n Carcel
Test to liter Storage Polity Selection Debelow of storage policy for the Debelow of vice Debelow of vice	n Carcel
Test to liter Storage Polity Selection Debelow of storage policy for the Debelow of vice Debelow of vice	n Carcel
Test to liter Storage Polity Selection Debelow of storage policy for the Debelow of vice Debelow of vice	n Carcel
Storage Policy Selection Storage Policy Selection Select a storage policy for the Selection day Installer Exchange Server Name Please provide Exchange serv	n
Testantine Storage Policy Selection Selected a storage policy for the Selected age Contiguer for Lapitop of Installer Exchange Server Name Please provide Exchange serv Exchange Server Name	er name
	n
Testantine Storage Policy Selection Selected a screage policy for the Selected as the selection of the s	e Server change Server
	e Server change Server

17. Click Next.

<<u>Back N</u>ext> Cancel

- **18.** Enter the following Exchange Administrator information then click **Next**.
 - Account Name Domain user account created with the exchange server administrator permissions. Do not include the domain name here.
 - Account Password The password assigned to the domain user.
 - Mailbox Name for this Account Mailbox associated with the user above.
 - **Profile Name** Specify profile name to be created during agent install. This profile is associated with the domain user's mailbox.
 - Exchange Server Name Name of the Exchange Server that the agent will communicate with for data protection and recovery operations.

Enter the Mailbox Role Server name (NetBIOS). After installation configure the roles as described in Configure Mailboxes in Database Availability Group (DAG) Servers.

- Domain The installation detects and enters a domain name. If necessary, modify the domain name by specifying Windows domain that the Exchange Server resides in.
- 19. Click Next.

20. Click Finish.

	×
Summary Summary of install selections	
Setup has enough information to start co install settings, click Next to begin copyir	pying the program files. If you are satisfied with the ng files.
Destination Path = C:\Program Files\ Commiserve Host = mucomputer impcom Ineface Kame = audi.mpcmpary.com Uob Result Path = C:\Program Files\Uob Global Filters = Use Cell level policy	
Installer	< Back Next > Cancel
Installer Exchange Administrator Account Information Mailbox and Profile information	×
Please enter the Exchange account informa the information supplied.	tion required below. A new profile will be created with
Account Name:	Profile Name:
Account Password:	Exchange Server Name:
Mailbox Name for this Account:	Domain:
Installer	< Back Next> Cancel
Installer Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder	
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note:	o for each iDataAgent that has been installed on
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Schedule this client computer.	
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Schedule this client computer. Job Schedules are required to allow th	s for each iD ataAgent that has been installed on s iD ataAgents to perform automated backup
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Schedule this client computer. Job Schedules are required to allow the and reture operations. Job Schedule creation can be accomp	s for each iD ataAgent that has been installed on s iD ataAgents to perform automated backup
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Schedule this client computer. Job Schedule see required to allow the and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be accomp administration interface.	s for each DataAgent that has been installed on DataAgents to perform automated backup lished through the CommCell Console Next>
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Schedule this client computer. Job Schedule ser required to allow the and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be accomp administration interface.	s for each iD ataAgent that has been installed on 9 iD ataAgents to perform automated backup lished through the CommCell Console
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Schedule this client computer. Job Schedules are required to allow the and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be accomp administration interface. Installer Installer Installer Software installation completed successfully.	of for each iD ataAgent that has been installed on a iD ataAgents to perform automated backup lished through the CommCell Console
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Schedule this clerit computer. Job Schedules are required to allow the and restore operations. Job Schedules are required to allow the and restore operations. Job Schedules are required to allow the and restore operations. Job Schedules are required to allow the and restore operations. Job Schedules are required to allow the administration interface. Installer Installer Setup complete	of for each iD ataAgent that has been installed on a iD ataAgents to perform automated backup lished through the CommCell Console
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Schedule this client computer. Job Schedules are required to allow the and reture operations. Job Schedule creation can be accomp administration interface. Installer Installer Setup complete Software installation completed successfully. Visit the website below to download latest Up	of for each iD ataAgent that has been installed on a iD ataAgents to perform automated backup lished through the CommCell Console
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Schedule this client computer. Job Schedules are required to allow the and reture operations. Job Schedule creation can be accomp administration interface. Installer Installer Setup complete Software installation completed successfully. Visit the website below to download latest Up	of for each iD ataAgent that has been installed on a iD ataAgents to perform automated backup lished through the CommCell Console
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Schedule this client computer. Job Schedules are required to allow the and reture operations. Job Schedule creation can be accomp administration interface. Installer Installer Setup complete Software installation completed successfully. Visit the website below to download latest Up	s for each iDataAgent that has been installed on s DataAgents to perform automated backup lished through the CommCell Console <u>Next</u> > dates and Service Packs.

If you already have a storage policy selected in step 15, Click Next > button available at the bottom of the page to proceed to the **Configuration** section.

If you do not have Storage Policy created, continue with the following step.

21. Create a Storage Policy:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to **Policies**.
- 2. Right-click the Storage Policies and then click New Storage Policy.
- 3. Follow the prompts displayed in the Storage Policy Wizard. The required options

are mentioned below:

- Select the Storage Policy type as Data Protection and Archiving and click Next.
- Enter the name in the Storage Policy Name box and click Next.
- From the Library list, click the name of a disk library to which the primary copy should be associated and then click Next.

Ensure that you select a library attached to a MediaAgent operating in the current release.

- From the MediaAgent list, click the name of a MediaAgent that will be used to create the primary copy and then click Next.
- $\circ\;$ For the device streams and the retention criteria information, click Next to accept default values.
- $\circ~$ Select Yes to enable deduplication for the primary copy.
- From the **MediaAgent** list, click the name of the MediaAgent that will be used to store the Deduplication store.

Type the name of the folder in which the deduplication database must be located in the Deduplication Store Location or click the Browse button to select the folder and then click **Next**.

- Review the details and click **Finish** to create the Storage Policy.
- 22. Enable the following registry key to create job specific profiles:
 - From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers.
 - Right-click the <Client> in which you want to add the registry key, and then click Properties.
 - Click the Registry Key Settings tab.
 - Click Add.
 - Enter CreateProcessSpecificProfile in the Name field.
 - Enter MSExchangeMBAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

 $\label{eq:entropy} \mbox{Enter MSExchangeDMAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).$

- Enter REG_DWORD in the Type filed.
- Enter 1 to enable and 0 to disable the key in the Value field.
- Click OK.

METHOD 2: INSTALL SOFTWARE FROM COMMCELL CONSOLE

1. From the CommCell Browser, select **Tools**, point to **Add/Remove Software**, and then click **Install Software**.



2. Click Next.



3. Select Windows. Click Next.

4. Select Manually Select Computers. Click Next.

5. Enter the fully qualified domain name of the computer on which you have Exchange Server.

For example: win08ex07.idclab.loc

Click Next.

Installer 🛛 🔀
install Wizard
This wizard guides you through the steps required to install software on computers.
Click Next to continue.
< Back (Next >) Save As Script Finish Cancel Help
Installer
Select the computer's operating system
() Windows
O Unix and Linux
A Back Mext > P Save As Script Finish Cancel Help
Installer
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software • <u>Hanady select computers</u> Software will be installed only on the selected list of computers. • Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs.
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Iterative select computers Iterative will be installed only on the selected lat of computers. Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs.
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Image: select computers Software will be installed only on the selected lat of computers. Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Cepack
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software • Manualy select computers • Manualy select computers • Automatically discover computers • Camputers will be discovered when the job runs. • Egad: • Save As Sorge: • Proch Egad Egad • Manualy computers • Save As Sorge: • Proch Egad Egad • Egad <t< td=""></t<>
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software I drustly select computers Software will be installed only on the selected lat of computers. Automatically discovered when the job runs. Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Ceptoders will be discovered when the job runs.
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Select how to discover the computers Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Ceged:
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software I drustly select computers Software will be installed only on the selected lat of computers. Automatically discovered when the job runs. Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Ceptoders will be discovered when the job runs.
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Select how to discover the computers Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Ceged:
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Select how to discover the computers Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Ceged:
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Select how to discover the computers Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Ceged:
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Select how to discover the computers Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Ceged:
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Select how to discover the computers Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Ceged:
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Select how to discover the computers Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Ceged:
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Select how to discover the computers Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Ceged:
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Select how to discover the computers Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Ceged:
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Select how to discover the computers Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Ceged:
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Select how to discover the computers Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Ceged:

6. Click Next.

 Specify User Name and Password that must be used to access the computer. Click Next.

- To install the Exchange iDataAgents expand Client Modules | Backup & Recovery | Exchange, and select one or more of the following:
 - Exchange Database iDataAgent
 - Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent
 - Exchange Public Folder iDataAgent

Click Next.

For Non-Exchange Server, Exchange Database iDataAgent will not be applicable.

9.

- Select Client Group from Available and click Add.
 - Select a **Storage Policy** from the drop-down list. Click **Next**.

NOTES:

 Select the Configure for Laptop or Desktop Backup option to install Backup Monitor utility. This utility allows you to view the backup job summary from the client computer without opening the CommCell Console. See Monitor - Laptop User for more information.

To use current	Client or Client Group Software Cache settings, click Next. To override Software Cache settings check are Cache and select the Software Cache to be used.
	are Cache and select the Software Cache to be used. Software Cache
Software	Eaches: murphy.domain.company.com
	<back dext=""> Save As Script Finish Cancel Halp</back>
Installer	
	ount Information
The specifi	ed account should have administrative access to the computer. If you are installing
multiple clie	nts, the user should have access to all clients.
	euse Active Directory credentials
	User Name: Example:domain\username
	Password:
	Confirm Password:
< <u>B</u> ack	Next > Save As Script Finish Cancel Help
Installer	N to jost Ni
Select Package(s	Server DataAgent for Oracle
Select Package(s	Server Dotaligent. for Orade for Note asso Dotaligent asso Dotaligent Quitablent Quitablent
Select Package(s	Server Constraints of the Constr
Select Package(s	Server Gordaget.
	Server Consultantes Annue Annu
	Server Graduppet Of Constantion (Constantiant) (Con
Select Package(9 	Server Grandspace
	Server Construction of the
	Server for Margonic
	Server Constagues for Occase for
	Server Constrained
	Server Constaguest for Oracle for Oracle for Dack for Dac
Select Package(Serve Catalyne: for catalyne: for Catalyne: The
Select Package(Serve Canadyone for costs in For Casis in Fo
Select Package(Select	Serve Catalyne: for catalyne: for Catalyne: The
Select Package(Select	Serve Consigned. for Ocale for
Select Package(Select	Server Canadagone for Oracle for Oracle for Data for Data
Select Package Selec	Server Canadagone for Oracle for Canadagone for Canadagone for Canadagone for Canadagone memory April Status of Canadagone memory April Status of Canadagone and Canadagone
Select Package(Select	<pre>serve charakages: for cha</pre>
Select Package Selec	Server Canadagone for Oracle for Canadagone for Canadagone for Canadagone for Canadagone memory April Status of Canadagone memory April Status of Canadagone and Canadagone
Select Package Selec	Server Charlagene for Code for
Select Package Selec	Server Charlagene for Code for
Select Package Selec	Server Charlagene for Code for

10. Type the Agent Specific Settings information. Click Next.

11. Click Next.

12. Select Immediate. Click Next.

13. Click Finish.

Agent Specific Settings		
Components		
	rver Information (Optional)	
Server Name		
😑 Exchange Pr		
User Account [Mailbox Name	DCLAB/administrator Configure P	assword
Profile Name		
	stabase (Optional)	
User Account		assword
O Differential E	Bachup	
 Incremental 	Badup	
	< geck gent > Dr Save As Scipt Pinth C	ancel
	K Barr Marrs Land Variation	
Installer		
Enter Additional Instal	I Options	
Installer flags		
 Installer Hags Install Updates 		
Reboot (if require	ed)	
Kill Browser Proce		
Ignore Running J		
Stop Oracle Servi		
	are already part of the CommCell component	
Advanced Options		
Delete Packages /	After Install	
Ignore Client/Hos	t Name Conflict	
Install Result Log Loca		
Install Agents For	Restore Only	
Optional Settings		
 Job Result Path 	Directory	
CVD Part		8400
Evingric Port		8402
Install Directory		
Log File Location		
CommServe Host N	tame	
	< Back Bent> Save As Script Pinish	Cancel
Installer		
Riesse Salact	When To Run The Job	
Piedse Select	when to kan the Job	
Job Initiation		
(Imme	ediate	
	nis job now	
Kullu		
O Schei	dule	
	ure Schedule Pattern Configure	
- **14.** You can track the progress of the job from the **Job Controller** or **Event Viewer** window.
- 15. Once the job is complete, right-click the **CommServe** computer, click **View** and then click **Admin Job History**.

16. Select Install/Upgrade/Remove Software. Click OK.

- 17. You can view the following details about the job by right-clicking the job:
 - Items that succeeded during the job
 - Items that failed during the job
 - Details of the job



Summary

Admin Job History Filter		E
Job Type		
O All	🔘 Data Aging	C Export Media
 Auxiliary Copy 	 Inventory 	O Disaster Recovery Backup
O Data Verification	Offline Content Indexing	C Erase Media
O Erase Backup/Archived Data	O Drive Validation	O Drive Cleaning
🚫 Stamp Media	Install/Remove Updates	O Download/Copy Software
Install/Upgrade/Remove Softwar	Disk Library Maintenance	SRM Reports/Actions
O Information Management	O CommCell Export	O CommCell Import
Media Refreshing 1	O Recover Store	
Mon 08/30/2010 12 : 07 PM		12:07PM
⊙ All O Co	mpleted O Failed	🚫 Killed
Number of Jobs		

- Events of the job
- Log files of the job

Job Type	Job ID	Status	Start Time	End Time	User N	Error C	Storag	Auton	Legal	Legal	
Install Software	20	S Complete	View Job Details	11.	, admin			NIA.	N/A	N/A	
			Resubmit Job								
			View Events								
			View Content In	dex 🔸							
			View Logs								
			Send Logs								

18.

Enable the following registry key to create job specific profiles:

- From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers.
- Right-click the <Client> in which you want to add the registry key, and then click Properties.
- Click the Registry Key Settings tab.
- Click Add.
- Enter CreateProcessSpecificProfile in the Name field.
- Enter MSExchangeMBAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

 $\ensuremath{\mathsf{Enter}}$ MSExchangeDMAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

- Enter REG_DWORD in the Type filed.
- Enter 1 to enable and 0 to disable the key in the Value field.
- Click OK.



Install the Exchange Agents on Exchange Server 2003

< Previous Next >

Follow the steps given below to install the Exchange Agents on Exchange Server 2003.

WHERE TO INSTALL

Install the software directly on the Exchange Server you wish to protect

INSTALLATION

The software can be installed using one of the following methods:

METHOD 1: INTERACTIVE INSTALL

Use this procedure to directly install the software from the installation package or a network drive. System Requirements

METHOD 2: INSTALL SOFTWARE FROM COMMCELL CONSOLE

Use this procedure to remotely install the software on a client computer.

RELATED TOPICS

Download Software Packages

Provides step-by-step procedure to download the latest packages for software install.

System Requirements Verify that the computer in which you wish to install the software satisfies the System Requirements.

Firewall

Provides comprehensive information on firewall.

PREREQUISITES

The below mentioned prerequisites are for Mailbox Agents only. Ensure that you have the following:

- The mail-enabled user is a member of the Local Administrator Group and have rights to all mailboxes on the server.
- Using the Exchange System Manager snap-in, right-click the organization object and delegate control.
- Using the Wizard, assign the MailboxAdmin user Exchange Full Administrator privileges.
- Ensure that you assign full access to all mailboxes on the server. For details, see How do I Assign Full Access to All Mailboxes on a Server.

METHOD 1: INTERACTIVE INSTALL

- 1. Log on to the computer using an account with the following privileges:
 - Administrator of the local computer
 - Administrator of the Exchange Server
- 2. Run Setup.exe from the Software Installation Package.
- 3. Select the required language.

Click Next.

Select the language you will use during installation.	
Next >	Cancel
Install Software on this computer Advanced options	
View documentation website	
View Install Quick Start Guide (Requires Adobe Acrobat Reader)	
♦ Install Adobe Acrobat Reader	
	🖨 Exit

4. Select the option to install software on this computer.

The options that appear on this screen depend on the computer in which the software is being installed.

5. Select I accept the terms in the license agreement.

Click Next.

- To install the Exchange iDataAgents expand Client Modules | Backup & Recovery 6. | Exchange, and select one or more of the following:
 - Exchange Database iDataAgent
 - Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent
 - Exchange Public Folder iDataAgent

To install the Exchange Archiver Agents, expand Client Modules | Archive Management, and select one or more of the following:

- Exchange Compliance Archiver
- Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent
- Exchange Public Folder Archiver Agent

Click Next.

7. If this computer and the CommServe is separated by a firewall, select the **Configure** firewall services option and then click Next.

For firewall options and configuration instructions, see Firewall Configuration and continue with the installation.

If firewall configuration is not required, click **Next**.

8.	Enter the fully qualified domain name of the $\ensuremath{\textbf{CommServe Host Name}}.$
	Click Next.

Do not use space and the following characters when specifying a new name for the CommServe Host Name:

\|`~!@#\$%^&*()+=<>/?,[]{}:;'"

connect CommSe	specify how Windows Firewall is limiting network traffic. Whether it is possible to open ion from here to a CommServe's tunnel port, whether all connections toward erve are blocked, and setup should instead expect CommServe to connect back to this , or whether there is a Proxy in between.
🖲 This r	nachine can open connection to CommServe on tunnel port
C Comm	Serve can open connection toward this machine
C Comm	nServe is reachable only through a proxy.
In	staller Cancel
staller	
ommSe	rve Name e CommServe computer name and host
CommSe Specify the name	
CommSe Specify th name	e CommServe computer name and host
CommSe Specify th name	e CommServe computer name and host
CommSe Specify the name	e CommServe computer name and host CommServe Client Name CommServe Host Name Forera a valid, fullyqualified, IP host name; for example:

< Back

Next>

License Agreement

Installer

nstaller

- 6

Select Platforms

Please read the following License Agreement. Press the PAGE DOWN key to view the entire agreement.

 I accept the terms in the license agreement. C I do not accept the terms in the license agreement

Select the platforms you want to configure

 □
 □
 Common Technology Engine

 ±
 □
 CommCell Conside

 ±
 □
 CommCell Conside

 ±
 □
 Control Adgert Modules

 □
 □
 Clenk Modules

 □
 □
 Control Indexing and Search

 □
 □
 Content Indexing and Search

Installer Install Agents for Restore Only

Firewall Configuration Configure firewall services

Configure firewall services

nstaller

End User License and Limited Warranty Agreement Software Release 9.0.0 (including Microsoft® SQL Server™ 2008 Enterprise Edition, SQL Server™ 2008 Express Edition and Windows Pre-Installation Environment) Fud Hoav I lanuas Age

> < Back

< Back

If there is a firewall between this machine and the CommServe, configure firewall services below.

Next >

Move the pointer over a platform name to see a description of the platform reasons why it may be disabled.

Disk Space (Reg/Recommended)

Installation Folder:

0 MB/ 0 MB

0 MB/ 0 MB

Special Registry Keys In Us

Cancel

Cancel

X

Temporary on C: drive:

^

Cancel

9. Click Next.

		Installer
		Communication Interface Name Setup will configure the communication paths.
		Select a client name Budiven
		Select an interface name that this computer will use to communicate with the CommServe
		audi.mycompany.com
		Installer < Back Next> Cancel
10.	Select Add programs to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List, to add CommCell programs and services to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List.	Installer (
	Click Next.	Allow programs to communicate through Windows Firewall
	This option enables CommCell operations across Windows firewall by adding CommCell programs and services to Windows firewall exclusion list.	Windows Firewall is ON
	It is recommended to select this option even if Windows firewall is disabled. This will allow the CommCell programs and services to function if the Windows firewall is enabled at a later time.	If you plan on using Windows Firewall, it is recommended to add the software programs to the exclusion list.
		Installer < Back Next> Cancel
11.	Verify the default location for software installation.	Installer Destination Folder
	Click Browse to change the default location.	Select the destination folder to install the program files.
	 Click Next. Do not install the software to a mapped network drive. Do not use the following characters when specifying the destination path: /:*?"<> # 	Click Next to accept the default location, or click Browse to choose an alternate location. Destination Folder
	It is recommended that you use alphanumeric characters only.	Drive List Drive List Spece Required / Recommended C: 928 MB 1394 MB / 1670 MB
		Installer KBack Next> Cancel
12.	Select a Client Group from the list.	Installer
	Click Next.	Client Group Selection Select a client group for the client.
	This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the CommCell Console.	The Client Group is a logical grouping of client machines which have the same associations at various levels like Schedule Policy, Activity Control, Security and Reports.
		Client group: None Salected client_group
		Installer < Back Next> Cancel
13.	Click Next.	

X

X

14. Select a Storage Policy. Click Next.

If you do not have Storage Policy created, this message will be displayed. Click \mathbf{OK} .

You can create the Storage Policy later in step 25.

- If you are installing the Exchange Database *i*DataAgent, click Configure Exchange Database Specific Information.
- If you are installing the Exchange Agents, skip to Configure Exchange Agents Specific Information.

CONFIGURE EXCHANGE DATABASE SPECIFIC INFORMATION

- 15. Select the backup type for Exchange Database backups. Choose either of the following options, then click **Next**.
 - **Differential** Specifies that each non-full Exchange Database backup secures all data that has changed since the last full backup. Transaction lobs are not purged.
 - **Incremental** Specifies that each non-full Exchange Database backup secures only that data that has changed since the last backup of any type. Committed transaction logs are purged.



Schedule Install of Automatic Updates Choose when you want to schedule an install of the downloaded updates.

Schedule Install of Automatic Updates

Time:

Monday

C Friday

C Sunday

< Back

< Back

C Wednesday

08:31:12 PM

÷

C Tuesday

C Thursday

C Saturday

Next>

•

Next>

Next >

Cancel

Cancel

Cancel

C Once

Weekly

Installer

Storage Policy Selection

Installer

Confi

Select a storage policy for the default subclient to be backed up. Configure for Laptop or Desktop Backup Select a storage policy from the pull-down list.

Select a storage policy for the default subclient to be backed up.

re for Laptop or Desktop Backup

16. Enter the user credentials to access the Exchange Server to perform the backup operation.

- The User Account must have Exchange Administrator privileges.
- The installation detects the domain name. If necessary, you can modify the domain name by specifying Windows domain that the Exchange Server resides in.

17. Click Next.

- 18. The install program displays a reminder to verify that Circular Logging is disabled before performing any database backup operations. To verify that Circular Logging is disabled:
 - From Exchange System Manager, navigate to and expand the server that the Database *i*DataAgent is being installed on.
 - Verify that the Circular Logging check box has not been selected for each Storage Group. If Circular Logging has been enabled for a Storage Group, disable it at this time.

Click OK.

- If you are installing the Exchange Agents, then click Configure Exchange Agents Specific Information.
- If you are installing the Exchange Database iDataAgent, skip to Verify Summary of Install Options.

CONFIGURE EXCHANGE AGENTS SPECIFIC INFORMATION

19. Select **Exchange Server Name** and **Exchange Server Version** from drop-down list.

Click Next.

This screen will appear when you are installing Exchange Agents on Non-Exchange Server.

Installer					×
Exchange Server I Please provide Exchar					
	Exchange Server Exchange Sr Exchange_S Exchange Se Exchange Se	erver erver Version	<u> </u>		
Installer		< <u>B</u> ack	<u>N</u> ext>	<u></u> an	cel

20. Click Next.

	Account Name: Account Password Domain: EXCH		
		<u>N</u> ext>	Cancel
Installer			X
Summary Summary of install s	elections		
Setup has enou install settings, c	gh information to start copying the pr lick Next to begin copying files.	ogram files. If you are sat	isfied with the
CommServe Hos Interface Name Client =audi Job Results Path	= C:\Program Files\ t = mycomputer.mycompany.com = audi.mycompany.com = C:\Program Files\JobResuits Jse Cell level policy		
Installer			
	< Back	Next >	Cancel
Installer Please ve backup op	ify that Grcular Logging is disabled erations.	before performing any da	atabase
	0K]	

Enter Administrator account information Enter Administrator account information

Installer	
Summary Summary of install selections	
Setup has enough information to st install settings, click Next to begin	tart copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the copying files.
Destination Path = C\Program File CommServe Host = nyccomputer.m Interface Name = audi.mycompart Client = audi. Job Results Path = C\Program File Global Fillers = Use Cell level polic;	ycompany.com y.com es√JobResults
Installer	
	< Back Next > Cancel
Exchange Administrator Account Information Mailbox and Profile information Please enter the Exchange account in the information supplied.	Int formation required below. A new profile will be created with
Account Name:	Profile Name:
Account Name.	
Account Password:	Exchange Server Name:
Mailbox Name for this Account:	Domain:

- 21. Enter the following Exchange Administrator information then click Next.
 - Account Name Domain user account created with the exchange server administrator permissions. Do not include the domain name here.
 - Account Password The password assigned to the domain user.
 - Mailbox Name for this Account Mailbox associated with the user above.
 - **Profile Name** Specify profile name to be created during agent install. This profile is associated with the domain user's mailbox.
 - Exchange Server Name Name of the Exchange Server that the agent will communicate with for data protection and recovery operations.
 - **Domain** The installation detects and enters a domain name. If necessary, modify the domain name by specifying Windows domain that the Exchange Server resides in.

VERIFY SUMMARY OF INSTALL OPTIONS

22. Click Next.

23. Click Next.

24. Click Finish.

taller					
mmary					
ummary of install selectio	าร				
Setup has enough info	rmation to start c	opuing the pro	roram files. If	unu are sal	tisfied with the
install settings, click N	ext to begin copy	ing files.	grammov. n	,00 00 00	
					~
Destination Path = C:\	Program Files\				
CommServe Host = m	computer.mycon	npany.com			
Interface Name = aud Client = audi					
Job Results Path = C:		bResults			
Global Filters = Use Ce	I level policy				~
<					>
Installer –					
		< Back	Ne	st>	Cancel
	_				
iller					
aller adule Reminder					
edule Reminder	nder				
aller nedule Reminder b schedule creation rem	inder				
edule Reminder	inder				
edule Reminder	inder				
edule Reminder	inder				
edule Reminder o schedule creation rem Please note:		le foreach iD≀	ataðgent tha	t has been	installed on
edule Reminder		le foreach iD≀	ataAgent tha	t has been	installed on
edule Reminder o schedule creation rem Please note: You still need to crea this client computer.	te a Job Schedu		-		
edule Reminder o schedule creation rem Please note: You still need to crea	te a Job Schedu quired to allow th		-		
edule Reminder schedule creation rem Please note: You still need to crea this client computer. Job Schedules are re and restore operation	te a Job Schedu quired to allow th s.	ne iDataAgen t	s to perform	automated l	backup
edule Reminder b schedule creation rem Please note: You still need to cree this client computer. Job Schedules are re and restore operation Job Schedule creati	te a Job Schedu quired to allow th s. n can be accom	ne iDataAgen t	s to perform	automated l	backup
edule Reminder b schedule creation rem Please note: You still need to crea this client computer. Job Schedules are re and restore operation	te a Job Schedu quired to allow th s. n can be accom	ne iDataAgen t	s to perform	automated l	backup
Please note: You still need to crea this client computer. Job Schedules are ra and restore operation Job Schedule creation	te a Job Schedu quired to allow th s. n can be accom	ne iDataAgen t	s to perform	automated l	backup
edule Reminder b schedule creation rem Please note: You still need to cree this client computer. Job Schedules are re and restore operation Job Schedule creati	te a Job Schedu quired to allow th s. n can be accom	ne iDataAgen t	s to perform	automated l	backup
edule Reminder b schedule creation rem Please note: You still need to creat this client computer. Job Schedules are re- and restore operation Job Schedule creatic administration interfa	te a Job Schedu quired to allow th s. n can be accom	ne iDataAgen t	s to perform	automated l	backup
edule Reminder b schedule creation rem Please note: You still need to cree this client computer. Job Schedules are re and restore operation Job Schedule creati	te a Job Schedu quired to allow th s. n can be accom	ne iDataAgen t	s to perform	automated l	backup
edule Reminder b schedule creation rem Please note: You still need to creat this client computer. Job Schedules are re and restore operation Job Schedule creatic administration interfa	te a Job Schedu quired to allow th s. n can be accom	ne iDataAgen t	s to perform	automated l	backup

Software i	stallation completed successfully.	
Visit the w	ebsite below to download latest Updates and Service Pa	acks.
Click Finis	n to complete Setup.	

If you already have a storage policy selected in step 14, Click Next > button available at the bottom of the page to proceed to the **Configuration** section.

If you do not have Storage Policy created, continue with the following step.

- 25. Create a Storage Policy:
 - 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Policies.
 - 2. Right-click the Storage Policies and then click New Storage Policy.
 - 3. Follow the prompts displayed in the Storage Policy Wizard. The required options are mentioned below:
 - Select the Storage Policy type as Data Protection and Archiving and click Next.
 - $\circ~$ Enter the name in the Storage Policy Name box and click Next.
 - From the **Library** list, click the name of a disk library to which the primary copy should be associated and then click **Next**.

Ensure that you select a library attached to a MediaAgent operating in the current release.

- From the MediaAgent list, click the name of a MediaAgent that will be used to create the primary copy and then click Next.
- $\circ\;$ For the device streams and the retention criteria information, click Next to accept default values.
- $\circ~$ Select Yes to enable deduplication for the primary copy.
- From the **MediaAgent** list, click the name of the MediaAgent that will be used to store the Deduplication store.

Type the name of the folder in which the deduplication database must be located in the Deduplication Store Location or click the Browse button to select the folder and then click **Next**.

Review the details and click **Finish** to create the Storage Policy.

26. Enable the following registry key to create job specific profiles:

- From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers.
- Right-click the <Client> in which you want to add the registry key, and then click Properties.
- Click the Registry Key Settings tab.
- Click Add.
- Enter CreateProcessSpecificProfile in the Name field.
- Enter MSExchangeMBAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

Enter MSExchangeDMAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

- Enter REG_DWORD in the Type filed.
- Enter 1 to enable and 0 to disable the key in the Value field.
- Click OK.

METHOD 2: INSTALL SOFTWARE FROM COMMCELL CONSOLE

 From the CommCell Browser, select Tools, point to Add/Remove Software, and then click Install Software.



2. Click Next.

3. Select Windows. Click Next.

4. Select Manually Select Computers. Click Next.

File View Tools				
	*			
🗾 🎿 🔩 Browse &	Recover			
🛕 CommCel 🔝 Job Contro		💐 murphy 🗙 💽 Job	Controller ×	4 0 0
a murphy E Scheduler		murphy >		4 O d
Comm Event View		8 66	Q	•
E- Control Pa		ommNet Client Computer	Client Computers	Security
🗟 🦉 Storage 🖀 Service Co	introl Manager	Groups		
t in Report	ication Monitor			
E. Conten	rification Concole	Install Updates	la l	pntent
		Remove Updates	3	irector
		Install Software	5	
		Upgrade Software		
		Download Software		
		Copy Software Add/Remove Software	Configuration	
🛕 CommCell Browser		- Hagh and to bar chart	- contrigui destri	
🛒 Agents				
	» •			
		murphy admin		
				-
Installer				[
Click Next to contin	ue.	e Ae Sorpt	ware on compare	Help
Installer Select the comput	ter's operating sys	stem		E
Select the comput			Canad	
Select the comput		item e As Sorge	Cancel	Help
Select the comput			Cancel	Fielb
Select the comput Windows Unix and Linux <gack< td=""><td><u>text ></u> Sav</td><td>e As Sorpt) Prish</td><td></td><td>Нер</td></gack<>	<u>text ></u> Sav	e As Sorpt) Prish		Нер
Select the comput Windows Unix and Linux Capack Capack Installer Select how to disc	ext >			Нер
Select the comput Windows Unix and Linux <gack (gack) Installer Select how to disc Manualy select co</gack 	vert > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > >	e As Sorge Presh		Нер
Select the comput Mindows Unix and Linux (Back) (E Select how to disc Software will be in Software will be	ext >)	e As Sorge Presh		Нер
Select the comput O Windows Unix and Linux < Back C Select how to disc Software will be to O Manualy selector Software will be to O Manualy selector	ext >)	e As Sorpt Presh		
Select the comput O Windows Unix and Linux < Back C Select how to disc Software will be to O Manualy selector Software will be to O Manualy selector	ext >>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>	e As Sorpt Presh		Нер
Select the comput O Windows Unix and Linux < Back C Select how to disc Software will be to O Manualy selector Software will be to O Manualy selector	ext >>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>	e As Sorpt Presh		Нер
Select the comput O Windows Unix and Linux < Back C Select how to disc Software will be to O Manualy selector Software will be to O Manualy selector	ext >>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>	e As Sorpt Presh		Нер
Select the comput O Windows Unix and Linux < Back C Select how to disc Software will be to O Manualy selector Software will be to O Manualy selector	ext >>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>	e As Sorpt Presh		Нер
Select the comput O Windows Unix and Linux < Back C Select how to disc Software will be to O Manualy selector Software will be to O Manualy selector	ext >>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>	e As Sorpt Presh		Нер
Select the comput O Windows Unix and Linux < Back C Select how to disc Software will be to O Manualy selector Software will be to O Manualy selector	ext >>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>	e As Sorpt Presh		Fielb
Select the comput O Windows Unix and Linux < Back C Select how to disc Software will be to O Manualy selector Software will be to O Manualy selector	ext >>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>	e As Sorpt Presh		Нер
Select the comput O Windows Unix and Linux < Back C Select how to disc Software will be to O Manualy selector Software will be to O Manualy selector	ext >>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>	e As Sorpt Presh		Нер
Select the comput O Windows Unix and Linux < Back C Select how to disc Software will be to O Manualy selector Software will be to O Manualy selector	ext >>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>	e As Sorpt Presh		Fielb
Select the comput O Windows Unix and Linux < Back C Select how to disc Software will be to O Manualy selector Software will be to O Manualy selector	ext >>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>	e As Sorpt Presh		Fielb
Select the comput O Windows Unix and Linux < Back C Select how to disc Software will be to O Manualy selector Software will be to O Manualy selector	ext >>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>	e As Sorpt Presh		Нер

5. Enter the fully qualified domain name of the computer on which you have Exchange Server.

For example: win08ex07.idclab.loc Click Next.

6. Click Next.

 Specify User Name and Password that must be used to access the computer. Click Next.

- 8. To install the Exchange iDataAgents expand Client Modules | Backup & Recovery | Exchange, and select one or more of the following:
 - Exchange Database iDataAgent
 - Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent
 - Exchange Public Folder iDataAgent

Click Next.

Enter the host names of the computers Please enter the host names of the computers, one per lin Inport from File Import From Active Directory Select from existing clients <Back Next > III : Cancel Help Select Software Cache To use current Client or Client Group Software Cache settings, dick I Override Software Cache and select the Software Cache to be used ide Software Carbs settions rbed Override Software Cache <Back Next > Save As Script Finish Cancel Help Installe Enter Account Information The specified account should have administrative access to the computer. If you are installing multiple clients, the user should have access to all clients. User Name: Example:domain\username Password: Confirm Password: < Back Next > Save As Script Finish Cancel Help Select Package(s) to install r iDeba

<Back Next > P Save As Sci

- Select **Client Group** from **Available** and click **Add**.
- Select a **Storage Policy** from the drop-down list. Click **Next**.

NOTES:

9.

• Select the **Configure for Laptop or Desktop Backup** option to install **Backup Monitor** utility. This utility allows you to view the backup job summary from the client computer without opening the CommCell Console. See Monitor - Laptop User for more information. Cancel Help

10. Type the Agent Specific Settings information. Click Next.

11. Click Next.

12. Select Immediate. Click Next.

Installer
Enter Recommended Settings for the selected Software
Recommended Settings Grent Groups
Client Groups Available: Selected:
Laptop Add > Laptop Backup
< Remove
Add bbA
<< Remove All
Global Filters Use Cell level policy
Configure For Laptop Backups
Storage Polcy to use
< Back Next > Save As Script Finish Cancel Help
Installer
Enter the Install Options for the selected Software
Agent Specific Settings
⊖ Components
ExchangeServer Information (Optional) Server Name wh09er:282
Exchange Profile (Optional)
User Account DCLAB(administrator Configure Password
Malbox Name
Profile Name
Exchange Database (Optional)
User Account DCLABlyohmistrator Configure Pessword
Unrerental Bodup
<book book=""> Save As Script Princh Cancel Help</book>
Installer P
Enter Additional Install Options
G Installer Flags
V Install Updates
Rebot (if required)
I full Browser Processes (# required)
Ignore Running Jobs Stop Oracle Services (if required)
Skip clearls that are already part of the CommCell component
Advanced Options
Colete Packages After Install
Ignore Client/Host Name Conflict
Instal Result Log Location
Install Agents For Restore Only
Optional Settings
Path
CVD Part BHOD
Evingre Part 8402
Instal Directory
Instal Dectory Log Fle Location
Instal Directory
Ineral Directory Log Fiel Loadon Considerer Hot Rune
Instal Dectory Log Fle Location
Initial Devictory
Iteral Electory Log Fiel Loadon ComiServe Host Nave
Installer
Installer:
Installer
Installer Please Solect When To Run The Job
Installer
Installer

- 14. You can track the progress of the job from the Job Controller or Event Viewer window.
- 15. Once the job is complete, right-click the CommServe computer, click View and then click Admin Job History.

16. Select Install/Upgrade/Remove Software. Click OK.

- You can view the following details about the job by right-clicking the job: 17.
 - Items that succeeded during the job
 - Items that failed during the job
 - Details of the job

Select Type Of Installation: Windows Select Type Of Client Discovery: Manually select computers Exclude discovery of computers with SRM agents already installed: Yes Reuse Active Directory credentials: N_0 Client Authentication for Job User Name: IDCLAB/administrator Password: **** Install Flags Initial Plagi Initial Plagi Initial Updates: Yes Roboti (ff required): No Egnore Running, Ados: No Stop Oracle Services (ff required): No Stop Cate Services (ff required): No Delse Packages After Initial: No Ignore ClearchForts Name Catflics: Yes Initial Agents For Restore Only: No Client Composition Override Software Cache: No Salast Time Of Installation: C <Back Ment > Save As Script Finish Cancel Help St Adm Job ID Date wing Information, Mro. 🆻 🖪 🖳 🗞 🖾 📓 🕏 ð6 🚴 apple > P 🗆 I 2 . la la 0 Storage Admin Job H Log Files Users Logged In Schedules Fl... Job ID Operat 21 Data Agi Pause Playing Run 🛛 😥 Event Viewer 🗴 🎆 Admin Job History 🗙 19:1 19:1 35:: 68:1 apple apple apple Playing Information, Minor, Major, Critical, Maximu 30 ¥ onle admi Admin Job History Filter loh Ty O All O Data Aging O Export Media O Disaster Recovery Backup O Auxiliary Copy O Inventory





-ase verify all the selected options and click Finish to run the job immediately or click Save As Script to save the job options as a script.

Summary

Client Install Option

- Events of the job
- Log files of the job

Job Type	Job ID	Status	Start Time	End Time	User N	Error C	Storag	Auton	Legal	Legal	
Install Software	20	S Complete	View Job Details	11.	, admin			NIA.	N/A	N/A	
			Resubmit Job								
			View Events								
			View Content In	dex 🔸							
			View Logs								
			Send Logs								

18.

Enable the following registry key to create job specific profiles:

- From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers.
- Right-click the <Client> in which you want to add the registry key, and then click Properties.
- Click the Registry Key Settings tab.
- Click Add.
- Enter CreateProcessSpecificProfile in the Name field.
- Enter MSExchangeMBAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

Enter MSExchangeDMAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

- Enter REG_DWORD in the Type filed.
- Enter 1 to enable and 0 to disable the key in the Value field.
- Click OK.



Install the Exchange Agents for Exchange Server 2003 on a Non-Exchange Server



Follow the steps given below to install the Exchange Agents on Non-Exchange Server 2003.

WHERE TO INSTALL

The 32-bit Exchange Agents can be installed on a separate computer with connectivity to the Exchange Server. This method is referred to as an Non-Exchange Server installation and is useful if you want to offload the memory and processing resources required for backups and restores from the Exchange Server.

INSTALLATION

The software can be installed using one of the following methods:

METHOD 1: INTERACTIVE INSTALL

Use this procedure to directly install the software from the installation package or a network drive.

METHOD 2: INSTALL SOFTWARE FROM COMMCELL CONSOLE

Use this procedure to remotely install the software on a client computer.

PREREQUISITES

The below mentioned prerequisites are for Mailbox Agents only. Ensure that you have the following:

- The mail-enabled user is a member of the Local Administrator Group and have rights to all mailboxes on the server.
- Using the Exchange System Manager snap-in, right-click the organization object and delegate control.
- Using the Wizard, assign the MailboxAdmin user Exchange Full Administrator privileges.
- Ensure that you assign full access to all mailboxes on the server. For details, see How do I Assign Full Access to All Mailboxes on a Server.

METHOD 1: INTERACTIVE INSTALL

- 1. Log on to the computer using an account with the following privileges:
 - Administrator of the local computer
 - Administrator of the Exchange Server
- 2. Create the bAllowMultiInstances registry key.

NOTES:

3.

• If any 64-bit agent software is already installed on the Proxy Server, create bAllowMultiInstances registry key to install the Exchange *i*DataAgents on separate instance.

To create the registry key, see the following steps:

RELATED TOPICS

System Requirements

Firewall

Download Software Packages

Provides step-by-step procedure to download the latest packages for software install.

Verify that the computer in which you wish to install the software satisfies the System Requirements.

Provides comprehensive information on firewall.

- 1. Start the Registry Editor (Regedit.exe or Redegt32.exe)
- Locate the directory under which you want to create a key, e.g., hkey_local_Machine\software\.
- 3. Right click the SOFTWARE and click New -> Key.
- 4. Name the key as GalaxyInstallerFlags.
- 5. Right click the GalaxyInstallerFlags and select New -> DWORD value, name it as bAllowMultiInstances and by double clicking the bAllowMultiInstances key modify the Value data to 1.

To create the registry key, see the following steps:

- 1. Start the Registry Editor (Regedit.exe or Regedit32.exe)
- Locate the directory under which you want to create a key, e.g., HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Wow6432Node.
- 3. Right click the SOFTWARE and click New -> Key.
- 4. Name the key as GalaxyInstallerFlags.
- 5. Right click the GalaxyInstallerFlags and select New > DWORD value, name it as bAllow32BitInstallOn64Bit and by double clicking the bAllow32BitInstallOn64Bit key modify the Value data to 1.

4. Run Setup.exe from the Software Installation Package.

Create the bAllow32BitInstallOn64Bit registry key.

5. Select the required language.

Administration Guide - Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent

	Click Next.	
		Select the language you will use during installation.
		Next > Cancel
6.	Select the Calypso 32-bit Software install options to install software.	
	NOTES	
	• This screen will only appear when the bAllow32BitInstallOn64Bit registry key has been created and enabled on this computer.	
		⊕ Exit
7.	Select I accept the terms in the license agreement.	Installer
	Click Next.	Instatuer License Agreement Plesse read the following License Agreement. Press the PAGE DUWN key to view the entire agreement.
		End User License and Limited Warranty Agreement
		Software Release 9.0.0 (including Microsoft⊕ SQL Server™ 2008 Enterprise Edition, SQL Server™ 2008 Express Edition and Windows Pre-Installation Environment)
		Evel Trave T develop A grouper
		 I do not accept the terms in the license agreement. Installer
		< Back Next > Cancel
8.	If any agent software is already installed on the Proxy Server, select Create a new instance option to install the Exchange <i>i</i> DataAgents on separate instance.	Installer
	NOTES	Please specify the instance you want to use during install.
	 This screen will appear when the bAllowMultiInstances registry key has enabled on this computer. 	□Instance Selection ⊂ Create a new instance (Not recommended) ⊂ Install to existing instance
		Select an installed instance.
		Client Host Name CommServe Name
		Installer < Back Next > Cancel
9.	To install the Exchange <i>i</i> DataAgents expand Client Modules Exchange, and select one or more of the following:	

- Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent
- Exchange Public Folder iDataAgent

To install the **Exchange Archiver Agents**, expand **Client Modules | Archive Management**, and select one or more of the following:

- Exchange Compliance Archiver
- Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent
- Exchange Public Folder Archiver Agent

Click Next.

	Installer			
	Select Platforms			
	Select the platforms you	want to configure.		
	E Ca E Common Ter E Common	hnology Engine	platform n descriptio	pointer over a ame to see a n of the platform and
		Il Console	reasons v disabled.	nhy it may be
	⊡ Client Module ⊞ Client Module	es & Recovery	Disk Sp	
	🖭 🗅 Web Ba	ndexing and Search ed Search & Browse	Installa	commended) tion Folder:
		fanagement usDataReplicator		0 MB/0 MB ary on C: drive:
	. ↔ BRM	ng Modules		0 MB/ 0 MB
	Tools Installer		×	legistry Keys In Use
	Install Agents for Res	ore Only < Bao	k Next>	Cancel
-				
figure	Installer	le e		
nd	Firewall Configurat Configure firewall servic			
	If there is a firewall bet	veen this machine and the C ervices	ommServe, configure firewa	Il services below.
	connection from here CommServe are block	/indows Firewall is limiting ne to a CommServe's tunnel po ted, and setup should instea	twork traffic. Whether it is p rt, whether all connections I d expect CommServe to co	ossible to open oward nnect back to this
		here is a Proxy in between. open connection to CommSe	rve on tunnel port	
		pen connection toward this n	nachine	
	C CommServe is read	hable only through a proxy		
	Installer		Next >	Cancel
	Installer CommServe Name			×
		computer name and host		
	CommServe (]	
	mycomputer.r	fully-qualified, IP host name; ycompany.com)	for example:	
	mycomputer.	nycompany.com		
	Installer	< Bar	k Next>	Cancel
		\ Dat	Nex()	
	Installer			
	Communication Int Setup will configure the			
		Select a client name audi_cn		
		Select an interface name th communicate with the Comr	at this computer will use to nServe	
		audi.mycompany.com	•	
		IP Address(es) for the selec	ted host.	
	Installer			
		< Bac	k Next>	Cancel

 If this computer and the CommServe is separated by a firewall, select the Configure firewall services option and then click Next.

For firewall options and configuration instructions, see Firewall Configuration and continue with the installation.

If firewall configuration is not required, click **Next**.

11.	Enter the fully qualified domain name of the CommServe Host Name .
	Click Next.

Do not use space and the following characters when specifying a new name for the CommServe Host Name:

\|`~!@#\$%^&*()+=<>/?,[]{}:;'"

12. Click Next.

 Select Add programs to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List, to add CommCel programs and services to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List.

Click Next.

This option enables CommCell operations across Windows firewall by adding CommCell programs and services to Windows firewall exclusion list.

It is recommended to select this option even if Windows firewall is disabled. This will allow the CommCell programs and services to function if the Windows firewall is enabled at a later time.

	Installer
	Windows Firewall Exclusion List Allow programs to communicate through Windows Firewall
	Windows Firewall is ON
	Add programs to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List
	If you plan on using Windows Firewall, it is recommended to add the software programs to the exclusion list.
	Installer Cancel
Verify the default location for software installation.	Installer
Click Browse to change the default location.	Destination Folder Select the destination folder to install the program files.
Click Next.	
 Do not install the software to a mapped network drive. Do not use the following characters when specifying the destination path: 	Click Next to accept the default location, or click Browse to choose an alternate location.
/:*?"<> #	C:\Program Files\Browse
It is recommended that you use alphanumeric characters only.	Drive List Space Required / Recommended
	Installer Kancel Cancel
Select a Client Group from the list.	Installer
Click Next.	Client Group Selection
This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the CommCell Console.	Select a client group for the client. The Client Group is a logical grouping of client machines which have the same associations at various levels like Schedule Policy, Activity Control, Security and Reports.
	Client group: None Selected client_group
	Installer Cancel
Click Next.	Installer Schedule Install of Automatic Updates Choose when you want to schedule an install of the downloaded updates.
	✓ Schedule Install of Automatic Updates ✓ Once ✓ Weekly ✓ Weekly ✓ Monday ✓ Tuesday ✓ Wednesday ✓ Fiiday ✓ Saturday ✓ Sunday
	Installer

17. Select a Storage Policy.

Click Next.

14.

15.

16.

NOTES

• A storage policy directs backup data to a media library. Each library has a default storage policy.

X

If you do not have Storage Policy created, this message will be displayed. Click ${\bf OK}.$

You can create the Storage Policy later in step 23.

18. Select Exchange Server Name and Exchange Server Version from drop-down list. Click Next.

19. Click Next.

- 20. Enter the following Exchange Administrator information then click Next.
 - Account Name Domain user account created with the exchange server administrator permissions. Do not include the domain name here.
 - Account Password The password assigned to the domain user.
 - Mailbox Name for this Account Mailbox associated with the user above.
 - **Profile Name** Specify profile name to be created during agent install. This profile is associated with the domain user's mailbox.
 - Exchange Server Name Name of the Exchange Server that the agent will communicate with for data protection and recovery operations.

For Exchange Server 2010, enter the Client Access Role. After installation configure the roles as described in Configure Mailboxes in Database Availability Group (DAG) Servers.

- Domain The installation detects and enters a domain name. If necessary, modify the domain name by specifying Windows domain that the Exchange Server resides in.
- 21. Click Next.

Installer	
Storage Policy S	Selection
Select a storage po backed up.	Jicy for the default subclient to be
Configure for	Laptop or Desktop Backup
Select a sto	rage policy from the pull-down list.
	Unassigned
Installer	
THOUGH I	< Back Next > Cancel
Installer	
Storage Policy S	Selection
Configure to	r Laptop or Desktop Backup
Installer	
	< Back Next > Cancel
Installer Exchange Serve	r Name
Please provide Exch	
	Exchange Server
	Exchange Server Name:
	Exchange_Server
	Exchange Server Version Exchange 2007
Installer	< Back Next > Cancel
Installer	<back next=""> Cancel</back>
Installer	<u> </u>
Installer Summary Summary of instal se Setup has enou	elections gh information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the
Installer Summary Summary of instal se Setup has enou	elections
Installer Summary Summary of instal se Setup has enou	elections gh information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the
Installer Summary Summary of install se Setup has encu install settings, c	elections gh information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the
Installer Summary Summary of instal so Setup has enou instal setting, c Destination Path Commõerve Hoc Interface Name Cient - avad	elections gh information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the lick Next to begin copying files. • = C:\Program Files\. • = mpcomputer impcompany.com = audi.mpcompany.com
Installer Summary of install se Setup has enou install settings, c Destination Path Commisere Hare Lifert - avait Job Result Path	elections gh information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the lick Next to begin copying files.
Installer Summary Summary of initial set Setup has enou initial settings, c Destination Path CommServe Hos Interface Name Difert = aud Gibbal Filters = I	elections gh information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the lick Next to begin copying files. = C.\Program Files\\ = audi.mpcompary.com = audi.mpcompary.com = C.\Program Files\\u00ebPlesuits
Installer Summary of instal s Setup has enou instal settings, of Destination Path CommServe Hos Dient - avai Job Result: Pat Global Filters = I	elections gh information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the lick Next to begin copying files. = C.\Program Files\\ = audi.mpcompary.com = audi.mpcompary.com = C.\Program Files\\u00ebPlesuits
Installer Summary of initial set Setup has encu initial setings, c Destination Path CommServe Hos Instraige Name Gibbal Filters = I Installer	elections gh information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the lick Next to begin copying files. • = C:\Program Files\ • t = mycomputer.mycompany.com = audi.mycompany.com = audi.mycompany.com = C:\Program Files\JobResults Jac Cell level policy
Installer Summary of instal s Setup has enou instal settings, of Destination Path Commisere Hore Lifert = aud Job Result Path Global Filters = I Installer Installer	elections gh information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the lick Next to begin copying files. • = C:\Program Files\ t = mycomputer, mycompany.com = audi.mycompany.com = audi.mycompany.com = audi.mycompany.com = del level policy < Back Next > Cancel
Installer Summary Ginstell s Setup has enou install settings, c Destination Path CommServe Hose District audi Job Presuls Path Global Filters = 1 Installer	elections gh information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the lick Next to begin copying files. = = C:\Program Files\ = = = = = = = = = = = = = = = = = = =
Installer Summary Summary of install as Setup has enou install settings, of Destination Path Commõere Hoa Distaller Biobal Filters = 1 Installer Installer Exchange Admin Mailtox and Profer	elections gh information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the lick Next to begin copying files. I = C\Program Files\ I =
Installer Summary Of instal se Setup has enou instal settings, co Destination Path Commisere Hore Lifert - avait Job Results Path Global Filters = I Installer Installer Exchange Admini Information Mailbox and Froffer	elections gh information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the lick Next to begin copying files. I = C\Program Files\ I =
Installer Summary of install a Summary of install a setup has enou install settings, c Destination Path CommServe Hou Installer Biobal Filters = 1 Installer Installer Exchange Admit Installer Maibox and Profile Please enter the Ew the information supp Account Name:	elections gh information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the lick. Next to begin copying files. = C.\Program Files\ = audi.nycompary.com = audi.nycompary.com = audi.nycompary.com = audi.nycompary.com = audi.nycompary.com = audi.nycompary.com = C.\Program Files\UobResults Jse Cell level policy
Installer Summary Ginstell = Setup has enou install settings, c Destination Path CommServe Hos Installer Biobal Filters = 4 Installer Installer Exchange Admit Information Mailbox and Profer Please enter the Exc	elections gh information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the lick Next to begin copying files. = = C:\Program Files\ t = mycomputer.mycompany.com = aud.mycompany.com = C:\Program Files\UoRiesuits Jac Cell level policy Cancel information change account information required below. A new profile will be created with lied.
Installer Summary of install a Summary of install a setup has enou install settings, c Destination Path CommServe Hou Installer Biobal Filters = 1 Installer Installer Exchange Admit Installer Maibox and Profile Please enter the Ew the information supp Account Name:	elections gh information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the idek Next to begin copying files. = C.VProgram Files/ = audi ingocompany.com = C.VProgram Files/UobPlesuits Jac Cell level policy istrator Account information change account information required below. A new profile will be created with ied. Profile Name: Exchange Server Name:
Installer Summary of instal a Setup has enou instal settings, of Destination Path Commisere How Installer Global Filters = I Installer Exchange Admin Information Malbox and Profei Please enter the Ew How Account Name:	elections gh information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the idek Next to begin copying files. = C.VProgram Files/ = audi ingocompany.com = C.VProgram Files/UobPlesuits Jac Cell level policy istrator Account information change account information required below. A new profile will be created with ied. Profile Name: Exchange Server Name:
Installer Summary of instal a Setup has enou instal settings, of Destination Path Commisere How Installer Global Filters = I Installer Exchange Admin Information Malbox and Profei Please enter the Ew How Account Name:	elections gh information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the idek Next to begin copying files. = C.VProgram Files/ = audi ingocompany.com = C.VProgram Files/UobPlesuits Jac Cell level policy istrator Account information change account information required below. A new profile will be created with ied. Profile Name: Exchange Server Name:

22. Click Finish.



If you already have a storage policy selected in step 17, Click Next > button available at the bottom of the page to proceed to the **Configuration** section.

If you do not have Storage Policy created, continue with the following step.

- 23. Create a Storage Policy:
 - 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Policies.
 - 2. Right-click the **Storage Policies** and then click **New Storage Policy**.
 - 3. Follow the prompts displayed in the Storage Policy Wizard. The required options are mentioned below:
 - Select the Storage Policy type as Data Protection and Archiving and click Next.
 - $\circ~$ Enter the name in the Storage Policy Name box and click Next.
 - From the **Library** list, click the name of a disk library to which the primary copy should be associated and then click **Next**.

Ensure that you select a library attached to a MediaAgent operating in the current release.

- From the **MediaAgent** list, click the name of a MediaAgent that will be used to create the primary copy and then click **Next**.
- $\circ\;$ For the device streams and the retention criteria information, click Next to accept default values.
- $\circ~$ Select Yes to enable deduplication for the primary copy.
- From the **MediaAgent** list, click the name of the MediaAgent that will be used to store the Deduplication store.

Type the name of the folder in which the deduplication database must be located in the Deduplication Store Location or click the Browse button to select the folder and then click **Next**.

- Review the details and click **Finish** to create the Storage Policy.
- 24.
- Enable the following registry key to create job specific profiles:
- From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers.
- Right-click the <Client> in which you want to add the registry key, and then click Properties.
- Click the Registry Key Settings tab.
- Click Add.
- Enter CreateProcessSpecificProfile in the Name field.
- Enter MSExchangeMBAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).



Enter MSExchangeDMAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

- Enter REG_DWORD in the Type filed.
- Enter 1 to enable and 0 to disable the key in the Value field.
- Click OK.

METHOD 2: INSTALL SOFTWARE FROM COMMCELL CONSOLE

1. From the CommCell Browser, select **Tools**, point to **Add/Remove Software**, and then click **Install Software**.

2. Click Next.

3. Select Windows. Click Next.

4. Select Manually Select Computers. Click Next.

Eile View	ommCell Console				
🗼 🗖 🗋	2 Summary				
	Browse & Recover	**	× 🗔 Job C	-construction	4 0 8
3 murphy		murphy >	× [20 00 0		408
Commit Client C	E Scheduler		•	•	
Gient C	Reports	Comm/Net	e e Client	0 Client	to Security
Erenzia Sacurita 8	Control Panel	contra toc	Computer Groups	Computers	Socarcy
🗉 💱 Storage 🛙			aroops		
🗄 📊 Report	Data Replication Monitor Data Classification Concol	2 -			
🗟 🧊 Conten		install L	line in the second seco		potent
×	<u> </u>		Updates	3	irector
		(Install 9	oftware	5	
		Upgrade	e Software	_	
			ad Software		
		Copy Se	oftware move Software :		
🛕 CommCell Bro	owser	Addike	move sortware	Configuration	
🛒 Agents					
		20 *			
		murphy	admin		
Installer					X
instali W	'izard				
This wia	zard guides you through	the steps required to	install softw	are on comput	ers.
	ext to continue.				
< 8	ad Next >	Save As Script	Finish	Cancel	Heb
	ad (gat>)	Save As Script	Finish	Cancel	
Installer	ad (Mext >)	Save As Script	Finish	Cancel	Hab
Installer			Finish	Cancel	
Installer	ad. Hext >		Finish	Cancel	
Installer	he computer's opera		Finish	Cancel	
Installer Select ti	he computer's opera		Finsh	Cancel	
Installer Select ti	he computer's opera		Finish	Cancel	
Installer Select ti	he computer's opera		Finish	Cancel	
Installer Select ti	he computer's opera		Finish	Cancel	
Installer Select ti	he computer's opera		Finish	Cancel	
Installer Select ti	he computer's opera		Finish	Cancel	
Installer Select ti	he computer's opera		Finsh	Cancel	
Installer Select ti	he computer's opera		Finish	Cancel	
Installer Select ti	he computer's opera		Finish	Cancel	
Installer Select ti	he computer's opera		Finish	Cancel	
Installer Select ti	he computer's opera		Finsh	Cancel	
Installer Select ti	he computer's opera		Pinish	Cancel	
Installer Select ti	he computer's opera		Finish	Cancel	
Installer Select ti	he computer's opera		Finish	Cancel	
Installer Select ti	the computer's opera knows and linux				

5. Enter the fully qualified domain name of the computer on which you have Exchange Server.

For example: win08ex07.idclab.loc Click Next.

6. Click Next.

 Specify User Name and Password that must be used to access the computer. Click Next.

Installer	×
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software	
Software will be installed only on the selected list of computers.	
Automatically discover computers	
Computers will be discovered when the job runs.	
\frown	
<back next=""> Save As Script Finish Cancel Help</back>	
Installer	×
Enter the host names of the computers	
Please enter the host names of the computers, one per line wer08ex07.iddeb.loc Import from File	1
Import From Active Directory	j
Select from existing clients]
< Back Next > ■ Save As Script Priceh Cancel Help	>
	_
	_
Installer	×
Installer Select Software Cache	X
Select Software Gache	X
Select Software Cache Touse ament Cliest or Cliest Group Software Cache settings, dich tiest. To overside Software Cache settings check Overside Software Cache and select the Software Cache to be used.	X
Select Software Cache Touse camet Clerk or Clerk Group Software Cache settings, dd. Next. To override Software Cache settings check. Cverride Software Cache and setet the Software Cache to be used.	X
Select Software Cache To use current Clent or Clent Grup Software Cache settings, dichtent. To override Software Cache settings check Override Software Cache and select the Software Cache to be used.	X
Select Software Cache Touse camet Clerk or Clerk Group Software Cache settings, dd. Next. To override Software Cache settings check. Cverride Software Cache and setet the Software Cache to be used.	
Select Software Cache Touse camer Clerk or Clerk Group Software Cache settings, dd. Next. To override Software Cache settings check. Cverride Software Cache and setet the Software Cache to be used.	
Select Software Cache Touse camer Clerk or Clerk Group Software Cache settings, dd. Next. To override Software Cache settings check. Cverride Software Cache and setet the Software Cache to be used.	
Select Software Cache Touse camer Clerk or Clerk Group Software Cache settings, dd. Next. To override Software Cache settings check. Cverride Software Cache and setet the Software Cache to be used.	×
Select Software Cache Touse camer Clerk or Clerk Group Software Cache settings, dd. Next. To override Software Cache settings check. Cverride Software Cache and setet the Software Cache to be used.	×
Select Software Cache Touse camer Clerk or Clerk Group Software Cache settings, dd. Next. To override Software Cache settings check. Cverride Software Cache and setet the Software Cache to be used.	×
Select Software Cache Touse camer Clerk or Clerk Group Software Cache settings, dd. Next. To override Software Cache settings check. Cverride Software Cache and setet the Software Cache to be used.	×
Select Software Cache To use carriert. Clent or Clent Group Software Cache settings, dick itent. To override Software Cache settings check. Coverride Software Cache Software Cache Software Cache: marphy.dxnon.company.com v	
Select Software Cache Touse camer Clerk or Clerk Group Software Cache settings, dd. Next. To override Software Cache settings check. Cverride Software Cache and setet the Software Cache to be used.	
Scient Software Cache Touse current Client or Client Group Software Cache settings, dick itent. To override Software Cache settings check Override Software Cache Software	
Scient Software Cache To use current: Client or Client Group Software Cache settings, dick kent. To override Software Cache settings check. Override Software Cache	
Scient Software Cache Touse current Client or Client Group Software Cache settings, dick itent. To override Software Cache settings check Override Software Cache Software	
Select Software Cache To use current Cient or Client Group Software Cache sattings, did. Itent. To override Software Cache sattings check Override Software Cache Software	
Select Software Cache To use carrent Clerk or Clerk Group Software Cache sattings, dik Kent. To override Software Cache sattings check Override Software Cache Software Cache Software Cache Elect Distaller	
Select Software Cache To use current Clear or Clear targes Software Cache settings, dick itent. To override Software Cache settings check. Override Software Cache Software Cache <	
Select Software Cache To use carrent Clerk or Clerk Grupp Software Cache settings, dkk text. To override Software Cache settings deak Software Cache Softwar	
Select Software Cache Case care of Care of Greek Software Cache of settings, dik feet. To override Software Cache estings check software Cache of Lee of Software Cache of S	
Select Software Cache To use current Cache of Cache Software Cache settings, did. Next. To override Software Cache settings check Override Software Cache Cache Destinger Cache Destinger Cache Destinger Cache Destinger Cache Destinger Cache Destinger C	
Select Software Cache To use carrent Clerk to Clerk Group Software Cache settings, dkl. ktext. To override Software Cache settings sheek Corrected Software Cache Software	
Select Software Cache To use carrent Clerk to Clerk Grays, Software Cache settings, disk text. To override Software Cache settings check Corrected Software Cache Software	
Select Software Cache To use carrent Clerk to Clerk Group Software Cache settings, dkl. ktext. To override Software Cache settings sheek Corrected Software Cache Software	
Select Software Cache To use carrent Clerk to Clerk Group Software Cache settings, dkl. ktext. To override Software Cache settings sheek Corrected Software Cache Software	
Select Software Cache To use carrent Clerk to Clerk Group Software Cache settings, dkl. text. To override Software Cache settings of the software Cache to be used. Corrected Software Cache Software Ca	
Select Software Cache To use carrent Clerk to Clerk Group Software Cache settings, dkl. text. To override Software Cache settings of the software Cache to be used. Corrected Software Cache Software Ca	
Select Software Cache To use carrent Clerk to Clerk Group Software Cache settings, dkl. text. To override Software Cache settings of the software Cache to be used. Corrected Software Cache Software Ca	
Select Software Cache To use carrent Clerk to Clerk Group Software Cache settings, dkl. text. To override Software Cache settings of the software Cache to be used. Corrected Software Cache Software Ca	
Select Software Cache To use carrent Clerk to Clerk Group Software Cache settings, dkl. text. To override Software Cache settings of the software Cache to be used. Corrected Software Cache Software Ca	

- 8. To install the Exchange iDataAgents expand Client Modules | Backup & Recovery | Exchange, and select one or more of the following:
 - Exchange Database iDataAgent
 - Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent
 - Exchange Public Folder iDataAgent

Click Next.

For Non-Exchange Server, Exchange Database iDataAgent will not be applicable.

- 9.
 - Select Client Group from Available and click Add.
 - Select a **Storage Policy** from the drop-down list. Click **Next**.
 - NOTES:
 - Select the **Configure for Laptop or Desktop Backup** option to install **Backup Monitor** utility. This utility allows you to view the backup job summary from the client computer without opening the CommCell Console. See Monitor - Laptop User for more information.
- 10. Type the Agent Specific Settings information. Click Next.

11. Click Next.

12. Select Immediate. Click Next.

 Installar

 Enter the Install Options for the selected Software

 April Software

 April Software

 Components

 Enchangesterve Information (Options)

 Enclangesterve Information (Options)

it Point iDati

Client Groups

Global Filters Use
Configure For Laptop Backups
Storage Policy to use

er Recommended Settings for the selected Software

lice Cellie

<Back Next > Dr Sav

Add All >>

<< Remove All

p-

Selected: Laptop Backu Cancel Help

Cancel Help

Components	
ExchangeSer	rver Information (Optional)
Server Name	wh08ex287
😑 Exchange Pr	ofile (Optional)
User Account	DCLAB)administrator Configure Password
Maibox Name	
Profile Name	
😑 Exchange Da	stabase (Optional)
User Account	DCLA8(administrator Configure Password
O Differential E	laclup
 Incremental 	Backup
	< Back Bext > Save As Script Finish Cancel Help
staller	X
	(And the second s
nter Additional Instal	options
😑 Installer Flags	
🔽 Install Updates	
Reboot (if require	đ
Kill Browser Proce	sses (if required)
Ignore Running J	des
Stop Oracle Servi	ces (F required)
Skip clients that a	re already part of the CommCell component
Advanced Options	
Delete Packages /	After Install
Ignore Client/Hos	
Instal Result Log Loca	
Install Agents For	Restore Only
Optional Settings	
🗉 Job Result	Directory
Path	
CVD Port	8400 -
Evergrc Port	8402
Install Directory	
Log File Location	
Commiserve Host N	lame
	<bok ai="" bib<="" boy="" cancel="" prinh="" sorpt="" th=""></bok>

13. Click Finish.

- 14. You can track the progress of the job from the **Job Controller** or **Event Viewer** window.
- 15. Once the job is complete, right-click the **CommServe** computer, click **View** and then click **Admin Job History**.



apple

Admin Job History Filter		X
Job Type		
O AI	🔿 Data Aging	C Export Media
Auxiliary Copy	 Inventory 	O Disaster Recovery Backup
O Data Verification	O Offline Content Indexing	C Erase Media
Erase Backup/Archived Data	O Drive Validation	O Drive Cleaning
Stamp Media	Install/Remove Updates	O Download/Copy Software
Install/Upgrade/Remove Software		SRM Reports/Actions
Information Management	CommCell Export	CommCell Import
Media Refreshing	Recover Store	
Citorian		
Specify Time Range		
Time Zone: (GMT-05:00) E	astern Time (US & Canada)	
Start Time	End Time	
Mon 08/30/2010		8/31/2010
12 : 07 PM		12:07 PM
Job Status		
O All ○ Con	pleted O Failed	○ Killed
Number of Jobs	,	(Table
Number of Jobs		
 View All Jobs 		
O Desired Number of Jobs	10 -	
Include Aged Data	¥	
Include Aged Data		
	2	OK Cancel Help
🛞 Admin Job History 🗴 🤽 accle 🗴		4 0 10
		4 C 4
Tostal Software 20 Scorolate	11 advin	or C Storag Autom Legal Legal S NA NA NA A
	submit Job	
	w Events	
	w Content Index 🔸	
Se	nd Logs	×
Total records count : 9		

- 17. You can view the following details about the job by right-clicking the job:
 - Items that succeeded during the job
 - Items that failed during the job
 - Details of the job
 - Events of the job
 - Log files of the job
- **18.** Enable the following registry key to create job specific profiles:
 - From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers.
 - Right-click the <Client> in which you want to add the registry key, and then click Properties.
 - Click the Registry Key Settings tab.
 - Click Add.
 - Enter CreateProcessSpecificProfile in the Name field.
 - Enter MSExchangeMBAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

Enter MSExchangeDMAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

- Enter REG_DWORD in the Type filed.
- Enter 1 to enable and 0 to disable the key in the Value field.
- Click OK.

Previous Next >

Install the Exchange Agents on Exchange Server 2003 -Clustered Environment

< Previous Next >

Follow the steps given below to install the Exchange Agents in clustered environment on the following:

- Exchange Server 2003
- Non-Exchange Server

WHERE TO INSTALL

The following procedure describes the steps involved in installing the Exchange Agents for Exchange Server 2003 on the following:

- Direct install on a Exchange Server or
- On an Non-Exchange Server computer. This may be used for the following circumstances:
 In the configuration where a single non-Exchange client is used to backup multiple Exchange Servers.
 - To off-load the backup of Exchange Server, so that the performance of the Exchange Server will not be effected.

RELATED TOPICS

- **Download Software Packages** Provides step-by-step procedure to download the latest packages for software install.
- **System Requirements** Verify that the computer in which you wish to install the software satisfies the System Requirements.
- Firewall Provides comprehensive information on firewall.

PREREQUISITES

The below mentioned prerequisites are for Mailbox Agents only. Ensure that you have the following:

- The mail-enabled user is a member of the Local Administrator Group and have rights to all mailboxes on the server.
- Using the Exchange System Manager snap-in, right-click the organization object and delegate control.
- Using the Wizard, assign the MailboxAdmin user Exchange Full Administrator privileges.
- Ensure that you assign full access to all mailboxes on the server. For details, see How do I Assign Full Access to All Mailboxes on a Server.

INSTALL PROCEDURE

- 1. Log on to the computer using an account with the following privileges:
 - Administrator of the local computer
 - Administrator of the Exchange Server
- 2. Run Setup.exe from the Software Installation Package.
- 3. Select the required language.

Click Next.

Select the language you will use during installation.	
<u>N</u> ext >	Cancel
Advanced options	
View documentation website	
View Install Quick Start Guide (Requires Adobe Acrobat Reader)	
Install Adobe Acrobat Reader	
	🖨 Exit

4. Select the option to install software on this computer.

The options that appear on this screen depend on the computer in which the software is being installed.

5. Select I accept the terms in the license agreement.

Administration Guide - Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent

	Click Next .	Installer 🛛 🔀
		License Agreement Please read the following License Agreement. Press the PAGE DOWN key to view the entire agreement.
		End User License and Limited Warranty Agreement Software Release 9.0.0 (including Microsoft® SQL Server TM 2008 Enterprise Edition, SQL Server TM 2008 Express Edition and Windows Pre-Installation Environment) Eval Local License Agreement. I accept the terms in the license agreement. Installer
6.	Select Configure a Virtual Server.	Installer
01	-	Cluster Type Selection
	Click Next .	Configure the Physical Node or a Virtual Server
		Configuration Options C Configure the Environal node C Configure a Vitual server (Back Next> Cancel
7.	Select the disk group in which the virtual server resides.	Installer
	Click Next.	Virtual Server Selection Select the vitual server you would like to configure
		Choose from the following list of disk groups configured on this cluster. 2008ClusterVMS
		< <u>Back</u> Next> Cancel
8.	To install the Exchange <i>i</i> DataAgents expand Client Modules Exchange , and select one or more of the following:	Installer Select Platforms Select the platforms you want to configure.
	Exchange Database iDataAgent	
	Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent Exchange Public Folder iDataAgent	Ca Move the pointer over a platform name to see a
	 Exchange Public Folder iDataAgent To install the Exchange Archiver Agents, expand Client Modules Archive Management, and select one or more of the following: 	
	Exchange Compliance Archiver	
	Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent	
	Exchange Public Folder Archiver Agent	
	Click Next .	Installer Special Registry Keys In Use
	For Non-Exchange Server, Exchange Database <i>i</i> DataAgent will not be	Install Agents for Restore Only K Back Next> Cancel

If this computer and the CommServe is separated by a firewall, select the **Configure firewall services** option and then click **Next**.

For firewall options and configuration instructions, see Firewall Configuration and continue with the installation.

If firewall configuration is not required, click $\ensuremath{\textbf{Next}}.$

applicable.

9.

10. Enter the fully qualified domain name of the CommServe Host Name.

Click Next.

Do not use space and the following characters when specifying a new name for the CommServe Host Name:

\|`~!@#\$%^&*()+=<>/?,[]{}:;'"

11. Click Next.

12. Select **Add programs to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List**, to add CommCell programs and services to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List.

Click Next.

This option enables CommCell operations across Windows firewall by adding CommCell programs and services to Windows firewall exclusion list.

It is recommended to select this option even if Windows firewall is disabled. This will allow the CommCell programs and services to function if the Windows firewall is enabled at a later time.

	ne, or whether					
		open connection				
		open connection				
	nstaller					
					Next >	Cancel
nstaller						
	erve Name					
		re computer name	e and host			
	CommServe	Client Name				
	CommServe (Enter a valio mycomputer.	Host Name d, fully-qualified, If mycompany.com	^o host name; for)	example	ĸ	
	mycomputer	.mycompany.com	n			
	1					
I	nstaller			_		
			< Back		Next>	Cancel
nstaller						
		terface Name e communication				
		Select a client				
		Select a client i			•	
		Select a client i audi_cn			•	
		audi_cn Select an interf		is comp	_	
		audi_cn Select an interf	name ace name that th rith the CommSer	is comp ve	_	
		audi_cn Select an interf communicate w audi.mycompar	name ace name that th rith the CommSer	ve	uter will use to	
		audi_cn Select an interf communicate w audi.mycompar	ace name that the CommSei	ve	uter will use to	
		audi_cn Select an interf communicate w audi.mycompar	ace name that the CommSei	ve	uter will use to	
	nstaller	audi_cn Select an interf communicate w audi.mycompar	ace name that the CommSei	ve	uter will use to	
	nstaller	audi_cn Select an interf communicate w audi.mycompar	ace name that the CommSei	ve	uter will use to	Cancel
	nstaller	audi_cn Select an interf communicate w audi.mycompar	ace name that the commSer ny.com for the selected I	ve	uter will use to	Cancel
	nstaller	audi_cn Select an interf communicate w audi.mycompar	ace name that the commSer ny.com for the selected I	ve	uter will use to	Cancel
nstaller		Select an interf communicate w audi.mycompar IP Address(es)	ace name that it with the CommSer ny.com for the selected I	ve	uter will use to	
nstaller Window	s Firewall	audi_cn Select an interf communicate w audi.mycompar	ace name that the CommSer ny.com for the selected I < Back	ve	uter will use to	
nstaller Window Allow pro Firewall	s Firewall	Euclien Select an interf communicate w audi mycompa IP Address(es) Exclusion Li municate through	ace name that the CommSer ny.com for the selected I < Back	ve	uter will use to	
nstaller Window Allow pro Firewall Win	is Firewall ograms to com dows Firewall	Euclien Select an interf communicate w audi mycompa IP Address(es) Exclusion Li municate through	ace name that the CommSer my com for the selected I < Back st Windows	host.	uter will use to	
nstaller Window Allow pro Firewall Win If yo	s Firewall grams to com dows Firewall Add programs	Exclusion Li Select an interf communicate w audi.mycompan IP Address(es) Exclusion Li municate through is ON to the Windows I	ace name that that that that the CommSer ny.com for the selected I < Back st Windows Firewall Exclusion	host.	vter will use to	

< Back

Next:

If there is a firewall between this machine and the CommServe, configure firewall services below

Installer Firewall Configuration Configure firewall services

Configure firewall services

Installer

13. Verify the default location for software installation.

Click **Browse** to change the default location.

Click Next.

- Do not install the software to a mapped network drive.
- Do not use the following characters when specifying the destination path:

/:*?"<>|#

Cancel

		Installer	
	It is recommended that you use alphanumeric characters only.	Destination Folder Select the destination folder to i	install the program files.
		Click Next to accept the defa Destination Folder NProgram Flash Drive List [C 328 MB Installer	ult location, or click Browse to choose an alternat Brow Space Required / Recommender 1334 MB / 1670 MB
14.	Select a Client Group from the list.	Installer	
	Click Next.	Client Group Selection Select a client group for the clier	-1
	This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the	Select a client gloup for the clien	
	CommCell Console.	which have the	p is a logical grouping of client machines same associations at various levels like y, Activity Control, Security and Reports.
		Client gro	
		client_gro	up
		,	
		Installer	< Back Next >
15.	Click Next.	Installer Sebestule Install of Autom	- Ala Undatas
		Schedule Install of Auton Choose when you want to sche downloaded updates.	
		 ✓ Schedule Install of Autor ← Once ← Weekly Installer 	nalic Updates Time: 08:31:12 PM Monday
16.	Select a Storage Policy.	Installer	
	Click Next.	Storage Policy Selection	
		Select a storage policy for the o backed up.	default subclient to be
		Configure for Laptop or D	Desktop Backup
		Select a storage policy f	rom the pull-down list.
		Unassis Installer ———	aned
	If you do not have Storage Policy created, this message will be displayed.	Instation	
	Click OK .	Storage Policy Selection Select a storage policy for the o backed up.	default subolient to be
	You can create the Storage Policy later in step 32.	Configure for Laptop or	Deaktop Backup
		Installer	< Back Next >

• If you are installing the Exchange Database iDataAgent on the Exchange Server, click Configure Exchange Database Specific Information.

e location.

Cancel

Cancel

Cancel

Cancel

Cancel

X

×

• If you are installing the Exchange Agents on the Non-Exchange Server, skip to Configure Exchange Agents Specific Information.

CONFIGURE EXCHANGE DATABASE SPECIFIC INFORMATION

- 17. Select the backup type for Exchange Database backups. Choose either of the following options, then click **Next**.
 - Differential Specifies that each non-full Exchange Database backup secures all data that has changed since the last full backup. Transaction lobs are not purged.
 - **Incremental** Specifies that each non-full Exchange Database backup secures only that data that has changed since the last backup of any type. Committed transaction logs are purged.

	_
Installer	×
Exchange Backup Option	s
Please select a default backup	type
C Differential	Backs up changes in the Information
	Store and Directory Service since the last Full backup, Does not purge the
	transaction logs.
C 1	Bud and have a little block for
 Incremental 	Backs up changes in the Information Store and Directory Service since the last
	Full backup or Incremental backup. The committed transaction logs are then
	purged.
Installer	
Installer	
	< Back Next > Cancel
	X
Enter Administrator	
Enter Administrator accourt Enter Administrator account infor	
dentified do dooden millo	
Account N	ame:
Account P	assword:
Domain:	
EXCH	
J	
	<u>N</u> ext>
Installer	X
Installer	
Summary	
Summary of install selections	
Setup has enough information	on to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the
install settings, click Next to	begin copying hiles.
	<u> </u>
Destination Path = C:\Progra	am Files\
CommServe Host = mycomp Interface Name = audi.myco	uter.mycompany.com ompany.com
Client =audi	
Job Results Path = C:\Progr Global Filters = Use Cell leve	am nies woonesuits
	a policy
<u><</u>	
Installer	
	<back next=""> Cancel</back>
Installer	
Please verify that Gro	ular Logging is disabled before performing any database
backup operations.	

- **18.** Enter the user credentials to access the Exchange Server to perform the backup operation.
 - The User Account must have Exchange Administrator privileges.
 - The installation detects the domain name. If necessary, you can modify the domain name by specifying Windows domain that the Exchange Server resides in.

19. Click Next.

- **20.** The install program displays a reminder to verify that Circular Logging is disabled before performing any database backup operations. To verify that Circular Logging is disabled:
 - From Exchange System Manager, navigate to and expand the server that the Database *i*DataAgent is being installed on.
 - Verify that the Circular Logging check box has not been selected for each Storage Group. If Circular Logging has been enabled for a Storage Group, disable it at this time.

Click OK.

- If you are installing the Exchange Agents, then click Configure Exchange Agents Specific Information.
- If you are installing the Exchange Database *i*DataAgent, skip to Install Remaining Cluster Nodes.

CONFIGURE EXCHANGE AGENTS SPECIFIC INFORMATION

21. Select Exchange Server Name and Exchange Server Version from drop-down list.

Click Next.

This screen will appear when you are installing Exchange Agents on Non-Exchange Server.

22. Click Next.

- 23. Enter the following Exchange Administrator information then click **Next**.
 - Account Name Domain user account created with the exchange server administrator permissions. Do not include the domain name here.
 - Account Password The password assigned to the domain user.
 - Mailbox Name for this Account Mailbox associated with the user above.
 - **Profile Name** Specify profile name to be created during agent install. This profile is associated with the domain user's mailbox.
 - **Exchange Server Name** Name of the Exchange Server that the agent will communicate with for data protection and recovery operations.

For Exchange Server 2010, enter the Client Access Role. After installation configure the roles as described in Configure Mailboxes in Database Availability Group (DAG) Servers.

 Domain - The installation detects and enters a domain name. If necessary, modify the domain name by specifying Windows domain that the Exchange Server resides in.

INSTALL REMAINING CLUSTER NODES

24. To install the software on the remaining nodes of the cluster, click **Yes**.

To complete the install for this node only, click No.

25. Select cluster nodes from the **Preferred Nodes** list and click the arrow button to move them to the **Selected Nodes** list.

Once you complete your selections, click Next.

- The list of **Preferred Nodes** displays all the nodes found in the cluster; from this list you should only select cluster nodes configured to host this cluster group server.
- Do not select nodes that already have multiple instances installed.

nstaller 🗙
Exchange Server Name Please provide Exchange server name
Exchange Server Exchange Server Name: Exchange_Server Exchange Server Version Exchange 2007
Installer < <u>Back Next</u> > Cancel
Installer
Interdept Commany Summary of install selections
Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files.
Installer. Exchange Administrator Account Information Mailox and Profile information
Please enter the Exchange account information required below. A new profile will be created with the information supplied. Account Name: Account Password: Exchange Server Name: Maibox Name for this Account. Domain:
Installer < Back Cancel

Installer	
?	Would you like to install the software on remaining nodes on the cluster?
	Yes No

26. Specify User Name and Password for the Domain Administrator account Information to perform the remote install on the cluster nodes you selected in the previous step.

Click Next.

27. The progress of the remote install for the cluster nodes is displayed; the install can be interrupted if necessary.

Click **Stop** to prevent installation to any nodes after the current ones complete.

Click Advanced Settings to specify any of the following:

- Maximum number of nodes on which Setup can run simultaneously.
- Time allocated for Setup to begin executing on each node, after which the install attempt will fail.
- Time allocated for Setup to complete on each node, after which the install attempt will fail.

If, during the remote install of a cluster node, setup fails to complete or is interrupted, you must perform a local install on that node. When you do, the install begins from where it left off, or from the beginning if necessary. For procedures, see Manually Installing the Software on a Passive Node.

28. Read the summary for remote installation to verify that all selected nodes were installed successfully.

Click Next.

- If any node installation fails, you must manually install the software on that node once the current installation is complete. See Manually Installing the Software on a Passive Node for step-by-step instructions.
- The message displayed on your screen will reflect the status of the selected nodes, and may look different from the example.

Instal	ler
	er Node Selection et cluster nodes to configure
0010	or cruster reduce to configure
	red Nodes Configured Nodes Configured Nodes VMCLUSTERT
•	
	Next > Cancel
Instal	ler
	ain administrator account information
Plei	ase provide domain administrator account
	Domain Account Information
	User Name (<domain\user>):</domain\user>
	LAB \Administrator
	Account Password:
	< <u>B</u> ack Next> Cancel
Instal	ler
You	and the second for the last second and the state of the second second second second second second second second
	I can stop remote install at any time. Installed clients will not be uninstalled. Clients in press will continue installation, but their results will not show correctly.
	c an stop remote install at any time. Installed clients will not be unnistalled. Clients in gress will continue installation, but their results will not show correctly.
α	gress will continue installation, but their results will not show correctly.
_	gress will continue installation, but their results will not show correctly.
α	gress will continue installation, but their results will not show correctly.
α	gress will continue installation, but their results will not show correctly.
	gress will continue installation, but their results will not show correctly.
CI rei	iers will continue installation, but their results will not show correctly. iert Name Client Status Start Time End Time Result Description al2 tabled successfully. Latted succesfully. Latted successfully. Latted successfully. Latted succ
Ci rei Insi Fai	ieres will continue installation, but their results will not show correctly. ieret Name Client Status Start Time End Time Result Description ad2 taled successfully: Control Left to install: Control In progress: Control Max 1 -=
Ci rea Insi Fai Ela	iers will continue installation, but their results will not show correctly. iert Name Client Status Start Time End Time Result Description al2 tabled successfully. Latted succesfully. Latted successfully. Latted successfully. Latted succ
Ci rei Insi Fai	iers Name Client Status Start Time End Time Result Description al2 talled successfully: 0 Left to install: 1 → Max 1 → psed time: 0 sec Estimated time left: 10 min 0 sec
Ins Fai Ela	iers Name Client Status Start Time End Time Result Description al2 talled successfully: talled successfully: talled to install: to instal
⊂ rea Insi Fai Ela	iers Name Client Status Start Time End Time Result Description al2 talled successfully: 0 Left to install: 1 → Max 1 → psed time: 0 sec Estimated time left: 10 min 0 sec
Ci Tea Inst Fai Ela	iers Name Client Status Start Time End Time Result Description al2 talled successfully: 0 Left to install: 1 An progress: 0 Max 1 → peed time left: 10 min 0 sec Installer dvanced Settings Stop
Ci rea Insi Fai Ela	gress will continue installation, but their results will not show correctly.
Cire real Fail Ela	ress will continue installation, but their results will not show correctly.
Ins Fai Ela	ress will continue installation, but their results will not show correctly.
C rei Insi Ela A	gress will continue installation, but their results will not show correctly. iert Name Client Status Start Time End Time Result Description al2 al2 al2 al2 al2 talled successfully: 0 Left to install: 1 al2 In progress: 0 Max 1 al2 Installer
Cl rea Install A	ress will continue installation, but their results will not show correctly.
Ci Tei Fai Ela Mostalli	ress vill continue installation, but their results will not show correctly.
Install	gress will continue installation, but their results will not show correctly. liert Name Client Status Start Time End Time Result Description al2 al2 al2 al2 al2 talled successfully: 0 Left to install: 1 al2 Installer 0 In progress: 0 Max 1 al2 Installer
Install A nstall Resu	gress will continue installation, but their results will not show correctly. liert Name Client Status Start Time End Time Result Description al2 al2 al2 al2 al2 talled successfully: 0 Left to install: 1 al2 Installer 0 In progress: 0 Max 1 al2 Installer
Install nstall Resu	ress will continue installation, but their results will not show correctly.
Install A nstall Resu	press will continue installation, but their results will not show correctly.
Install A nstall Resu Rer Su	press will continue installation, but their results will not show correctly.
Install A nstall Resu Rer Su	gress will continue installation, but their results will not show correctly. liert Name Client Status Start Time End Time Result Description al2 al2 al2 al2 al2 al2 talled successfully: 0 Left to install: 1 al2 talled successfully: 0 Left to install: 1 al2 installer 0 In progress: 0 Max 1 al2 installer 0 Estimated time left: 10 min 0 sec and an
Install A notall Resu Su The	press will continue installation, but their results will not show correctly.
Install A notall Resu Su The	gress will continue installation, but their results will not show correctly. iert Name Client Status Start Time End Time Result Description al2 al2 al2 al2 al2 al2 talled successfully: 0 Left to install: 1 al2 al2 talled successfully: 0 Left to install: 1 al2 al2 talled successfully: 0 Left to install: 1 al2 al2 talled successfully: 0 Left to install: 1 al2 al2 installer 0 Left to install: 1 al2 al2 al2 Installer 0 Left to install: 1 al2 al2 al2 Installer
Install A nstall Resu Resu Su Thi	gress will continue installation, but their results will not show correctly. iert Name Client Status Start Time End Time Result Description al2 al2 al2 al2 al2 al2 talled successfully: 0 Left to install: 1 al2 al2 talled successfully: 0 Left to install: 1 al2 al2 talled successfully: 0 Left to install: 1 al2 al2 talled successfully: 0 Left to install: 1 al2 al2 installer 0 Left to install: 1 al2 al2 al2 Installer 0 Left to install: 1 al2 al2 al2 Installer
Install A notall Resu Su The	press will continue installation, but their results will not show correctly.
Install A notall Resu Su The	press will continue installation, but their results will not show correctly.

Einish

30. Click Next.

31. Click Finish.

1 - 1 m	
Installer	<u>×</u>
Summary	
Summary of install selections	
Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the	
install settings, click Next to begin copying files.	
Destination Path = C:\Program Files\	
CommServe Host = mycomputer.mycompany.com Interface Name = audi.mycompany.com	
Client =audi Job Results Path = C:\Program Files\JobResults	
Global Filters = Use Cell level policy	
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
ζ	
Installer	
<back next=""> Cancel</back>	
	_
	_
Installer	×
Schedule Reminder	
Job schedule creation reminder	
Please note:	
Marcalline and the second on the Calendria for each Data (and that has been installed on	
You still need to create a Job Schedule for each iDataAgent that has been installed on this client computer.	
Job Schedules are required to allow the iDataAgents to perform automated backup and restore operations.	
Job Schedule creation can be accomplished through the CommCell Console	
administration interface.	
Installer	
(<u>N</u> ext>	
Installer	×
Completion Report	
Setup complete	
Software installation completed successfully.	-
Visit the website below to download latest Updates and Service Packs.	
Click Finish to complete Setup.	
	-
	_
Installer	

3

If you already have a storage policy selected in step 16, Click Next > button available at the bottom of the page to proceed to the **Configuration** section.

If you do not have Storage Policy created, continue with the following step.

32. Create a Storage Policy:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to **Policies**.
- 2. Right-click the Storage Policies and then click New Storage Policy.
- 3. Follow the prompts displayed in the Storage Policy Wizard. The required options are mentioned below:
 - Select the Storage Policy type as Data Protection and Archiving and click Next.
 - Enter the name in the Storage Policy Name box and click Next.
 - From the **Library** list, click the name of a disk library to which the primary copy should be associated and then click **Next**.

Ensure that you select a library attached to a MediaAgent operating in the current release.

- From the **MediaAgent** list, click the name of a MediaAgent that will be used to create the primary copy and then click **Next**.
- For the device streams and the retention criteria information, click Next to accept default values.
- $\circ~$ Select Yes to enable deduplication for the primary copy.
- From the **MediaAgent** list, click the name of the MediaAgent that will be used to store the Deduplication store.



Type the name of the folder in which the deduplication database must be located in the Deduplication Store Location or click the Browse button to select the folder and then click ${\bf Next}.$

 $\circ\;$ Review the details and click Finish to create the Storage Policy.

33.

- Enable the following registry key to create job specific profiles:
 - From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers.
 - Right-click the <Client> in which you want to add the registry key, and then click Properties.
 - Click the Registry Key Settings tab.
 - Click Add.
 - Enter CreateProcessSpecificProfile in the Name field.
 - Enter MSExchangeMBAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

 $\ensuremath{\mathsf{Enter}}$ MSExchangeDMAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

- Enter REG_DWORD in the Type filed.
- Enter 1 to enable and 0 to disable the key in the Value field.
- Click OK.

Previous Next >

Getting Started Configuration - Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent

Once installed, configure an archive set and subclient as follows.

- From the CommCell Console, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> | Exchange Mailbox Archiver | defaultArchiveSet.
 - Right-click the default subclient and then click **Properties**.

• Click the **Content** tab.

1.

• Click the **Configure** button.

3. Click Discover.

CommCell Browser CommCell Browser CommCell Browser CommCell Stowputers CommCell Stowputer	View Archived History
Off Exchange Malliox Archiver off Exchange Malliox Archiver off an uRArchiveSet off an uRArchiveSet	Content D Summary
Pre/Post Process Storage General	Device Activity Control Encryption Security Content Filters
Contents of subclient:	s Name SMTP Address
Total: 0 malibox(es).	"
	OK Cancel Help
Add/Modify Mailboxes	E
Display Name Alias Name	
Change all selected mailboxes to:	
	OK Discover Cancel Help

< Previous

Next >

- 4. Select one mailbox listed in the **Mailbox Name** list for your first archive.
 - In the Change all selected mailboxes to list, click default.
 - Click OK.

- Click the Archiving Rules tab.
 - Check the Enable All Rules check box.

- Click the **Storage Devices** tab.
 - Select a Storage Policy.
 - Click OK.

Click Next > to continue.

If you do not have Storage Policy created, click $\ensuremath{\textbf{Create Storage Policy}}$ and proceed to the next step.

Display Name	Alias Name	SMTP Address Subclient \$
exch2_journ2	ojourn2	cjourn2@exch.com
exch2 journ1 8xch2 journ3	ejourn1 ojourn3	ejourn1@exch.com
exch2 journmp1	ejournmp1	ejournmp1@exch.c
exch2 journmp2	ejournmp2	ejournmp2@exch.c
exch2 journmp3 exch2 journmp4	ejournmp3 ejournmp4	ejournmp3@exch.c ejournmp4@exch.c
sp5dataj	sp5dataj	sp5dataj@exch.com
		Ŧ
Change all selected	mailboxes to:	•
	def a	
	Do N	lot Archive ^{VC}
Subclient Properti	es of default	
General Co	untent Archiv	Activity Control Encryption Security ing Rules Filters Pre/Post Process
Enable all rules)	
	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
Message Rule Wab Messages	erMark Rule Stub Rule	e Attachment Filter PST
Archive message a		30 📩 days
Archive message o	only if size is greater that	an 1024 📩 KB
📃 Leave Behind	Message Body	
Archive messa	ages with attachment o	nly
📃 Use either Age	e or Size rule	
Use Sent/Reco	eived time for Age rule	
Do not archive	e unread messages	
		OK Cancel Help
Subclient Proper	ties of	
General		Content Filters
General Pre/Post Process	Storage Device	Content Filters Activity Control Encryption Security
Pre/Post Process	Storage Device	Activity Control Encryption Security
Pre/Post Process		Activity Control Encryption Security
Pre/Post Process Data Storage Polic Storage Policy:		Activity Control Encryption Security
Pre/Post Process		Activity Control Encryption Security
Pre/Post Process Data Storage Polic Storage Policy:	Y Data Transfer Op	Activity Control Encryption Security
Pre/Post Process Data Storage Policy: Elag	Y Data Transfer Op	Activity Control Encryption Security tion Deduplication Data Paths
Pre/Post Process Data Storage Policy Storage Policy: Lag Incremental Stora	Y Data Transfer Opl	Activity Control Encryption Security tion Deduplication Data Paths N/A
Pre/Post Process Data Storage Policy: Elag	Y Data Transfer Opl	Activity Control Encryption Security tion Deduplication Data Paths N/A
Pre/Post Process Data Storage Policy Storage Policy: Lag Incremental Stora	Y Data Transfer Opl	Activity Control Encryption Security tion Deduplication Data Paths N/A
Pre/Post Process Data Storage Policy Storage Policy: Lag Incremental Stora	Y Data Transfer Opl	Activity Control Encryption Security tion Deduplication Data Paths N/A
Pre/Post Process Data Storage Policy Storage Policy: Lag Incremental Stora	Y Data Transfer Opl	Activity Control Encryption Security tion Deduplication Data Paths N/A
Pre/Post Process Data Storage Policy Storage Policy: Lag Incremental Stora	Y Data Transfer Opl	Activity Control Encryption Security tion Deduplication Data Paths N/A
Pre/Post Process Data Storage Policy: Lag Incremental Stora	Y Data Transfer Opl	Activity Control Encryption Security tion Deduplication Data Paths N/A
Pre/Post Process Data Storage Policy: Lag Incremental Stora	Y Data Transfer Opl	Activity Control Encryption Security tion Deduplication Data Paths N/A
Pre/Post Process Data Storage Policy: Bag Incremental Stora	Y Data Transfer Opl	Activity Control Encryption Security tion Deduplication Data Paths N/A

- 7.
- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to **Policies**.
- 2. Right-click the Storage Policies and then click New Storage Policy.
- 3. Follow the prompts displayed in the Storage Policy Wizard. The required options are mentioned below:
 - $\circ~$ Select the Storage Policy type as $\mbox{Data Protection}$ and $\mbox{Archiving}$ and click $\mbox{Next}.$
- $\circ~$ Enter the name in the Storage Policy Name box and click Next.
- From the Library list, click the name of a disk library to which the primary copy should be associated and then click Next.

Ensure that you select a library attached to a MediaAgent operating in the current release.

- From the **MediaAgent** list, click the name of a MediaAgent that will be used to create the primary copy and then click **Next**.
- $\circ\;$ For the device streams and the retention criteria information, click Next to accept default values.
- $\circ~$ Select Yes to enable deduplication for the primary copy.
- From the **MediaAgent** list, click the name of the MediaAgent that will be used to store the Deduplication store.

Type the name of the folder in which the deduplication database must be located in the Deduplication Store Location or click the Browse button to select the folder and then click **Next**.

 $\circ~$ Review the details and click Finish to create the Storage Policy.



< Previous Next >

Getting Started Archive - Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent

< Previous Next >

WHAT GETS ARCHIVED	WHAT DOES NOT GET ARCHIVED				
By default, mailbox messages that meet the	The following are not included in archive operations:				
following criteria are archived: • Messages older than 30 days	 Messages sent within the last 30 days (see Configuring Archive Rules for information on modifying this setting) 				
 Messages greater than 1024 KB in size 	• Messages less than 1024 KB in size (see Configuring Archive Rules for information on modifying this setting)				
	• Messages based on mailbox space quotas and disk space (see Configuring Archive Rules for information on modifying this setting)				
	Sticky Notes				
 From the CommCell Console, navig 	modifying this setting)				

- From the CommCell Console, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> | Exchange Mailbox Archiver | defaultArchiveSet.
 - Right-click the default subclient and click Archive.

 Initiation

 I Subclient Name Archive Brow Find List Media . x2010-1 Erase Stubs Exchange Compliance Archive Exchange Database View Archived History DA Exchange Mailbox Operation Window defaultArchiveSet Schedules Properties EXCH-DAG dag-1 🖾 Content 📑 Summary dag-2 × Archive Options for Subclient: test Job Initiation Job Initiation Immediate Run this job now Schedule Configure Schedule Pattern Configure 🖉 OK Cancel Advanced 📴 Save As Script Help 400 3ob ID 15066 15076 15076 15077 15077 Operation Clerct.Ca.. Agent.Type Subclerct Bickup (sines Insign few., Insigned) Archive perfs/2000, Exchange... Itest Archive enclose-1 Exchange... Itest Archive enclose-1 Exchange... Itest Archive enclose-1 Exchange... Itest Job Type Phase Full Bodiup New Index N(X New Index N(X New Index N(X Storage P... janes-MM6 policy_1 policy_1 dag Medialigent Status janes Running perfsgi200... Killed perfsgi200... Killed DroralMA Compilte pleation



- 2. • Click Immediate.
 - Click OK.

- з. You can track the progress of the job from the **Job Controller**.
- 4. Once the job is complete, view the details of job by right-clicking the Subclient and selecting Archive History.

5. Click OK.

C	b Status						
		C	Completed	💮 Fa	belie	🔘 Killed	
L	Specify	y Time Range					
	Time Z	one: (U1	C-05:00) Easter	n Time (US	& Canada)		*
	Start	Time		End	Time		
	Wed	107/06/2011	-	Th	u 07/07/201	1	-
		02 : 25 PM	1		02:2	25 PM	-
			OK	Cano	el	Advanced	Help
		ontroller ×					
Je	ob Contro		ct. 1 c.		5 1 1		D
	Job ID 15035	Operation Backup	Client Co kirin64	Agent Typ Linux File S		t Job Type Full	Phase Backup
	15049	Backup			image100		Backup
	15066	Backup			imagevol		Backup
	15076	Archiver	perfsql200	Exchange .	test	New Index	N/A
	15077	Archiver	ex2010-1	Exchange .	test	New Index	N/A
	15078	Archiver	perfsql200	Exchange .	test	New Index	N/A
	15079	Install Upd			1	Suspend	
						Commit	
						Resume	•
					i i	Kill	S.
					ľ	Change Pric	ority
						View Events	
						View Logs	
						View Logs Send Log Fi	les
						-	les
						Send Log Fi	
Pa	ause 🕨	Playing	Running: 3 Pen	ding: 1 Wa	iting: 0 Qu	Send Log Fi Detail Multi-Job C	ontrol
_	-	Playing Viewer ×	Running: 3 Pen	ding: 1 Wa	iting: 0 Qu	Send Log Fi Detail	ontrol
2	-	Viewer ×	Running: 3 Pen	ding: 1 Wa	iting: 0 Qu	Send Log Fi Detail Multi-Job C Resubmit Jo	ontrol ob
E'	Event View	Viewer ×			iting: 0 Qu Yogram	Send Log Fi Detail Multi-Job C Resubmit Jo Add Alert	ontrol Jb
E	Event vent View ity Eve	Viewer ×		P	rogram	Send Log Fi Detail Multi-Job C Resubmit Jo Add Alert Delete Alert	ontrol Jb
E	Event Vent View	Viewer × ver ent IDJob ID 144911 1449101503	Date 07/07/2011 1 '9 07/07/2011 1	P 4:21:39 M 4:21:16 Di	rogram ediaManag stributeSo	Send Log Fi Detail Multi-Job C Resubmit Jo Add Alert Delete Alert Modify Aler	ontrol Jb
E	Event vent View ity Eve	Viewer × ver ent ID Job ID 144911 144910 1507 144909 1507	Date 07/07/2011 1	P 4:21:39 M 4:21:16 Di 4:21:05 Jo	rogram ediaManag stributeSo obManager	Send Log Fi Detail Multi-Job C Resubmit Jo Add Alert Delete Alert Modify Aler	ontrol b

- 6. Right-click the job to:
 - View items that failed, if any, during the job.
 - Resubmit the job.
 - View job details, such as the number of mailboxes archived.
 - View events associated with the job.
 - Send the log file that is associated with the job.

Getting Started Recover - Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent

It is recommended that you perform a recover operation immediately after your first archive to understand the process.

- From the CommCell Console, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> | Exchange Mailbox Archiver.
 - Right-click the default backup set and then click All Tasks | Browse.

2. Click OK.

з.

1.

- Expand the **defaultArchiveset** and select the mailbox folder that you want to recover.
 - Click Recover All Selected.
- 4. Click To PST File.
 - Select Local Drive.
 - Click **Browse** to locate the path.



< Previous

Next >

- 5. Select the path and click Add.
 - Close the window.

2010 1	-				
ex2010-1	Name \$Recycle.8in	Size	Type Folder	Modified 7/13/09 10:34 PM	*
Recycle.Bin Boot	Boot		Folder	4/25/11 2:37 PM	
creshdumps Documents and Settings	bootmgr BOOTSECT.BAK	374.79 KB 8 KB	File File	11/20/10 4:40 AM 9/7/10 5:30 PM	
	BOOTSECT.BAK crashdumps	0 ND	File Folder	9/7/10 5:30 PM 7/7/11 10:28 AM	
ExchangeSetupLogs Instpub MSOCoshe MSOcoshe	Documents and Settin	gs	Folder	7/14/09 1:06 AM	
MSOCache MSOCache	DynCacheInstaller.log	5.25 KB	File	6/27/11 11:51 AM	
	ExchangeSetupLogs inetpub		Folder	6/6/11 2:57 PM 9/7/10 3:05 PM	
Program Files	MSOCache		Folder	6/7/11 10:44 AM	
Program Files (x86) ProgramData	pagefile.sys	3 GB	File	6/24/11 1:26 PM	
	PerfLogs Powershell scripts		Folder	7/13/09 11:20 PM 5/9/11 12:24 PM	
System Volume Information Users Windows	Program Files		Folder	6/27/11 11:47 AM	
Windowe	Program Files (x86)		Folder	6/7/11 10:46 AM	
E:	ProgramData		Folder	6/29/11 2:09 PM	
	Recovery System Volume Inform		Folder	9/7/10 1:34 PM 7/6/11 12:18 PM	
I:	Users		Folder	4/28/11 2:53 PM	
G G J J K K	Windows		Folder	6/7/11 10:46 AM	
💼 La					
					-
	Add Close	New Folder]		
Recover Options for All Selected Iter	ns:				×
ieneral Job Initiation					
To Mailbox					
Recovery Destination					
Destination client ex2010-1					Y
I Recover to Same Paths					
Specify destination path					
				Brows	e
When message exists					
 Unconditional Overwrite 					
C GREAT MALE OF GREAT					
Unconditionally over	write only if target is a	DataArchiver st	du		
Append					
🔿 Skip					
C state					
	_	_	-		
To PST File					
To PST File C:\Recovery\recovered.pst				Bro	wse
C:\Recovery\recovered.pst				Bro	wse
				Bro	wse
C:\Recovery\recovered.pst				Bro	wse
C:\Recovery\recovered.pst				Bro	wise
C:[Recovery]recovered.pst] C:[Recovery]recovered.pst] Local Drive Network					
C:[Recovery]recovered.pst] C:[Recovery]recovered.pst] Local Drive Network	6 ОК Салсе	Advance	d 🛛	Bro	wwse
C:[Recovery]recovered.pst] C:[Recovery]recovered.pst] Local Drive Network	В ^и ОК Сапсе	Advance	d 🛛		
C:\Recovery\recovered.pst © Local Drive Network		Advance	d) 🕑		
C:\Recovery\recovered.px Local Drive Network Recover Options for All Selecter		Advance	d 🛛		
C:\Recovery\recovered.pst © Local Drive Network Recover Options for All Selecter General Job Initiation		Advance	d B		
C:\Recovery\recovered.px Local Drive Network Recover Options for All Selecter		Advance	d 🛛		
C:\Recovery\recovered.pst C:\Recovery\recovered.pst C:\Recover Options for All Selecter Seneral Job Initiation Job Initiation		Advance	d 🛛		
C:\Recovery\recovered.pst © Local Drive Network Recover Options for All Selecter General Job Initiation		Advance	d J		
ClRecovery/vecovered.pd Local Drive Network Recover Options for All Selecter Seneral Job Initiation Job Initiation @ Immediate		Advance	d 🛛		
C:\Recovery\recovered.pst C:\Recovery\recovered.pst C:\Recover Options for All Selecter Seneral Job Initiation Job Initiation		Advance	d []		
C:\Recovery/recovered.pst C:\Recovery/recovered.pst C:\Recover Options for All Selecter Seneral Job Initiation Job Initiation Distribution Immedate Run this job now		Advance	d 🔋		
ClRecovery/vecovered.pd Local Drive Network Recover Options for All Selecter Seneral Job Initiation Job Initiation @ Immediate		Advance	d J		
C:\Recovery/recovered.pst C:\Recovery/recovered.pst C:\Recover Options for All Selecter Seneral Job Initiation Job Initiation Distribution Immedate Run this job now		Advance	d ()		
C:\Recovery/recovered.pst C:\Recovery/recovered.pst C:\Recover Options for All Selecter Seneral Job Initiation Job Initiation Distribution Immedate Run this job now	d Items:	Configure	d 🛛		
C./Recovery/recovered.pst] © Local Drive Recover Options for All Selecter Sob Initiation Dob Initiation Dob Initiation Commediate Run this job now Control Schedule	d Items:		a ()		
C./Recovery/recovered.pst] © Local Drive Recover Options for All Selecter Sob Initiation Dob Initiation Dob Initiation Commediate Run this job now Control Schedule	d Items:		d 🔋		
C./Recovery/recovered.pst] © Local Drive Recover Options for All Selecter Sob Initiation Dob Initiation Dob Initiation Commediate Run this job now Control Schedule	d Items:		d ()		
C./Recovery/recovered.pst] © Local Drive Recover Options for All Selecter Sob Initiation Dob Initiation Dob Initiation Commediate Run this job now Control Schedule	d Items:		d []		
C./Recovery/recovered.pst] © Local Drive Recover Options for All Selecter Sob Initiation Dob Initiation Dob Initiation Commediate Run this job now Control Schedule	d Items:		d g		
C./Recovery/recovered.pst] © Local Drive Recover Options for All Selecter Sob Initiation Dob Initiation Dob Initiation Commediate Run this job now Control Schedule	d Items:		d g		
C./Recovery/recovered.pst] © Local Drive Recover Options for All Selecter Sob Initiation Dob Initiation Dob Initiation Commediate Run this job now Control Schedule	d Items:		d g		
C./Recovery/recovered.pst] © Local Drive Recover Options for All Selecter Sob Initiation Dob Initiation Dob Initiation Commediate Run this job now Control Schedule	d Items:		d g		
C./Recovery/recovered.pst] © Local Drive Recover Options for All Selecter Sob Initiation Dob Initiation Dob Initiation Commediate Run this job now Control Schedule	d Items:		4		
C./Recovery/recovered.pst] © Local Drive Recover Options for All Selecter Sob Initiation Dob Initiation Dob Initiation Commediate Run this job now Control Schedule	d Items:		d ()		
C./Recovery/recovered.pst] © Local Drive Recover Options for All Selecter Sob Initiation Dob Initiation Dob Initiation Commediate Run this job now Control Schedule	d Items:		4		
C./Recovery/recovered.pst] © Local Drive Recover Options for All Selecter Sob Initiation Dob Initiation Dob Initiation Commediate Run this job now Control Schedule	d Items:		d B		
Clifecoverylyecovered.pd Local Drive Alternork Recover Options for All Selecter Seneral Job Initiation Job Initiation Job Initiation Configure Schedule Patter Configure Schedule Patter	af Remu:	Configure		Save As Script	
C./Recovery/recovered.pst] © Local Drive Recover Options for All Selecter Sob Initiation Dob Initiation Dob Initiation Commediate Run this job now Control Schedule	af Remu:				
Clifecoverylyecovered.pd Local Drive Alternork Recover Options for All Selecter Seneral Job Initiation Job Initiation Job Initiation Configure Schedule Patter Configure Schedule Patter	af Remu:	Configure		Save As Script	
Cliffecoverylyecovered.pdf Local Drive Alternork Recover Options for All Selecter Sold Instation Job Instation Job Instation Configure Schedule Patter Configure Schedule Patter	af Remu:	Configure		Save As Script	
Clifecovery/recovered.pdf Clifecovery/recov	af Remu:	Configure		Save As Script	
C. (Recovery/vecovered.pd) C. (Recovery/vecovered.pd) C. (Recover Options for All Selecter Exercise Job Instation Job Instation Job Instation Configure Schedule Patte Con	rn Carcel	Configure Advanced		Save As Script	
C. (Recovery/vecovered.pd) C. (Recovery/vecovered.pd) C. (Recover Options for All Selecte Seneral Job Initiation Job Initiation Dob Initiation Configure Schedule Patter Configure Schedule Patter Stationered Stationered Configure Schedule Patter Config	an Cancel (Configure Advanced	₽ Holday	Save As Script	
C.Recovery/recovered.pd C.Recovery/recovered.pd C.Recover Options for All Selectes Energy Job InRation Job InRation Job InRation Schedule Configure Schedule Patte Configu	an Cancel (Configure Advanced	P Holdshi	Ve As Script	
C.Recovery/vecovered.pd C.Recovery/vecovered.pd C.Recover Options for All Selectes Exerce Job Initiation Job Initiation Configure Schedule Configure Schedule Configure Schedule Patte Configure Schedule Patte Configure Schedule Patte Distributer X Latoreoler X Lato	Prin Sacket Ab Type Test And Ab Type	Configure Advanced	P Medadu H Brodd H Brodd	Save As Script	
C.Recovery/vecovered.pd C.Recovery/vecovered.pd C.Recover Options for All Selecter Servera Job Initiation Job Initiation Configure Schedule Configure Schedule Configure Schedule Patte Configure S	Prin Sacket Ab Type Test And Ab Type	Configure Advanced	P Holdshi	Ve As Script	
C.Recovery/vecovered.pd C.Recovery/vecovered.pd C.Recover Options for All Selectes Exerce Job Initiation Job Initiation Configure Schedule Configure Schedule Configure Schedule Patte Configure Schedule Patte Configure Schedule Patte Distributer X Latoreoler X Lato	Prin Sacket Ab Type Test And Ab Type	Configure Configure Advanced	P Medadu H Brodd H Brodd	Save As Script	
C. (Recovery/vecovered.pd) C. (Recovery/vecovered.pd) C. (Recover Options for All Selectes Seneral Job Initiation Job Initiation D. Inmediate Run this job now Configure Schedule Patter Configure Sche	In Cancel	Configure Advanced Meet 2007 Base 4000 Base 40	P. Helski H. broke D. broke D. broke D. broke	Save As Script Save As Script	
Clifecovery/vecovered.pd Clifecovery/vecovered.pd Clifecovery/vecovered.pd Network Recover Options for All Selecter Series Dob Instistion Dob Instistio	srn Sadare 30 type ted not 20 Sadare 30 type ted not 20 ted not 20	Configure Advanced New Storag Solution Grites Solution Grites Solution Configuration Solution Configuration Solution Solution Configuration Soluti	5. Redak Malibox	P Save As Script	Heb
Clifecovery/vecovered.pdf Local Drive Network Recover Options for All Selecter Seneral Job Initiation Job Initiation Job Initiation Dob Initiation Schedule Configure Schedule Patter Configure Schedule Patter Schedule Configure Schedule Configure Schedule Configure Schedule Configure Schedule Configure Schedule Configure Schedule Configure Schedule Configure Schedule Schedule Configure Schedule Schedule Configure Schedule Schedule Configure Schedule Schedule Configure Schedule Configure	srn Sadare 30 type ted not 20 Sadare 30 type ted not 20 ted not 20	Configure Advanced New Storag Solution Grites Solution Grites Solution Configuration Solution Configuration Solution Solution Configuration Soluti	5. Redak Malibox	Save As Script Save As Script	Heb
Clifecovery/vecovered.pd ■ Local Drive ● Network Recover Options for All Selecter Seneral Job InRitation Job InRitation ■ Immediate Run this job now ● Schedule Configure Schedule Patter Configure Schedule Patter © Check © Schedule Configure Schedule Patter © Check © Schedule Configure Schedule Patter © Check © Schedule Extreme © Check © Check © Schedule Extreme © Check © Che	ern Sacket Ao type tes for ad starter P	Configure Advanced Here Storag Bolus Gree Bolus Gree Bo	5. Redak Malibox	P Save As Script	Heb
C. (Recovery/vecovered.pd) Local Drive Network Recover Options for All Selectes aneral Job Initiation Job Initiation Job Initiation Configure Schedule Configure Schedule Patter State Recover Configure Schedule Patter Configure Schedule Patter State Recover Configure Schedule Patter Configure Schedule Configure Schedule Patter State Recover Configure Schedule Patter Configure Schedule Configure Schedule Pa	ern Sacket Ao type tes for ad starter P	Configure Advanced New Storag Solution Grites Solution Grites Solution Configuration Solution Configuration Solution Solution Configuration Soluti	5. Redak Malibox	P Save As Script	Heb
C. (Recovery/vecovered.pd) Local Drive Network Recover Options for All Selectes aneral Job Initiation Job Initiation Job Initiation Configure Schedule Configure Schedule Patter State Recover Configure Schedule Patter Configure Schedule Patter State Recover Configure Schedule Patter Configure Schedule Configure Schedule Patter State Recover Configure Schedule Patter Configure Schedule Configure Schedule Pa	al Rems:	Configure Advanced Here Storag Bolus Gree Bolus Gree Bo	Second Seco	P Save As Script	Heb
Clifecovery/vecovered.pdf Local Drive Network Recover Options for All Selecter Selecter Job Instation Job Instation Job Instation Schedule Configure Schedule Patter Configure Schedule Patter Schedule Configure Schedule Patter Schedule Schedule Configure Schedule Patter Schedule	al Rems:	Configure Advanced New String Boko Otto, String	Second Seco	P Save As Script	Heb
Cliffecovery/vecovered.pd Cliffecovere/vecovered.pd Cliffecovere/vecovere	al Rems:	Configure Advanced New String Boko Otto, String	Second Seco	P Save As Script	Heb
Clifecovery/vecovered.pdf Local Drive Network Recover Options for All Selecter Selecter Job Initiation Job Initiation Dob Initiation Schedule Configure Schedule Patter Configure Schedule Patter Schedule Configure Schedule Patter Schedule Browser Configure Schedule Browser Configure Schedule Browser Configure Schedule Browser Schedule	al Rems:	Configure Advanced New String Boko Otto, String	Second Seco	P Save As Script	Heb
Clifecovery/vecovered.pdf Local Drive Network Recover Options for All Selecter Selecter Job Initiation Job Initiation Dob Initiation Schedule Configure Schedule Patter Configure Schedule Patter Schedule Configure Schedule Patter Schedule Browser Configure Schedule Browser Configure Schedule Browser Configure Schedule Browser Schedule	al Rems:	Configure Advanced New String Boko Otto, String	Second Seco	P Save As Script	Heb
Cliffecovery/vecovered.pd Cliffecovere/vecovered.pd Cliffecovere/vecovere	al Rems:	Configure Advanced New String Boko Otto, String	Second Seco	P Save As Script	Heb

All Tasks

Properties

Archiving History Recovery History

Schedules

6. Append the path with the PST file name. Ensure to include the $\tt.pst$ file extension.

- Click the Job Initiation tab and select Immediate.
 - Click OK.

- 8. You can monitor the progress of the restore job from the **Job Controller**.
- 9. Once the restore job has completed, right-click the agent and click **View** | **Recover History**.

- **11.** Right-click the job and do one of the following:
 - View Job Details.
 - View Paths.
 - View Events of the recover job.
 - View or send log files of the restore job.
 - Resubmit the job if the job is not too old.

12. Import the PST file into Outlook.

This step is based on Outlook 2010. The steps and screen may be different if you are using another version of Outlook.

- Click File and then click Open.
- Click Import.
- Select Import from another program or file option and click Next.
- Under File Type, select Outlook Data File (.pst) and click Next.
- Click Browse and choose the .pst that was restored and click Next.
- Choose to import the file to the current folder or choose another folder and click **Finish**.

When **Import items into the same folder** is selected, the data from the imported file will be added to the same folder in Outlook if the folder matches. If the folder doesn't match in Outlook, it will be created.

13. View the imported folder in Outlook.





ŀ,

Advanced Configuration - Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Understanding the CommCell Console

Grouping Mailboxes Into User-Defined Subclients

By Active Directory User Groups By Databases Using Regular Expressions Disabling Automatic Discovery Automatically Manage Mailbox Groupings

Configuring Archive Rules

Based on Message Properties Based on Disk Space and Mailbox Quotas Based on Stubs Based on Attachments Based on PST Files

Configure End-User Message Recovery

Configure OFL Enable Stubbing

Configure Recovery from Mobile Devices

Configure Recalls to Recovered Items Folders

Outlook Application Outlook Web Access (OWA)

Prevent Messages from Being Recalled Multiple Times

Configure Recall Status Messages

For Recalls from Disk Library For Recalls from Tape Library For Recalls when Media is Outside the Library

Configure Offline Archiving

Enable Offline Archiving Specify the Offline Archive Candidate Period

Configure Archives of PST Files

Configure Archives of Disabled Mailboxes

Configure Archives of Older Messages First

Customize Outlook for End-Users

Specify a New Location for the Recovered Items Folder Display Attachment Lists in an Archived Message Body Configure Creation of Custom Folders for Mailboxes Customize Subject Line Text for Archived Messages Delete Messages from Recovered Items Folder After a Specified Time

Exclude Exchange Interpersonal Message (IPM) Classes from Archives

Configuring for Optimized Stub Recall

Extend the Persistent Pipeline Timeout Limit the Number of Persistent Pipeline Threads During Recoveries Enhance the Stub Recall Speed Stub Recall from Any Available Data Copy

Enhancing Archive and Recovery Performance

Optimize Archiving Speed Configure Stub Recall Timeout

Enhancing Mailbox Discovery Using CSVDE Filter

Specifying Domain Information

Configuring Mailboxes in Database Availability Group (DAG) Servers

Filtering Subclients

Exclude Specific Mailboxes Filter Mailboxes using Regular Expressions Filter Specific Folders Include Specific Folders

Add Unassociated Mailboxes to the Default Subclient

Modifying an Agent, Archive Set, or Subclient

Deleting an Agent, Archive Set, or Subclient

UNDERSTANDING THE COMMCELL CONSOLE

The Exchange Mailbox Archiver iDataAgent uses the following logical entities to manage archive and recovery operations from the CommCell Console.

AGENT

Defines the Exchange Server to be archived.

ARCHIVE SET

Facilitates automatic discovery of mailboxes.

SUBCLIENT

Defines the mailboxes to be archived.



GROUPING MAILBOXES INTO USER-DEFINED SUBCLIENTS

You can create user-defined subclients to divide mailbox archives into groups based on specific criteria. For example, you may want to archive mailboxes in the **Administrator** Active Directory User group on a nightly basis, whereas mailboxes in the **Accounting** Active Directory User group may only need to be archived once a week. Creating a user-defined subclient for each user group allows you to archive them at different intervals based on your resources and archival needs.

By default, the content of the Default Subclient contains all mailboxes on the Exchange server.

When you create a user-defined Subclient, the contents of the user-defined Subclient will be excluded from the Default Subclient.

BY ACTIVE DIRECTORY USER GROUPS

You can choose to discover mailboxes based on the mailboxes Active Directory User Group. Any mailbox that resides in the specified Active Directory User Group will be discovered and automatically assigned to the user-defined subclient.

- 1. In cases where the CommServe and the Active Directory Server are across a firewall, ensure that port 389 is opened.
- 2. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computes | <*Client*> | Exchange Mailbox Archiver.
- 3. Right-click the **<***Archive set***>** for which you want to discover mailboxes, and then click **Properties**.
- 4. Click the Auto Discover tab.
- 5. Select the Enable Auto Discover check box, and then click AD User Group Affinity.
- 6. Click OK.
- From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> | <Archive Set>.
- 8. Right-click the Archive Set, point to All Tasks, and then click New Subclient.
- 9. In the Subclient Name box, type a name.
- 10. Click the **Storage Device** tab, in the **Storage Policy** box, select a Storage policy, and then click **OK**.
- 11. Right-click the newly created subclient, and then click Properties.
- 12. Click the Auto-discovery tab, and then click Configuration.
- 13. Click Discover.
- 14. In the **Domain Name** box, type the Active Directory domain name for the mailbox.
- 15. In the **User Name** box, type the user account name.
- 16. In the **Password** box, type the password for the user account, and then click **OK**.
- 17. On the **Configure AD User Group for Auto-discovery dialog box**, click the **Subclient** column to assign the Active Directory User Group to a subclient.

Alternatively, you can select the desired Active Directory User group, and then select the subclient from the **Move all selected Items to** drop-down box.

- 18. Click **OK** to return the subclient **Properties** dialog box.
- 19. Click OK.





BY DATABASES

You can configure a user-defined subclient to automatically discover mailboxes created within a particular database. This is especially useful in cases where a number of databases exist.

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computes | <*Client*> | Exchange Mailbox Archiver.
- 2. Right-click the **Archive set** for which you want to discover mailboxes, and then click **Properties**.
- 3. Click the Auto Discover tab.
- 4. Select the Enable Auto Discover check box, and then click Database Affinity.
- 5. Click OK.
- From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> | Archive Set.
- 8. Right-click the Archive Set, point to All Tasks, and then click New Subclient.
- 9. In the **Subclient Name** box, type a name.
- 10. Click the **Storage Device** tab, in the **Storage Policy** box, select a Storage policy, and click **OK**.



- 11. Right-click the subclient, and then select Properties.
- 12. Click the Auto-discovery tab, and then click Configuration.
- 13. Click Discover. The mailbox stores will be displayed.
- 14. Assign the mailbox store to a subclient by clicking the **Subclient** column and selecting one from the drop-down list. Alternatively, you can assign all databases to one subclient in the **Move all selected items to** field.
- 15. Click **OK** to return the subclient **Properties** dialog box.
- 16. Click OK.

USING REGULAR EXPRESSIONS

Regular expressions can be used to discover mailboxes based on unique patterns. For example, regular expressions can be used to discover all mailboxes containing a particular department name within its display name.

When mailboxes are discovered using regular expressions, any mailbox that matches the wildcard expressions are automatically assigned to the associated user-defined subclient. If a mailbox does not match the expressions, it is automatically assigned to the default subclient.

The following table provides some examples of useful regular expressions:

EXAMPLE	DESCRIPTION
Accounting*	Auto-discovers any mailbox display name that begins with Accounting followed by any number of any characters (e.g., Accounting Mailbox, Accounting Manager, etc.).
user_group?	Auto-discovers any mailbox display name that begins with user_group followed by any one character (e.g., user_groupA, user_group1, etc.).
[JT]im	Auto-discovers any mailbox display name that begins with J or T and ends with im (e.g., Jim, Tim).
[a-k]Lee	Auto-discovers any mailbox display name that begins with any character in the range of a through k inclusive and that ends with Lee (e.g., aLee, bLee, etc.)
[!ei]nsure	Auto-discovers any mailbox display name that ends with nsure but does not begin with e or i (e.g., unsure).
[!a-k]Lee	Auto-discovers any mailbox display name that does not begin with a through k and that ends with Lee (e.g., xLee, yLee, etc.).
[A-K]*	You can also use a combination of wildcards in a single expression, if the wildcards are supported for the type of operation you are performing. For example, if you wanted to auto-discover all mailbox display names beginning with any characters in the range of A through K inclusive followed by any number of any characters, you would enter the following wildcard combination.

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computes | <*Client*> | Exchange Mailbox Archiver.
- 2. Right-click the Archive set for which you want to discover mailboxes, and then click **Properties**.
- 3. Click the Auto Discover tab.
- 4. Select the Enable Auto Discover check box, and then click Database Affinity.
- 5. Click OK.
- 7. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <*Client*> | Archive Set.
- 8. Right-click the <Archive Set>, point to All Tasks, and then click New Subclient.
- 9. In the Subclient Name box, type a name.
- Click the Storage Device tab, in the Storage Policy box, select a Storage policy, and click OK.

Match mailboxes by regular expressions	
O Database Affinity	
O AD User Group Affinity	
OK Cancel	
OK	Help
Subclient Properties of	×
General Content Archiving Rules Pre/Post Process Storage Device Auto-discovery Activity Control En	Filters ryption Security
Add mailbox display name	
	Remove
Mail Box Display Names	Add

Properties of testArchiveset

General Auto Discover Security

Enable Auto Discover

- 11. Right-click the subclient, and then select **Properties**.
- 12. Click the Auto-discovery tab.
- 13. In the **Mail Box Display Names** box, type a regular expression or wildcard pattern to specify that newly discovered mailbox display names matching that pattern during auto-discovery will be assigned to this subclient. For a comprehensive wildcard list, see Wildcards.
- 14. Click Add. Repeat this step to enter additional wildcard patterns.
- 15. Click OK.
- 16. Click **OK** to return the subclient **Properties** dialog box.
- 17. Click OK.

DISABLING AUTOMATIC DISCOVERY

Automatic discovery of mailboxes can be disabled in scenarios where it is no longer desired for mailboxes to automatically be included in routine archives. When automatic discovery is disabled, all mailboxes must subsequently be manually assigned to a subclient.

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, right-click the *Archive set>* for which you want to disable auto-discovery of mailboxes, and then click **Properties**.
- 2. Click Auto Discover tab.
- 3. Clear the Enable Auto Discover option.
- 4. Click OK.



AUTOMATICALLY MANAGE MAILBOX GROUPINGS

By default, if a change is made to an automatically discovered mailbox that alters the association criteria it was discovered with, the next Archive will automatically reassign the mailbox to the appropriate subclient that satisfies the new criteria. For example, if a mailbox was assigned to a subclient based on its parent database and the mailbox is later moved to a different database, the next Archive will automatically move the mailbox to the subclient associated with the new database.

If a mailbox is manually assigned to a subclient, it is not rendered available for automatic grouping. However you can manually assign this mailbox to the blank subclient and during the subsequent data protection operation this mailbox gets automatically discovered and assigned to a relevant subclient.

In some cases, it may not be desirable for Archives to manage mailboxes in this manner. You can disable this functionality - or enable it again later if it has already been disabled - as follows:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, right-click the **Exchange Mailbox Archiver** client, and then click **Properties**.
- 2. Clear or check the Manage Content Automatically option.
- 3. Click OK.
- 4. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computes | <*Client*> | Exchange Mailbox Archiver.
- Right-click the *Archive set>* for which you want to discover mailboxes, and then click **Properties**.
- 6. Click the **Auto Discover** tab.
- Ensure that the Enable Auto Discover check box is selected together with either one of the following:
 - Active Directory User Group Affinity
 - Database Affinity
 - Match Mailbox by Regular Expressions

CONFIGURING ARCHIVE RULES

Archiving rules specify the criteria for the type of data to be archived. Messages that meet this criteria are rendered available for archiving if they satisfy any or all the archiving rules.

BASED ON MESSAGE PROPERTIES

You can set rules to archive messages based on the messages properties. All the messages matching with this criteria will be archived.

- From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> | Archive Set.
- 2. Right-click the **Subclient**, and then click **Properties**.
- 3. Select the Archiving Rules tab.

Exchange Mailbox Archi	
General Version Security Ac	tivity Control AD Server Customized Messages Storage Device
Client Name:	exproxy1x64
Billing Department	Not Defined/Not Defined
Agent Type:	Exchange Mailbox Archiver
Installed date:	Wednesday, June 15, 2011
Profile Name:	administrator
Mailbox Name:	administrator
Exchange administrator accou	nt: exch\administrator
	Change Account
Use CSVDE for Discovery	
Exchange Server Name:	E×2010-1
Exchange Version:	Exchange 2010
Recall items to Recovered	Items folder for Outlook
Recall items to Recovered	Items folder for Outlook Web Access
Manage Content Automatic	ally
	OK Cancel Help

- 4. Select the Enable all rules check box.
- 5. In the **Archive message after** box, type or select the number of days old that a message must be in order for the message to be archived.
- 6. In the **Archive message only if size is greater than** box, type or select the size a message must be of in order for the message to be archived
- 7. You can select one or more from the following options:
 - Select the **Leave Behind Message Body** check box if you do not want the body of the message to be removed during the stubbing process.
 - Select Archive messages with attachment only check box to archive the messages that have attachments.
 - Select **Use either Age or Size rule** check box check box to archive if either the Age or Size of the message/item matches the respective rule.
 - Select the Use Sent/Received time for Age rule check box.
 - $\circ~$ Select the Do not archive unread messages check box.
- 8. Click OK.



BASED ON DISK SPACE AND MAILBOX QUOTAS

You can set rules to archive based on a specified amount of used disk space on the database which hosts this mailbox. You can also establish a mailbox quota rule, which will archive messages when the mailbox has exceeded the specified threshold.

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <*Client*> | Archive Set.
- 2. Right-click the Subclient, and then click Properties.
- 3. Select the Archiving Rules tab.
- 4. Select the Enable all rules check box.
- 5. Click the WaterMark Rule tab.
- 6. Select the Used disk space check box.
 - $\circ~$ In the $\mbox{Archive if used disk space reaches}$ box, type or select the size of the disk volume.
- 7. Select the Mailbox Quotas check box.
 - In the Archive if size of mailbox reaches box, type or select the mailbox size high watermark value.
 - In the Stop archive when mailbox reaches box, type or select the mailbox size low watermark value.

Subclient Properties of default
Storage Device Auto-discovery Artivity Control Encryption Security General Content Archiving Rules Filters Pre/Post Process
C Enable all rules
Message Rule WaterMark Rule Stub Rule Attachment Filter PST
✓ Used disk space Archive if used disk space reaches 50 [±] / _− % of total volume.
Mailbox Quotas
Archive if size of mailbox reaches $60 \frac{2}{3} \%$ of assigned quota.
Stop archive when mailbox reaches $40\left[\frac{1}{3}\right]$ % of assigned quota.
OK Cancel Help

BASED ON STUBS

You can set rules to archive messages based on the stub properties. All the messages matching with this criteria will be archived.

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> | Archive Set.
- 2. Right-click the Subclient, and then click Properties.
- 3. Select the Archiving Rules tab.
- 4. Select the Enable all rules check box.
- 5. Click the Stub Rule tab.
- 6. Click **Preserve stubs until the media has been pruned** to allow stubs to exist in a mailbox or public folder until the media retention time has been met and data aging has been run.
- 7. In the **Prune stub only after** box, type or select the number of days after which the stubs should be pruned.
- 8. Select the **Do not create stub** check box if you do not want to have a stub to be created after archiving.
- Select the Embed the recall link into body to embed the recall link into the message body.

10. In the OWA server name box, type the URL and host name of the server that will perform the recall. For example: https://exchangeservername

ubclient Properties of default
Storage Device Auto-discovery Activity Control Encryption Security Seneral Content Archiving Rules Filters Pre/Post Process
Enable all rules
essage Rule WaterMark Rule Stub Rule Attachment Filter PST
Stub Management
Preserve stubs until the media has been pruned
O Prune stub only after 0 🖞 days
✓ Do not create stub
Embed the recall link into body
OWA server name:
OK Cancel Help

BASED ON ATTACHMENTS

You can include or exclude attachments from an archive operation. When attachment filters are specified, the age/size rules are ignored as archiving criteria for attachments of the specified type. When attachment filters are not specified, age/size rules will determine whether the attachments will be archived. Use the following steps to configure an attachment filter.

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to **Client Computers | <***Client>* **| Archive Set**.
- 2. Right-click the **Subclient**, and then click **Properties**.
- 3. Select the Archiving Rules tab.
- 4. Select the Enable all rules check box.
- 5. Click the Attachment Filter tab.
- 6. Click Add, double-click the file extension.
 - Click **Include** to include all the attachments with the selected extension in the Archive migration operation.
 - Click **Exclude** to exclude all the attachments with the selected extension in the Archive migration operation.
 - Click Close.
- 7. Click **OK**.

BASED ON PST FILES

Use the following steps to configure the archiving rules based on PST files.

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to **Client Computers | <***Client>* **| Archive Set**.
- 2. Right-click the **Subclient**, and then click **Properties**.
- 3. Select the Archiving Rules tab.
- 4. Select the Enable all rules check box.
- 5. Click the **PST** tab.
- 6. Select the Local PST location check box
- 7. Click Use Local Drive to use the local drive.
- 8. Click the Use the Network share to use the network location.
- 9. Click **Browse** to select the location.
- 10. Select the Manage PST Stubs
 - Click Copy PST stubs to mailbox
 - Click Move PST stubs to mailbox
 - Select the Create a separate parent folder for each PST
- 11. In the **Destination Folder Name in Mailbox** box, type the destination folder name.



Subclient Properties of aaaa 🛛 🔀
Storage Device Auto-discovery Activity Control Encryption Security General Content Archiving Rules Filters Pre/Post Process
Enable all rules
Message Rule WaterMark Rule Stub Rule Attachment Filte PST
Local PST location
Use Local Drive Use Network Share
Browse
Manage PST Stubs
Copy PST stubs to mailbox
O Move PST stubs to mailbox
Create a separate parent folder for each PST
Destination Folder Name in MailBox
OK Cancel Help

CONFIGURE END-USER MESSAGE RECOVERY

The Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent provides the facility for end-users to recover messages directly from Outlook or Outlook Web Access (OWA). When configured, a special icon, referred to as a stub, will appear in the message header indicating that the message has been archived. By double-clicking the message header, the user can recover the archived message back to their inbox.

There are two tasks required for this capability:

- Publish OFL forms for the Exchange Server to display the stub icons.
- Enable stubbing from the CommCell Console.

These are described below.

CONFIGURE OFL

CREATING OFL FOR EXCHANGE 2000/2003

- 1. From the Start menu open the Exchange System Manager and expand the folders node.
- 2. Right-click **Public Folders** tree and select **View System Folders** from the **Context** menu.
- 3. Right-click the EFORMS REGISTRY system folder and select New | Organizational Form.
- 4. Enter "DataArchiver Organizational Forms" as the name of the new Organization Form. Ensure that the Language field is set to English (USA).
- 5. Select Apply.
- 6. Click OK and exit the Exchange System Manager.

CREATING OFL FOR EXCHANGE 2007

- 1. Refer to the CreateOFL instructions (located in the <base> folder) for creating a custom Public Folder using the Exchange Management Shell.
- 2. Run the CreateOFL tool to create the OFL.
- 3. Publish the Forms.

CREATING OFL FOR EXCHANGE 2010

- 1. From the Start menu open the Exchange Management Console and expand the folders node.
- 2. Create a public folder (e.g., My Organizational Forms Library) for the organizational forms library Public Folder.
- 3. Use the ExFolders tool to add the PR_URL_NAME property to the organizational forms library as follows:

The **ExFolders** tool (ExFolders.exe) must exist in the <*Exchange_Installation_Path*>\V14\Bin directory. You can download the tool from one of the following locations:

- If you're running Exchange 2010 Service Pack 1 (SP1), see ExFolders tool (Compatible with Exchange 2010 SP1 version).
- If you're running the release to manufacturing (RTM) version of Exchange 2010, see ExFolders tool (Compatible with Exchange 2010 RTM version).

After the download it is recommended to read the READMe that is available together with the ExFolders.exe.

After the download, be sure to copy the ExFolders.exe file to the <Exchange_Installation_Path>\V14\Bin directory.

a. Navigate to the <<u>Exchange_Installation_Path</u>>\V14\Bin directory, and then double-click ExFolders.exe.You must run the ExFolders tool from an Exchange 2010 server. You can't run it from a workstation as you could with the PFDAVAdmin tool. To learn more about the ExFolders tool, see the Exchange Server Team Blog article Exchange, Meet ExFolders.

To perform this procedure, you must have administrative permissions to the public folders you're modifying. For more information, see Understanding Public Folder Permissions.

- b. In the ExFolders management console, navigate to File > Connect.
- c. In Connect, click Public Folders.
- d. Next to the Global Catalog box, click Select, and then select a global catalog server you want to use.
- e. Next to the **Database(s)** box, click **Select**, select the public folder database you want to use, and then click **OK**. A public folder hierarchy will appear in the **ExFolders** console tree.
- f. Expand System Folders, expand EFORMS REGISTRY, right-click the public folder you created for the organizational forms library, and then click Property Editor.

- g. On the **Property** menu, click **Add Property To View**.
- h. In Add Property To View, type 0x6707001E, and then click OK.
- i. Sort the Name column to find the PR_URL_NAME property you just added.
- j. Right-click **PR_URL_NAME**, and then click **Edit Value**.
- k. In the Value box, type /NON_IPM_SUBTREE/EFORMS REGISTRY, and then click OK.
- I. Close the **ExFolders** tool.
- 4. Use MAPI editor (Mfcmapi.exe) to add the PR_EFORMS_LOCALE_ID property to the organizational forms library. To perform this procedure, you must use the Microsoft Exchange Server MAPI Editor (MFCMAPI) tool on a computer that's running the 64-bit version of Microsoft Outlook 2010. To download MFCMAPI, see Microsoft Exchange Server MAPI Editor. For a list of locales, see languagecode Field.
 - a. Open MFCMAPI.
 - b. On the MDB menu, click Open Public Folder Store, and then click OK. The Public Folder Management Console appears.
 - c. In the console tree, expand **Public Root**, expand **NON_IPM_SUBTREE**, expand **EFORMS REGISTRY**, and then click the public folder that you created for the organizational forms library.
 - d. In the result pane, in the Property Name(s) column, click the PR_URL_NAME property.
 - e. On the Property Pane menu, click Modify 'Extra' Properties.
 - f. In Extra Properties, click Add.
 - g. In Property Tag Editor, click Select Property Tag.
 - h. In Property Selector, click PR_EFORMS_LOCALE_ID, and then click OK.
 - i. Click OK to close Property Tag Editor, and then click OK to close Extra Properties.
 - j. To verify that the property was added, in the Public Folder Management Console, locate the newly created **PR_EFORMS_LOCALE_ID** property in the **Property Name(s)** column. A red exclamation point (!) is displayed as its icon.
 - k. Double-click PR_EFORMS_LOCALE_ID to open Property Editor.
 - I. In the Unsigned Decimal box, type the desired locale ID, and then click OK. For example, type 1033 for English, 1040 for Italian, and so on.

For more information about determining the locale ID, see languagecode Field.

- m. Close MFCMAPI.
- 5. Edit the .oft files for the supported languages as described in Publish the Forms.
- 6. Create the configuration .ini file in the following format:

```
[FORMListToPublish]
Stub-Form = C:\Documents and Settings\administrator.SKY\Desktop\Base\Stub-ENU.oft
Cand-Form = C:\Documents and Settings\administrator.SKY\Desktop\Base\Cand-ENU.oft
LMCand-Form = C:\Documents and Settings\administrator.SKY\Desktop\Base\LMCand-ENU.oft
```

7. Publish the forms using the **DMEPublishForm** tool and the **Publish Manually using Config File** option. A search for an OFL that is configured with the same locale as Outlook on the local computer is performed. If an OFL is not found with that locale, it will publish to an English OFL if one exists.

PUBLISHING THE FORMS:

Follow the steps given below to publish the forms for the supported languages.

- 1. Navigate to the PublishForm tool and OFT forms available in the base folder and double-click the DMEPublishForm.exe.
- 2. Double-click publishform.exe
- 3. Click Publish.
- 4. The publish form program will prompt for a profile to use in order to publish the forms to the DataArchiver Organizational Forms (or previously existing OFL) folder.
 - The profile used to publish the forms must have owner privileges to that folder.
- 5. Close the publish form program.
- Follow the steps given below to publish the form for Exchange 2007 in any language other than the ones mentioned under supported languages:
- 1. Copy the following template forms from the resource pack:

- stub-ENU.oft: Form to show the stubs in English language.
- Cand-ENU.oft: Form to show the candidate messages in English language.
- LMCand-ENU.oft: Form to show the local migration candidates in English language.
- 2. Navigate to Tools in Microsoft Outlook inbox, select Forms.
- 3. Select Design a Form.
- 4. Select "User template in File System" in Look In from the dropdown list.
- 5. Translate the following string in the desired language:
 - In the Stub tab for stub-ENU.oft: "This message has been migrated by Bull Calypso. To recover the original message, please close this message, re-open it, and choose :Recover"(Bull Calypso Outlook Add-in required)
 - In the space provided for **Description** field in the **Properties** tab for **stub-ENU.oft**, **Cand-ENU.oft** and **LMCand-ENU.oft**: "This form is only used by migrated message(s). Please do not use it to create new message."

Follow the steps given below to publish the form for Exchange 2010 in any language other than the ones mentioned under supported languages:

- 1. Copy the following template forms from the resource pack:
 - stub-ENU.oft: Form to show the stubs in English language.
 - Cand-ENU.oft: Form to show the candidate messages in English language.
 - LMCand-ENU.oft: Form to show the local migration candidates in English language.
- 2. Navigate to File in Microsoft Outlook inbox, select Options
- 3. Select Customize Ribbon.
- 4. Enable the Developer tab and select Design a Form.
- 5. Select "User template in File System" in Look In from the dropdown list.
- 6. Translate the following string in the desired language:
 - In the Stub tab for stub-ENU.oft:
 "This message has been migrated by Bull Calypso. To recover the original message, please close this message, re-open it, and choose :Recover"(Bull Calypso Outlook Add-in required)
 - In the space provided for Description field in the Properties tab for stub-ENU.oft, Cand-ENU.oft and LMCand-ENU.oft: "This form is only used by migrated message(s). Please do not use it to create new message."

See Resource Pack for more information on the Resource Pack.

ENABLE STUBBING

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to **Client Computers | <***Client>* **| Archive Set**.
- 2. Right-click the Subclient, and then click Properties.
- 3. Select the Archiving Rules tab.
- 4. Select the Enable all rules check box.
- 5. Clear the **Do Not Create Stub** check box.
- 6. Click **OK**.

Storage Device Auto-discovery	Activity		Encryption	Security
General Content Archiving	g Rules	Filters	Pre/Post	Process
Enable all rule Message Rule WaterMark Rule Stub Rule Stub Management O Preserve stubs until the media has b O Prune stub only after O not create stub O not create stub			T	
OWA server name:				

CONFIGURE RECOVERY FROM MOBILE DEVICES

The Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent provides a **Universal Stub** option to recall messages from any mobile device and is supported for Exchange Server 2007 or higher. When this feature is enabled, a hyperlink is embedded into the message's body during the stubbing phase. An end-user with access to their Outlook application, OWA, or any email-ready mobile device can recover this stubbed message by clicking the message, which will be automatically recalled into the

user's Recovered Items folder.

In order for Universal Stub recall to work, .NET 3.5 should be installed on the computer which has OWA Proxy Enabler installed.

- 1. From the Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent's **Subclient Properties** dialog box, navigate to the **Archiving Rules | Stub Rules** tab and select the **Embed the recall link into body** option.
- 2. Enter the URL and host name of the server that will perform the recall in the **OWA Server Name** field. For example:

https://exchange07

3. Click **OK**.



CONFIGURE RECALLS TO RECOVERED ITEMS FOLDERS

You can specify whether messages or items recalled from Outlook should be placed in the Recovered Items folder. When this option is enabled, data will be recalled to the Recovered Items folder. When disabled, data will be recalled to the original folder from which the data was archived.

OUTLOOK APPLICATION

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> |
- 2. Right-click the **Exchange Mailbox Archiver**, and then click **Properties**.
- 3. Select the Recall items to Recovered Items folder for Outlook check box.
- 4. Click **OK**.



OUTLOOK WEB ACCESS (OWA)

You can specify whether messages or items recalled from Outlook Web Access (OWA) should be placed in the Recovered Items folder. When selected, data will be recalled to the Recovered Items folder. When disabled, data will be recalled to the original folder from which the data was archived.

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> |
- 2. Right-click the Exchange Mailbox Archiver, and then click Properties.
- Select the Recall items to Recovered Items folder for Outlook Web Access check box.
- 4. Click **OK**.

General Version Security Ac	tivity Control	AD Server	Customized Messages	Storage Device
Client Name:	exproxy1x64			
Billing Department	Not Defined/1	lot Defined		
Agent Type:	Exchange Ma	lbox Archive	r	
Installed date:	Wednesday,	June 15, 20	11	
Profile Name:	administrator			
Mailbox Name:	administrator			
Exchange administrator accou	nt: exch\adm	inistrator		
				Change Account
Use CSVDE for Discovery				
Exchange Server Name:	E×2010-1			
Exchange Version:	Exchange	2010 🔽		
Recall items to Recovered	Items folder f	or Outlook		
Recall items to Recovered	Items folder f	or Outlook W	/eb Access	
Manage Content Automatic	ally			

PREVENT MESSAGES FROM BEING RECALLED MULTIPLE TIMES

If messages are recalled multiple times, the size of the mailbox begins to increase with unnecessary duplicate copies of the recalled messages. In such cases, the space saving benefit of message archiving become compromised over time.

If you would like to prevent messages from being recalled multiple times, you can configure Outlook clients to hide the Recovered Items folder (discussed in the above sections) while maintaining a cache of message stubs that is hidden from users. Message stubs are placed in this cache and remain viewable in the folder from which they were archived.

If a message recall is triggered, the software will first check the cache to determine if the message was previously recalled. Based on this, one of the following will take place:

- If the message had not been recalled, it will be recalled from the media and placed in the hidden cache. The message stub will remain in the original location.
- If the message had been recalled previously, the message will not be recalled again from the media. Rather, the copy of the previously recalled message will automatically be opened from the hidden cache.

This capability is not supported on Exchange 2003 clients.

Perform the following to configure this capability:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, right-click the client computer that has Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent installed.
- 2. Click Properties.
- 3. Select Registry Key Settings.
- 4. Click Add.
- 5. Enter nUseCache in the Name field.
- 6. Enter MSExchangeDMAgent in the Location field.
- 7. From the **Type** list, select DWORD.
- 8. Enter 1 to enable this feature.
- 9. Click OK.

SPECIFY A CACHE SIZE

By default, the hidden cache will be pruned during the next archive operation once the number of cached items reaches 100. This can be modified as follows:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, right-click the client computer that has Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent installed.
- 2. Click Properties.
- 3. Select Registry Key Settings.
- 4. Click Add.
- 5. Enter nCacheSize in the Name field.
- 6. Enter MSExchangeDMAgent in the Location field.

🍝 Add Reg	istry Key on Windows Client drone9
Name	nCacheSize
Location	MSExchangeDMAgent 👻
Туре	REG_DWORD
Value	1060
	OK Cancel Help

Add Registry Key on Windows Client drone9
Name
IUseCache
Location
MSExchangeDMAgent
Value
1
OK
Cancel
Help

- 7. From the **Type** list, select DWORD.
- 8. Enter the maximum number of items to hold in the hidden cache.
- 9. Click OK.

CONFIGURE RECALL STATUS MESSAGES

You can customize the messages that will be displayed during stub recovery operations from Outlook Add-In.

FOR RECALLS FROM DISK LIBRARY

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> |
- 2. Right-click the Exchange Mailbox Archiver, and then click Properties.
- 3. Select the Customized Messages tab.
- 4. Under **Recover is in progress (disk library)**, type the desired status message to be displayed in outlook during a stub recovery operation from a disk library.
- 5. Click OK.



FOR RECALLS FROM TAPE LIBRARY

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> |
- 2. Right-click the Exchange Mailbox Archiver, and then click Properties.
- 3. Select the Customized Messages tab.
- 4. Under **Recover is in progress (tape library)**, type the desired status message to be displayed during a stub recovery operation from a tape library.
- 5. Click OK.



FOR RECALLS WHEN MEDIA IS OUTSIDE THE LIBRARY

When a recall is performed and the media is outside the library, you can configure an event to be displayed in the Event Viewer indicating this, as well as a Media Handling Request alert. This capability is useful for immediately notifying an administrator that the media is not available and the recall is pending the media's availability.

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> |
- 2. Right-click the Exchange Mailbox Archiver, and then click Properties.
- 3. Select the **Customized Messages** tab.
- Under Error message when media is outside the library, type the desired status message to be displayed when a stub recovery operation is attempted for media outside the designated library..
- 5. Click OK.

General Ver	sion Security Activity Control AD Server Customized Messages storage Device	
	n progress (disk library).	
Your file is c	urrently being recalled from remote storage.	
Recover is in	n progress (tape library).	
Varue file in a		
	urrently being recalled from remote storage and the process may take several minutes to hank-you for your patience.	
complete. 1		
complete. 1 Error messa Your reques	hank-you for your patience.	5
complete. 1 Error messa Your reques	hank-you for your patience. ge when media is outside the library. t has been cancelled because the file is currently stored in offline media. A restore reque	5

CONFIGURE OFFLINE ARCHIVING

In cases where internet connectivity is not available (such as using a laptop on an airplane), it may be desirable for users to still have the facility to recall archived messages. This can be accomplished by configuring Outlook to retain a copy of the archived message in a local cache on the client computer.

By default IPM.Note message types qualify for Offline Archiving and other message class types such as IPM.Post, IPM.Task etc are stubbed during the archiving operation.

Use the following steps to enable offline archive operations on this subclient to allow Outlook Add-In users the capability of retaining a full copy of archived items in local cache on the Outlook client.

ENABLE OFFLINE ARCHIVING

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> | Exchange Mailbox Archiver | < Archive Set >.
- 2. Right-click the Subclient, and then click Properties.
- 3. Select the **Offline Archive** check box.
- 4. Click **OK**.

	Subclient Properties of	lefault	
Billing Department Not Defined Agent Type: Exchange Malbox Archiver Subclent name: ofsub © Offline Archive Note: This is a default subclent.			
	Client Name: Billing Department Agent Type: Subclient name: © Offline Archive Note: This is a default subclient	exproxy1x64 Not Defined/Not Defined Exchange Malbox Archiver ofsub	

SPECIFY OFFLINE ARCHIVE CANDIDATE PERIOD

You can specify the number of days after which a message will become a candidate for offline archiving as follows:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, right-click the client computer that has Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent installed.
- 2. Click Properties.
- 3. Select Registry Key Settings.
- 4. Click Add.
- 5. Enter nOfflineArchivingTimeout in the Name field.
- 6. Enter MSExchangeDMAgent in the Location field.
- 7. From the **Type** list, select DWORD.
- 8. Enter the number of days after which a message will be marked for offline archiving.
- 9. Click **OK**.



CONFIGURE ARCHIVES OF PST FILES

In a typical organization, end-users' personal folders (*.PST files) reside on their local hard drives, network shares or a combination of both. Since PST files can only be archived from either a local drive of the Exchange Server or a network share connected to the Exchange Server, the PST files need to be collected from various places and moved to the appropriate centralized location for archiving. After the PST files have been moved to a centralized location, they can be then archived to secondary storage by the Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent.

There are four steps required to configure archives of PST files:

- 1. Ensure Outlook is installed on the computer hosting the PST files.
- 2. Match PST File Locations with the Exchange Server Directories
- 3. Configure the Exchange Server for PST Archiving
- 4. Configure the PST Files to be Archived

MATCH PST FILE LOCATIONS WITH THE EXCHANGE SERVER DIRECTORIES

Prior to archiving PST files, you must ensure the folders in which the PST files reside follow the same hierarchical structure as Exchange MAPI directory names. You can determine the MAPI directory name and container(s) as follows:

1. Run the following command string from a prompt to export the user list to a file:

csvde -1 "DN,legacyExchangeDN" -r "msExchHomeServerName=*/cn=your_exchange_servername" -f your_output_filename.csv

2. Look for the legacyExchangeDN field to find out the directory name and container(s). For example:

MAPI DN: o=org/ou=orgunit/cn/Recipients/cn=user

(in this example, the PST file folder name would be: user)

MAPI DN: o=org/ou=orgunit/cn/Recipients/cn=user)

(in this example, the PST file folder would consist of 2 levels, the first folder called us, the sub-folder called user, such as us\user)

If the PST file location does not match the directory structure, create the structure in the location in which the PST files will reside.

If any of the directory names or container names contain one or more of following characters:

*?<>/\:|%

then they need to be converted into format of %XX (where XX is the hex code of the character).

CONFIGURE THE EXCHANGE SERVER FOR PST ARCHIVING

- 1. Ensure a shared location is available on the Exchange Server. Configure permissions so that the user whom will be running this tool has write access. This will be the location where the PST files are copied (if applicable) and the PSTDiscoveryGUI.exe will be run after the discovery process is complete.
- 2. Get the latest version of the PSTDiscovery Tool from the Resource Pack. Copy this folder to a shared location that is accessible by all remote clients that will be running the tool.
- 3. Configure the pst.ini file within the PSTDiscovery Folder:

SCANPATH

Use this parameter to specify one or more paths to the drives you wish to scan. If left blank all drives will be scanned. Multiple drives are delimited by a semicolon.

COPY

Specifies whether to copy the PST files from the remote clients to the shared location on the Exchange Server. Valid values are "y" or "n". If "n" is specified, PST files will be scanned into the database but not copied to the shared location. If "y" is specified, all scanned PST files will be copied to the shared location.

DELETE

Specifies whether to delete the source PST files once they have been copied to the shared location. Valid values are "y" or "n".

SIZE

Specifies the minimum size (in KB) that a PST file must be in order to be scanned and/or copied to the shared location.

MTIME

Specifies the time in days since the PST file was last modified. Only PSTs older than this value will be scanned and/or copied to the shared location.

LATIME

Specifies the time in days since the PST file was last accessed. Only PSTs that have not been accessed since this time will be scanned and/or copied to the

shared location.

MEETALL

Specifies whether the **SIZE**, **MTIME** and **LATIME** criteria must all be met in order for the PST file to be scanned and/or copied to the shared location. Valid values are "y" or "n". If "y" is specified, the PST must meet all three conditions of **SIZE**, **MTIME** and **LATIME** for it to be scanned and/or copied to the shared location. If "n" is specified, the PST only has to meet one of the three conditions in order to be scanned and/or copied to the shared location.

Sample pst.ini configuration file:

SCANPATH="C:\;D:\" COPY=y DELETE=n SIZE=10 MTIME=180 LATIME=180 MEETALL=n

Save any changes you have made to this configuration file.

- 4. On the client where the PsExec utility has been copied, create a file called "clients.txt" containing the list of clients that the PSTDiscovery Tool will be run against.
- 5. Using the following syntax, run the PSTDiscovery Tool.

> PsExec.exe @C:\clients.txt -u username -p password \\Client\PSTDiscovery\PSTDiscovery.exe"\\ExchangeClient \SharedPSTLocation"

Where the username and password specified have execute permissions on the PSTDiscovery share, and write permissions to the shared location on the Exchange client. An example of this syntax is provided in PSTDiscovery.bat in the PSTDiscovery folder from the Resource Pack.

- 6. This procedure can also be scheduled for periodic scanning of the remote clients.
- 7. Once the scan and/or copy phase of the PSTDiscovery utility are completed, a database file will be created in the shared location containing information on all PST files that have been scanned and/or copied.

CONFIGURE THE PST FILES TO BE ARCHIVED

1. Open PSTDiscoveryGui.exe on the Exchange Server that has the specified shared location. In this PSTDiscovery Tool, two fields must be configured before you continue.

Status Database

Click to specify the local path of the database file created in the previous step. This will populate the display pane with information on all of the PST files that have been scanned and/or copied.

Staging Path

Click to specify the local path that you would like to use as a staging area to prepare PST files for archiving.

The following information will be displayed on the screen:

Machine Name

Displays the source client name from which the PST was copied.

Orig-Path

Displays the original path of the PST file.

Net-Path (Local Path)

Displays the current local path of the PST file.

Size

Displays the size of the PST file in KB.

Mailbox Alias

Displays the alias of the mailbox this PST file was created from. To change the value, double-click on the field and enter a new alias. By default this value will be blank.

File Owner

Displays the current ownership of the PST file. To change the value, double-click on the field and enter a new owner.

Status

Displays the current status of the PST file. COPIED, DISCOVERED, MARKED FOR MIGRATION, and MIGRATED are some of the possible values. To change a value, double-click on the field and select a new value from the list.

File Time

Displays the last Modified Date of the PST File.

Discover Time

Displays the time of the scan operation that discovered the PST file.

- 2. If PST files have been added to this shared location since the last time a scan was run, the **Local Scan** button at the bottom of the tool can be used to scan the current folder location to import more PST files into the database which will then be displayed in the tool.
- 3. In order to prepare the PST files for archiving, the Mailbox Alias field must be manually edited. For each PST file double-click on this field and specify the alias associated with the PST file.
- 4. Once the Mailbox Alias field has been manually edited, choose the PSTs you wish to prepare for Archiving. For each of the desired PST files, change the value in the **Status** column to Mark for Migration.
- 5. Once you have selected all of the desired PST files, click **Stage** and the tool will prepare all the designated PST files for Archiving. Once preparation has completed, a pop-up window will display the number of PST files that are now ready for archiving.

CONFIGURING ARCHIVES OF DISABLED MAILBOXES

By default, the Mailboxes whose user accounts are disabled from the Active Directory are not archived. To include them in the archive operation, follow the steps given below:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers.
- Right-click the <*Client*> in which you want to add the registry key, and then click Properties.
- 3. Click the Registry Key Settings tab.
- 4. Click Add.
- 5. Enter nBackupDisabledMailBoxes in the Name field.
- 6. Enter MSExchangeDMAgentin the Location filed.
- 7. Enter REG_DWORD in the **Type** filed.
- 8. Enter 1 in the **Value** field.
- 9. Click OK.



CONFIGURE ARCHIVES OF NEWER MESSAGES FIRST

You can configure archive operations to archive the newest messages first. This process cycles through each folder and determines the most recent messages in the folder, which are then included in the archive operation.

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, right-click the client computer that has Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent installed.
- 2. Click Properties.
- 3. Select Registry Key Settings.
- 4. Click Add.
- 5. Enter nNewestFirst in the Name field.
- 6. Enter MSExchangeDMAgent in the Location field.
- 7. From the **Type** list, select DWORD.
- 8. Enter 1 to archive the newer messages first.
- 9. Click OK.

CUSTOMIZE OUTLOOK FOR END-USERS

Several options are available to customize the display and behavior of archived messages in Outlook. These capabilities are described in the following sections.

SPECIFY A NEW LOCATION FOR THE RECOVERED ITEMS FOLDER

You can specify a new folder name for the Recovered Items folder. This configuration is required on both the computer where the Exchange Archiver Agent is

🍰 Add Reg	gistry Key on Windows Client drone9
Name	nNewestFirst
Location	MSExchangeDMAgent 🗸
Туре	[REG_DWORD V]
Value	1
	OK Cancel Help

installed as well as all computers containing the Outlook Add-In.

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, right-click the client computer that has Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent installed.
- 2. Click Properties.
- 3. Select Registry Key Settings.
- 4. Click Add.
- 5. Enter RecoveredItemsFolderName in the Name field.
- 6. Enter MSExchangeDMAgent in the Location field.
- 7. Enter REG_DWORD in the Type filed.
- 8. Enter the new folder name in the Value field.
- 9. Click OK.



DISPLAY ATTACHMENT LISTS IN AN ARCHIVED MESSAGE BODY

You can save the list of attachments for a message in the message body in addition to the Migrated Attachment List.txt file as follows:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, right-click the client computer that has Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent installed.
- 2. Click Properties.
- 3. Select Registry Key Settings.
- 4. Click Add.
- 5. Enter nShowMsgAttachList in the Name field.
- 6. Enter MSExchangeDMAgent in the Location field.
- 7. From the **Type** list, select DWORD.
- 8. Enter 1 to display the list of attachments in the message body.
- 9. Click OK.

約 Add Reg	istry Key on Windows Client drone9
Name	nShowMsgAttachList
Location	MSExchangeDMAgent 🗸
Туре	REG_DWORD
Value	1
	OK Cancel Help

CONFIGURE CREATION OF CUSTOM FOLDERS FOR MAILBOXES

If you have folders specified in the **Folder Inclusion** section of the subclient properties **Content** tab, you can configure this folder to be created for all user's mailboxes as follows:

- From the CommCell Browser, right-click the client computer that has Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent installed.
- 2. Click Properties.
- 3. Select Registry Key Settings.
- 4. Click Add.
- 5. Enter ManagedFolders in the Name field.
- 6. Enter MSExchangeDMAgent in the Location field.
- 7. From the **Type** list, select DWORD.
- 8. Enter 1 to display the list of attachments in the message body.
- 9. Click OK.

Name	ManagedFolders
Location	MSExchangeDMAgent 🗸
Туре	REG_DWORD
Value	1
	OK Cancel Help

🛃 Add Registry Key on Windows Client, drone

CUSTOMIZE SUBJECT LINE TEXT FOR ARCHIVED MESSAGES

You can add custom text to the subject line of archived messages for Outlook and OWA users. Note that this capability is not available for messages archived using Offline Archiving.

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, right-click the client computer that has Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent installed.
- 2. Click Properties.
- 3. Select Registry Key Settings.
- 4. Click Add.

- 5. Enter StubIdentifier in the Name field.
- 6. Enter MSExchangeDMAgent in the Location field.
- 7. From the **Type** list, select REG_SZ.
- 8. Enter the text you would like to display in the subject line of archived messages.
- 9. Click OK.

🛓 Add Reg	gistry Key on Windows Client drone9
Name	StubIdentifier
Location	MSExchangeDMAgent 🗸
Туре	REG_SZ 👻
Value	<text></text>
	OK Cancel Help

x

•

•

Help

👙 Add Registry Key on Windows Client drone9

nRecoveredItemsDelAge

OK

Cancel

MSExchangeDMAgen

REG_DWORD

5

Name

Туре

Value

Location

DELETE MESSAGES FROM RECOVERED ITEMS FOLDER AFTER A SPECIFIED TIME

To help reduce mailbox sizes, you can configure messages in the Recovered Items folder to be deleted after a specified period of time as follows:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, right-click the client computer that has Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent installed.
- 2. Click Properties.
- 3. Select Registry Key Settings.
- 4. Click Add.
- 5. Enter nRecoveredItemsDelAge in the Name field.
- 6. Enter MSExchangeDMAgent in the Location field.
- 7. From the **Type** list, select REG_SZ.
- 8. Enter the number of days in which messages will be kept in the Recovered Items folder.
- 9. Click **OK**.

EXCLUDE EXCHANGE INTERPERSONAL MESSAGE (IPM) CLASSES FROM ARCHIVES

You can exclude certain Exchange IPM classes, such as tasks, calendar and contacts from archiving to save space on the Archive media as well as enhance archiving performance. For example to exclude IPM.Appointment, IPM.Contact, IPM.Schedule and IPM.Task the steps are as follows:

Using Registry Editor incorrectly can cause serious problems that may require a reinstall of the operating system. Microsoft does not guarantee that problems resulting from the incorrect use of Registry Editor can be solved. Use Registry Editor at your own risk. You must also understand how to restore the registry if a problem occurs.

1. Open Registry Editor and create the following registry key:

HKEY LOCAL MACHINE\SOFTWARE\COMPANY Systems\Galaxy\Instance<xxx>\MSExchangeDMAgent

- 2. Create the following String Value subkey:
- MigrationExclusionList
- 3. Enter IPM. < class_type >

Where *class_type* can be one of the following: POST, APPOINTMENT, TASK, CONTACT, ACTIVITY, DISTLIST, or any other user-defined IPM class. However, only classes that start with "IPM." are excluded. The *<class_type>* field accepts wildcards (for example, IPM.TASK.*).

4. Close the Registry Editor.

The IPM.NOTE class cannot be excluded, because this represents mail messages.

CONFIGURING FOR OPTIMIZED STUB RECALL

EXTEND THE PERSISTENT PIPELINE TIMEOUT

It is recommended to leave the persistent pipeline open for longer periods of time to cache important information for subsequent recall attempts. By default this timeout is set to 24 hours.

1. From the CommCell Browser, right-click the client computer that has Exchange

Mailbox Archiver Agent installed. 🖆 Add Registry Key on Windows Client drones Name nDMRSIDLETIMEOUT 3. Select Registry Key Settings. Location EventManager Туре REG_DWORD 5. Enter nDMRSIDLETIMEOUT in the Name field. Value 120 6. Enter EventManager in the Location field. From the **Type** list, select REG_DWORD. OK Cancel Help Enter the number of seconds after which the pipeline will close. The valid range is 0

9. Click OK.

7.

8.

2. Click Properties.

4. Click Add.

Once this key is activated, services must be restarted on the client computer.

LIMIT THE NUMBER OF PERSISTENT PIPELINE THREADS DURING RECOVERIES

You can increase the number of persistent pipeline threads allowed for recoveries, thereby potentially improving stub recall speed. The recommended number of threads would be the number of Media Agents, which could possibly be used for recoveries. By default two threads will be used. Therefore if more than two Media Agents are potential targets for stub recalls increase the number of threads accordingly as follows:

- From the CommCell Browser, right-click the client computer that has Exchange 1. Mailbox Archiver Agent installed.
- 2. Click Properties.
- 3. Select Registry Key Settings.

to 2147483647 seconds.

- 4. Click Add.
- 5. Enter nDMRMaxRestoreThreads in the Name field.
- 6. Enter EventManager in the Location field.
- From the Type list, select REG_DWORD.
- Enter the number of persistent pipelines to be allowed. 8.
- 9. Click OK

Once this key is activated, services must be restarted on the client computer.

ENHANCE THE STUB RECALL SPEED

By default during each stub recall operation a check is run to verify if the original data has been erased from the media. In case the Erase Data feature is not enabled on the CommServe you can create the nDMRSSkipEraseCheck key to skip the erase check and enhance the recall speed.

- From the CommCell Browser, right-click the client computer that has Exchange 1. Mailbox Archiver Agent installed.
- 2. Click Properties.
- 3. Select Registry Key Settings.
- 4. Click Add.
- 5. Enter nDMRSSkipEraseCheck in the Name field.
- 6. Enter EventManager in the Location field.
- 7. From the Type list, select REG_DWORD.
- 8. Enter 1 to disable Erase Check.
- 9. Click OK.

Once this key is activated, services must be restarted on the client computer.

STUB RECALL FROM ANY AVAILABLE DATA COPY

By default if the primary copy of the data is unavailable the stub recall will fail. However you can configure to trigger stub recall from an alternate data copy as follows:

- 1. In the Comcell Browser double-click the Control Panel.
- 2. Click the Browse/Search/Recovery option.
- 3. Select the Automatically switch copy to read data from any copy option.

約 Add Reg	gistry Key on Windows Client drone9
Name	nDMRSSkipEraseCheck
Location	EventManager 🗸
Туре	[REG_DWORD
Value	1
	OK Cancel Help

🍰 Add Registry Key on Windows Client drone9

nDMRMaxRestoreThreads

EventManager

REG DWORD

2

Name

Туре

Value

Location

x

•

×

•

OK Cancel Help

4. Click **Ok**.



ENHANCING ARCHIVE AND RECOVERY PERFORMANCE

Several options are available for streamlining archive and recovery operations. Benefits include faster archive and recovery speed, reduced network bandwidth usage, and end-user computer resources. These options are described in the following sections.

OPTIMIZE ARCHIVING SPEED

By default, the Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent cycles through each message in a mailbox to determine if the archiving rules have been met, which may cause certain archive operations to take a considerable amount of time to complete. The Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent can be configured to take advantage of Exchange's own message cataloging to increase archiving speed as follows:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, right-click the client computer that has Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent installed.
- 2. Click Properties.
- 3. Select Registry Key Settings.
- 4. Click Add.
- 5. Enter OptimizeArchiver in the Name field.
- 6. Enter MSExchangeDMAgent in the Location field.
- 7. From the **Type** list, select REG_DWORD.
- 8. Enter 1 to enable the key.
- 9. Click **OK**.

💪 Add Reg	gistry Key on Windows Client drone9
Name	OptimizeArchiver
Location	MSExchangeDMAgent 🗸
Туре	REG_DWORD -
Value	1
	OK Cancel Help

CONFIGURE STUB RECALL TIMEOUT

By default, stub recalls will time out if the recall is not successfully processed within 2 minutes (such as cases where the media is not loaded within that time). You can extend this timeout value up to 10 minutes by configuring the following registry key. This key must be configured as follows:

- If a proxy computer is used, this key is configured on the server containing the OWA Proxy Enabler as well as the Outlook client.
- If a proxy computer is not used, this key is configured only on the Outlook client.
- 1. From the CommCell Browser, right-click the client computer as described above.
- 2. Click Properties.
- 3. Select Registry Key Settings.
- 4. Click Add.
- 5. Enter SocketTimeout in the Name field.
- 6. Enter MSExchangeDMAgent in the Location field.
- 7. From the **Type** list, select REG_DWORD.
- 8. Enter the number of seconds after which the recall will time out. The valid range is 120-600 seconds.
- 9. Click OK.

🖆 Add Reg	jistry Key on Windows Client drone9 🛛 🛛 🔁
Name	SocketTimeout
Location	MSExchangeDMAgent 🗸
Туре	REG_DWORD
Value	600
	OK Cancel Help

ENHANCING MAILBOX DISCOVERY USING CSVDE FILTER

A Comma Separated Value Directory Exchange (CSVDE) filtering option is provided to increase performance for auto-discovery operations in cases where the discovery process may take a long time to complete.

A CSVDE filtering example is provided below, which will filter out system mailboxes residing on the SERVERNAME server from discovery operations for these agents:

"(&(msExchHomeServerName=*/cn=SERVERNAME)(!(CN=SystemMailbox{*)))"

Use of this option requires expert-level knowledge of CSVDE, which is a Microsoft tool used for extracting and filtering information from Active Directory. Familiarity with constructing LDAP queries is beneficial for successful filtering. Incorrect use of the CSVDE filtering option can result in failed discovery and data protection operations. For more information on CSVDE, refer to documentation from Microsoft Corporation.

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, right-click the **Exchange Mailbox Archiver** client, and then click **Properties**.
- 2. Select the **Use CSVDE For Discovery** checkbox, and then specify the desired CSVDE filter in the **Use CSVDE for Discovery** box.
- 3. Click OK.

The next time a discovery operation is run, the user-specified CSVDE filter will be used.



SPECIFYING DOMAIN INFORMATION

It may be necessary to specify additional domain names for Archives in the following circumstances:

- The Exchange Server is installed in a different domain from the schema master.
- Multiple domain controllers exist that may not replicate to each other.

To ensure complete protection in these circumstances, perform the following.

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, right-click the **Exchange Mailbox Archiver** client, and then click **Properties**.
- 2. Click the AD Server tab.
- 3. To include a domain name, click Add.
- 4. In the AD Server box, type the domain name. You can enter an IP address or the fully-qualified domain name of the Active Directory Server. Depending on the circumstances discussed above, the domains to include should be:
 - The schema master, or
 - Each domain controller in your environment
- 5. Click OK. The domain name will appear in the AD Server List.
- 6. Repeat the previous step for each domain name that you wish to include.
- 7. Click OK.



CONFIGURING MAILBOXES IN DATABASE AVAILABILITY GROUP (DAG) SERVERS

When archiving Exchange 2010 Database Availability Group (DAG) servers, you need to configure the Mailbox and Client Access Server (CAS) roles as described below.

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, right-click the Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent and click **Properties**.
- In Exchange Server Name, enter the Mailbox server role. This role is used when performing archive and recovery operations. If more than one role is entered, separate them with semi-colons.
- 3. Click **OK**.

General Version Security	y Activity Control AD Server Storage Device
Client Name:	ex2010-1
Billing Department	Not Defined/Not Defined
iDataAgent:	Exchange Maibox
Installed date:	Tuesday, February 22, 2011
Profile Name:	administrator
Mailbox Name:	administrator
	account: EXCH\administrator
Backup Deleted Item	Change Account
	Change Account
Backup Deleted Item	Change Account
Backup Deleted Item	Change Account

CONFIGURING MAILBOXES WHEN THE CAS ROLE IS NOT INSTALLED ON THE MAILBOX ROLE SERVER

In addition to the steps above, the following steps are required if the CAS Role is not installed on the Mailbox Role Server.

- 4. From the CommCell Browser, right-click the client computer that has Exchange Mailbox *i*DataAgent installed.
- 5. Click Properties.
- 6. Select Registry Key Settings.
- 7. Click Add.
- 8. Enter sCASServerName in the Name field.
- 9. Enter MSExchangeDMAgent in the Location field.
- 10. From the **Type** list, select REG_SZ.
- 11. Enter a CAS server name (e.g., Ex2010CASR2) in the Value field. The CAS server is used to create the profile.
- 12. Click OK.



FILTERING SUBCLIENTS

Use one of the following methods to filter mailboxes from being archived. Filters assist in minimizing usage of protected storage and prevents unnecessary folders (Junk, Spam) from being archived.

EXCLUDE SPECIFIC MAILBOXES

By default, the system creates a **Do Not Archive** subclient. You can assign mailboxes to this subclient so that they will not be archived.

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <*Client*> | Archive Set.
- 2. Right-click the **Subclient**, and then click **Properties**.
- 3. Click the **Content** tab.
- 4. Click Configure.
- 5. Click **Discover** to reveal all mailboxes.
- 6. Under the Subclient column, select Do Not Archive.

Alternatively, you can click the desired mailbox, and select **Do Not Archive** from the **Change all selected mailboxes to** box.

7. Click **OK**.

8. Click **OK**.

Display Name	Alias Name	SMTP Address	Subclient
Caridad Darsie	CaDarsie	CaDarsie@exch.co	default
Carolann Donohue	CaDonohue	CaDonohue@exch.c.	Do Not Archive
Caryn Fosdyke	CaFosdyke	CaFosdyke@TEST.C.	Do Not Migrate
AlbertinA Angell	AlAngell	AlAngell@exch.com	. default
athrine Dunlap	CaDunlap	CaDunlap@.test1.c.	. default
Bpar user1	3par1	3par1@exch.commv.	Do Not Migrate
hang Moel	ChMoel	ChMoel@exch.com	Do Not Migrate

FILTER MAILBOXES USING REGULAR EXPRESSIONS

You can also apply regular expressions or wildcards patterns to filter folders in mailboxes from data protection. For example, you may want to exclude all Sent Items folders that are not essential for recovery. The pattern you enter will be applied to all content defined for the subclient.

WILDCARD EXAMPLES

EXAMPLE	DESCRIPTION
Sent*	To filter out a folder which begins with Sent , specify the name of the folder and the asterisk * wildcard with no delimiters.
Sent Items\test*	To filter out a subfolder called test , specify the full path including the leader \ backslash.
\test	To filter out any path that ends in a folder name, use the full path including the leader \ backslash and the asterisk * wildcard for the first level.

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <*Client*> | Archive Set.
- 2. Right-click the Subclient, and then click Properties.
- 3. Click the **Filters** tab.
- 4. Click Add next to Exclude the folders that contain the following patterns.
- Type the regular expressions or wildcard patterns, each on a separate line. For a comprehensive wildcard list, see Wildcards.
- 6. Click OK.
- 7. Click **OK**.



FILTER SPECIFIC FOLDERS

- From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> | Archive Set.
- 2. Right-click the **Subclient**, and then click **Properties**.
- 3. Click the **Filters** tab.
- 4. Click Add next to Exclude the following folders.
- 5. Select the desired mailbox user, and expand the folders to select the folders that you want to exclude from archive operation, and then click **Add**.

6. Click **OK**.



INCLUDE SPECIFIC FOLDERS

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <*Client*> | Archive Set.
- 2. Right-click the Subclient, and then click Properties.
- 3. Click the **Content** tab.
- 4. In the Only archive following folders box, type or select the folder name.
- 5. Click OK.

Subclient Prope	rties of default				
Pre/Post Process General	Storane Device Content	Auto-discovery	Activity Control Archiving Rules		Security ters
Contents of subclient Display Name	:: Alias N	ame	SMTP Addre	55	×
AlbertinA Angell	AlAngel		AlAngell@excl	h.commvault.com	
Total: 2 mailbox(es).				Configu	Jre
Ĩ.	g folders (separated b		folders in the mailbox	will not be archive	ed)
	ckup using mining off s	snapshot			
Exchange	DB client				
Agents					
Instance					
-	t				
Instance Backupse	t DB subclient to use				
Instance Backupse Exchange					
Instance Backupse Exchange	DB subclient to use				

ADD UNASSOCIATED MAILBOXES TO THE DEFAULT SUBCLIENT

By default, mailboxes not included in a user-defined subclient are not automatically included in archive operations. However, you can configure the default subclient to include any discovered mailbox not included in another subclient as follows:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> | Archive Set.
- 2. Right-click the Subclient, and then click Properties.
- 3. Click the Auto-discovery tab.
- 4. Select the Automatically add new mailboxes that do not qualify for membership in any of the subclients check box.
- 5. Click **OK**.

Subclient Proper	ties of default				×
General Pre/Post Process	Content Storage Device	Auto-discovery	Archiving Rules Activity Control	Encryption	Filters Security
Automatically add	d new mailboxes that (do not qualify for memb	ership in any of the sub	oclients	
			ОК	Cancel	Help

MODIFYING AN AGENT, ARCHIVE SET, OR SUBCLIENT

There are several configurable properties available for your agent that can be modified from the agent, archiveset or subclient level as per your need.

It is recommended that that you do not modify the properties of a subclient when a job is in progress for that specific subclient. If a job is in progress, either wait for the job to complete or kill the job from the Job Controller.

The following table describes the properties that can be configured from the agent, archive set and subclient levels.

OPTION	DESCRIPTION	RELATED TOPICS
Change the Profile Name	By default if the profile name is changed in the Exchange server it is not reflected in the Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent. However the profile name can be manually changed for the archiver agent as follows:	
	1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computes <i>Client></i>.	
	2. Right-click the Exchange Mailbox Archiver, and then click Properties.	
	3. In the Profile Name box, type the profile name.	
	4. Click OK.	
Change the Mailbox Name	By default if the Mailbox name is changed in the Exchange server it is not reflected in the Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent. However the Mailbox name can be manually changed for the archiver agent as follows:	
	1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computes <<i>Client</i>>.	
	2. Right-click the Exchange Mailbox Archiver , and then click Properties .	
	3. In the Mailbox Name box, type the mailbox name.	
	4. Click OK.	
Change the Exchange Server Name	You can modify the name of the Exchange Server that is installed on the client computer. However, the Exchange server name should not be the same as Client or Host Name.	
	1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computes <i>Client></i> .	
	2. Right-click the Exchange Mailbox Archiver , and then click Properties .	
	3. In the Exchange Server Name box, type the Exchange Server name.	
	4. Click OK.	
Change the Exchange Version	You can select and modify the version of the Exchange Server from the list.	
	You can modify the name of the Exchange Server that is installed on the client computer. However, the Exchange server name should not be the same as Client or Host Name.	
	1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computes <i>Client></i> .	
	2. Right-click the Exchange Mailbox Archiver , and then click Properties .	
	3. In the Exchange Version list, select the Exchange server version.	
	4. Click OK .	
Change User Account Details	You must have Exchange administrator privileges to access the Exchange Server and perform Archive and restore operations.	
	In the case of Archive and restore operations from the CommCell Console, the user credentials to access the Exchange Server are provided initially when you installed the Agent. You can modify the user credentials from CommCell Console.	
	On Windows clients, use <domain>\<administrator_name></administrator_name></domain>	
	To change the Exchange administrator account information associated with this agent:	
	1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computes <i>Client></i> .	
	2. Right-click the Exchange Mailbox Archiver , and then click Properties .	
	3. Click Change Account.	
	4. In Exchange Administrator Account box type the Account name.	
	5. In the Password box, type Password	
	6. In the Confirm Password box, type the password again.	
	7. Click OK .	
Rename Archive Set and	You can rename a Archive set and subclient:	
Subclient	Renaming Archive sets:	
	From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computes <client> Exchange Mailbox Archiver.</client>	
	 Right-click the Archive set, and then click Properties. 	

I		1
	4. Click OK .	
	Renaming subclients:	
	 From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computes <client> Exchange Mailbox Archiver.</client> 	
	2. Right-click the Subclient , and then click Properties .	
	3. In the Subclient name box, type the subclient name.	
	4. Click OK	
Change Storage Policies	You can modify the storage policies in any of the following situations: To include a different media for the backup operation. 	Refer to Storage Policies.
	 To use a storage policy with a different retention criteria. 	
	You can change the storage policies from the subclient level.	
	1. From the CommCell Browser, right-click the subclient.	
	2. Click Properties .	
	3. Click Storage Device.	
	4. Select the Storage policy from the drop-down menu.	
	5. Click OK .	
Data Transfer Options	You can efficiently configure the available resources for transferring data secured by data protection operations from the subclient level. This includes the following:	Refer to Data Compression and Network Bandwidth Throttling.
	 Enable or disable Data Compression either on the client or the MediaAgent. Configure the transfer of data in the network using the options for Network Bandwidth Throttling and Network Agents. 	
	You can configure the data transfer options.	
	1. From the CommCell Browser, right-click the subclient.	
	2. Click Properties.	
	3. Click Storage Device.	
	4. Click Data Transfer Option tab.	
	5. Choose the appropriate software compression option for this subclient.	
	6. Select Throttle Network Bandwidth and set the required bandwidth.	
	7. Click OK.	
View Data Paths	You can view the data paths associated with the primary storage policy copy of the selected storage policy or incremental storage policy. You can also modify the data paths including their priority from the subclient level.	
	1. From the CommCell browser, right-click the subclient.	
	2. Click Properties.	
	3. Click Storage Device.	
	4. Select Storage Policy from the drop-down menu.	
	5. Click Data Paths .	
Configure a Subclient for Pre/Post Processing of	You can add, modify or view Pre/Post processes for the subclient. These are batch files or shell scripts that you can run before or after certain job phases.	Refer to Pre/Post Processes.
Data Protection	 From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computes <client> Exchange Mailbox Archiver Archive set.</client> 	
	2. Right-click the Subclient , and then click Properties .	
	3. Click the Pre/Post Process tab.	
	 Click one of the following phases and type the full path of the process that you want to execute during that phase. Alternatively, click Browse to locate the process (applicable only for paths that do not contain any spaces). 	
	• Pre-Archive	
	• Post-Archive	
	5. Click OK .	
	6. Select Run Post archive Process for all attempts to run a post archive process for all attempts.	
	7. For subclients on Windows platforms, Run As displays Not Selected .	
	If you want to change the account that has permission to run these commands, click Change .	
	a. In the User Account dialog box, select Use Local System Account, or select	

	b. If you selected Local System Account, click OK to the message advising you that commands using this account have rights to access all data on the client computer.	
Configure Activity Control	You can enable backup and restore operations from the agent and subclient level. However, you can enable restore operations only from the agent level.	Refer to Activity Control.
	1. From the CommCell browser, right-click the subclient.	
	2. Click Properties.	
	3. Click Activity Control , select or clear option(s) as desired.	
	4. Click OK .	
Configure User Security	You can configure user security from the agent or subclient level.	Refer to User Administration
	You can perform the following functions:	and Security.
	 Identify the user groups to which this CommCell object is associated. Associate this object with a user group.	
	 Disassociate this object from a user group. 	
	1. From the CommCell browser, right-click the subclient.	
	2. Click Properties.	
	3. Click Security.	
	 Select the appropriate user groups to which you want to associate to the CommCell object from the Available Groups pane, and then move the user group to the Associated Groups pane. 	
	5. Click OK .	
Enable/Disable Data Encryption	You can enable data encryption from the suclient level.Encryption must be enabled at the client level prior to configuring any instances residing on that client.	Refer to Data Encryption.
	1. From the CommCell browser, right-click the subclient.	
	2. Click Properties.	
	3. Click Encryption.	
	4. Select the desired encryption.	
	5. Click OK .	
/iew Software Version	The Version tab, at the Agent level displays the software version of the component.	
	1. From the CommCell browser, right-click the agent.	
	2. Click Properties.	
	3. Click Version.	
	4. Click OK .	
CommCell Configuration Report	The CommCell Configuration Report provides the properties of the CommServe, MediaAgents, clients, agents, SRM agents, subclients, and storage policies within the CommCell based on the selected filter criteria.	Refer to CommCell Configuration.
	1. From the CommCell browser, click Reports icon.	
	2. Select CommCell Configuration.	
	3. Click Run.	

DELETING AN AGENT, ARCHIVESET OR SUBCLIENT

The following sections describe the steps involved in deleting an agent, Archive set or subclient.

When you delete an instance or archiveset, the associated data is logically deleted and you can no longer access the corresponding data from CommCell Console for recovery purposes.

Refer to the troubleshooting article on Recovering Data Associated with Deleted Clients and Storage Policies for information on how to recover data if you accidentally delete an entity.

DELETING AN AGENT

You need to uninstall or deconfigure the agent software from the client computer before deleting from CommCell Browser. After you delete the client software, you can either leave the corresponding data intact for appropriate action or you can remove the data immediately. If you choose to remove the data immediately, you must delete the agent from the CommCell Browser. If you delete the agent, all of the agent's data is irretrievably lost.

- You cannot delete an agent while operations for that agent are running.
- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to **Client Computers | < Client>**.
- 2. Right-click the *Agent*, and then click **Delete**.
- 3. A confirmation message is displayed with the following message:

This operation will permanently delete the data backed up from this level and it cannot be restored.

4. Click **OK** to continue with the deletion operation., or click **No** to abort the deletion.

DELETING AN ARCHIVESET

Consider the following before deleting a Archive Set:

- You cannot delete a default Archive Set.
- Schedules associated with the Archive Set are also automatically deleted.
- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | < Client> | < Exchange Mailbox Archiver>.
- 2. Right-click the <Archive Set>, Point to All Tasks, and then click Delete.
- 3. A confirmation message is displayed, asking if you want to delete the Archive Set.

Click No to cancel the deletion and retain the Archive, or click Yes to continue the deletion.

DELETING A SUBCLIENT

Consider the following before deleting a subclient:

- You cannot delete a default subclient.
- Schedules associated with the subclient are also automatically deleted.
- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <*Client*> | <*Exchange Mailbox Archiver>* | <*Archive Set>*.
- 2. Right-click the *<subclient>* that you want to delete, and then click **Delete**.
- 3. A confirmation message is displayed, asking if you want to delete the subclient.

Click No to cancel the deletion and retain the subclient, or click Yes to continue the deletion.

Advanced Archive – Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Scheduling an Archive Job

Running a Backup to Protect Stubs

Managing Jobs Restarting Jobs

Controlling Jobs

Additional Options

SCHEDULING AN ARCHIVE JOB

- From the CommCell Console, navigate to <*Client*> | Exchange Mailbox Archiver
 - Right-click the **Subclient** and click **Archive**

2. • Click Schedule

• Click Configure

RELATED TOPICS

Scheduling

Provides comprehensive information on scheduling jobs.

Job Management

Provides comprehensive information on managing jobs.



Archive Options for Subclient: default	×
Job Initiation	
Job Initiation	
Immediate	
Run this job now	
Schedule	
Configure Schedule Pattern Configure	
Cancel Advanced 🚱 Save As Script He	IP

3.	Select Schedule	Options.	For example:
<u> </u>	Sciect Sciecula	options.	i or example.

- Click Weekly
- Check the days you want the run the archive job
- Change the Start Time to 9:00 PM
- Click **OK** to close the Schedule Details dialog box
- Click **OK** to close the Archive Options dialog box

The archive job will execute as per the schedule

					_
Schedule Details					
Schedule Name					
 One Time Daily Weekly Monthly 	Start Time	9:00PM *			
() Yearly	On these days	 ✓ Monday ✓ Thursday ✓ Sunday 	✓ Tuesday ➡ Friday	Vednesday	
			Cancel	Help Ontions	>>

RUNNING A BACKUP TO PROTECT STUBS

The stubs of the archived data can be protected by running a full backup. Any backups other than a full backup (incremental, differential, etc.) will not protect stubs; as such, full backups must be used to provide stub protection.

Follow the steps given below:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <*Client*> | Exchange Mailbox | defaultBackupSet.
- 2. In the right pane right-click the new **Subclient** and click **Backup**.
- 3. Select **Full** as backup type and **Immediate** to run the job immediately.
- 4. Click OK.
- 5. You can track the progress of the job from the **Job Controller** window of the CommCell console.
- 6. Once job is complete, view the details of job from the **Backup History**.
- 7. Right-click the Subclient and select Backup History.
- 8. Click **OK**.



MANAGING JOBS

The following sections provide information on the various options available for job management.

RESTARTING JOBS

Jobs that fail to complete successfully are automatically restarted based on the job restartability configuration set in the Control Panel. Keep in mind that changes made to this configuration will affect all jobs in the entire CommCell.

To Configure the job restartability for a specific job, you can modify the retry settings for the job. This will override the setting in the Control Panel. It is also possible to override the default CommServe configuration for individual jobs by configuring retry settings when initiating the job. This configuration, however, will apply only to the specific job.

Backup jobs for this Agent are resumed from the point-of-failure.

CONFIGURE JOB RESTARTABILITY AT THE COMMSERVE LEVEL

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, click **Control Panel** icon.
- 2. Select Job Management.
- 3. Click **Job Restarts** tab and select a **Job Type**.
 - Select Restartable to make the job restartable.
 - Change the value for **Max Restarts** to change the maximum number of times the Job Manager will try to restart a job.
 - Change the value for **Restart Interval (Mins)** to change the time interval between attempts for the Job Manager to restart the job.
- 4. Click OK.



CONFIGURE JOB RESTARTABILITY FOR AN INDIVIDUAL JOB

- 1. From the CommCell Console, navigate to *Client>* | **Exchange Mailbox Archiver**.
- 2. Right-click the **Subclient** and select **Archive**.
- 3. Click Advanced.
- 4. In the Advanced Archive Options dialog box, click the Job Retry tab.
- 5. Select **Enable Total Running Time** and specify the maximum elapsed time before a job can be restarted or killed.

Select **Kill Running Jobs When Total Running Time Expires** to kill the job after reaching the maximum elapsed time.

- 6. Select Enable Number Of Retries and specify the number of retries.
- 7. Click **OK**.



CONTROLLING JOBS

The following controls are available for running jobs in the Job Controller window:

SUSPEND	Temporarily stops a job. A suspended job is not terminated; it can be restarted at a later time.		
	Resumes a job and returns the status to Waiting, Pending, Queued, or Running. The status depends on the availability of resources, the state of the Operation Windows, or the Activity Control setting.		
KILL	Terminates a job.		

SUSPENDING A JOB

- 1. From the Job Controller of the CommCell Console, right-click the job and select **Suspend**.
- 2. The job status may change to Suspend Pending for a few moments while the operation completes. The job status then changes to Suspended.

RESUMING A JOB

- 1. From the Job Controller of the CommCell Console, right-click the job and select Resume.
- 2. As the Job Manager attempts to restart the job, the job status changes to Waiting, Pending, or Running.

KILLING A JOB

- 1. From the Job Controller of the CommCell Console, right-click the job and select Kill.
- Click Yes when the confirmation prompt appears if you are sure you want to kill the job. The job status may change to Kill Pending for a few moments while the operation completes. Once completed, the job status will change to Killed and it will be removed from the Job Controller window after five minutes.

ADDITIONAL OPTIONS

Several additional options are available to further refine your archive operations. The following table describes these options, as well as the steps for configuring them.

Be sure to read the overview material referenced for each feature prior to using them.

OPTION	DESCRIPTION	RELATED TOPICS
Create New Index	The Create New Index option generates an index of the data whenever an archive operation is run. During the restore process, the index is used for quick access to the appropriate archive file. 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <client> iDataAgent Backup Set.</client>	Refer to Index.
	2. Right-click the Subclient and click Archive .	
	3. From the Archive Options window, click Advanced.	
	4. Select Data.	
	5. Select the Create new index check box.	
	6. Click OK .	
Catalog	Use the Catalog options to select index cache sharing and granular restartability options for the job. Note that these options are not applicable for the disaster recovery data protection.	2
	1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <client> iDataAgent Backup Set.</client>	
	2. Right-click the Subclient and click Archive .	
	3. From the Archive Options window, click Advanced.	
	4. Select Data and choose one of the following:	
	 Use shared profile if present with transaction logging if you wish to use the shared index cache profile of the MediaAgent (if configured) to save a copy of the job's index cache for index cache sharing with transaction logging feature for granular job restartability. 	
	 Use shared profile if present without transaction logging if you wish to use the shared index cache profile of the MediaAgent (if configured) to save a copy of the index cache for index cache sharing <i>without</i> transaction logging feature for granular job restartability. This is not a recommended configuration. 	<
	 Use transaction logging to use transaction logging feature to provide granular job restartability (without using shared profile for index cache sharing). 	
	 None to use neither shared profile nor transaction logging. 	
	5. Click OK .	
Startup Options	The Job Manager will use the startup priority setting when allocating the required resources. This is useful if you have jobs that are very important and must complete, or jobs that can be moved to a lower priority.	Refer to Job Priority and Priority Precedence.

Backu 2. Right- 3. From 1 4. Select 5. Select priorit 6. Select Contro 7. Click C Job Retry Options The Job Re specify the number of 1. From 1 Backu 2. Right- 3. From 1 4. Select 5. Select minute 6. Select Job Ma 7. Select when 8. Click C Start New Media The Start M This media resides. 1. From 1 8. Click C Mark Media Full Mark Media Full The Mark M Completion media. 1. From 1 8. Click C Mark Media Full	Default Priority. You can select Change Priority for a job, between 0 (highest y) and 999 (lowest priority). Start up in suspended State to specify the selected job to start in the Job offer in a suspended state. SK. Try option helps in configuring the retry behavior of the archive jobs. You can maximum elapsed time before a job can be restarted or killed and the maximum restart attempts. the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <client> iDataAgent ip Set. click the Subclient and click Archive. the Archive Options window, click Advanced. Job Retry. Enable Total Running Time and specify the maximum elapsed time in hours and es. Number Of Retries and specify the number of retries. Based on this number, the anager attempts to restart the job. Kill Running Jobs When Total Running Time Expires. The job will be killed the job is still in running status even after reaching the maximum elapsed time.</client>	Refer to Job Management.
3. From 1 4. Select 5. Select priorit 6. Select Contro 7. Click C Job Retry Options The Job Re specify the number of 1. From 1 8. Select 5. Select minute 6. Select 5. Select minute 6. Select 10 Mark Media Full Mark Media Full The Mark Media Full 1. From 1 8. Click C Mark Media Full The Mark Media F	the Archive Options window, click Advanced. Startup. Default Priority. You can select Change Priority for a job, between 0 (highest y) and 999 (lowest priority). Start up in suspended State to specify the selected job to start in the Job iller in a suspended State. NK. Try option helps in configuring the retry behavior of the archive jobs. You can maximum elapsed time before a job can be restarted or killed and the maximum restart attempts. the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <client> iDataAgent ip Set. Click the Subclient and click Archive. the Archive Options window, click Advanced. Job Retry. Enable Total Running Time and specify the maximum elapsed time in hours and as. Number Of Retries and specify the number of retries. Based on this number, the anger attempts to restart the job. Kill Running Jobs When Total Running Time Expires. The job will be killed the job is still in running status even after reaching the maximum elapsed time. NK. ew Media option helps in starting the archive operation on a new media. management feature provides a degree of control over where the data physically the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <client> iDataAgent ip Set. click the Subclient and click Archive.</client></client>	
4. Select 5. Select priorit 6. Select Contro 7. Click (Job Retry Options The Job Re specify the number of 1. From 1 Backu 2. Right- 3. From 1 4. Select 5. Select minutu 6. Select Job Ma 7. Select when 8. Click (Start New Media The Start N This media resides. 1. From 1 4. Select Job Ma 7. Select Mark Media Full The Mark M completion media. 1. From 1 4. Select 5. Select 5. Select 6. Click (Mark Media Full The Mark M completion media. 1. From 1 4. Select 5. Select 5. Select 6. Click (Mark Media Full The Mark M completion media. 1. From 1 4. Select 5. Select 6. Click (Mark Media Full The Mark M completion media. 1. From 1 Backu 2. Right- 3. From 1	Startup. Default Priority. You can select Change Priority for a job, between 0 (highest y) and 999 (lowest priority). Start up in suspended State to specify the selected job to start in the Job iller in a suspended state. DK. Try option helps in configuring the retry behavior of the archive jobs. You can maximum elapsed time before a job can be restarted or killed and the maximum restart attempts. the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <client> iDataAgent ip Set. click the Subclient and click Archive. the Archive Options window, click Advanced. Job Retry. Enable Total Running Time and specify the maximum elapsed time in hours and as. Number Of Retries and specify the number of retries. Based on this number, the anager attempts to restart the job. Kill Running Jobs When Total Running Time Expires. The job will be killed the job is still in running status even after reaching the maximum elapsed time. K. ew Media option helps in starting the archive operation on a new media. management feature provides a degree of control over where the data physically the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <client> iDataAgent ip Set. click the Subclient and click Archive.</client></client>	
5. Select priorit 6. Select Contro 7. Click (Job Retry Options Job Retry Options I. From 1 Backu 2. Right- 3. From 1 4. Select 5. Select minutu 6. Select Job Ma 7. Select When 8. Click (Start New Media The Start N This media resides. 1. From 1 8. Click (Start New Media Mark Media Full The Mark M Completion media. 1. From 1 4. Select 5. Select 5. Select 6. Click (Mark Media Full	Default Priority. You can select Change Priority for a job, between 0 (highest y) and 999 (lowest priority). Start up in suspended State to specify the selected job to start in the Job iller in a suspended state. OK. Try option helps in configuring the retry behavior of the archive jobs. You can maximum elapsed time before a job can be restarted or killed and the maximum restart attempts. The CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers < <i>Client</i> > <i>i</i> DataAgent p Set. Click the Subclient and click Archive. The Archive Options window, click Advanced. Job Retry. Enable Total Running Time and specify the maximum elapsed time in hours and as. Number Of Retries and specify the number of retries. Based on this number, the anager attempts to restart the job. Kill Running Jobs When Total Running Time Expires. The job will be killed the job is still in running status even after reaching the maximum elapsed time. OK. Whether Media option helps in starting the archive operation on a new media. management feature provides a degree of control over where the data physically the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers < <i>Client</i> > <i>i</i> DataAgent p Set. click the Subclient and click Archive.	
Job Retry Options The Job Respecify the number of 1. From 1 3. From 1 4. Select 5. Select minute 6. Select 5. Select 1. From 1 4. Select 5. Select 1. From 1 8. Click (5. Select 5. Select 1. From 1 8. Click (5. Select 5. Select 6. Click (5. Select 5. Select 6. Click (5. Select 6. Click (7. Select 6. Click (7. Select 7. Sele	 y) and 999 (lowest priority). Start up in suspended State to specify the selected job to start in the Job offer in a suspended state. bK. try option helps in configuring the retry behavior of the archive jobs. You can maximum elapsed time before a job can be restarted or killed and the maximum restart attempts. the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <client> iDataAgent ip Set.</client> click the Subclient and click Archive. the Archive Options window, click Advanced. Job Retry. Enable Total Running Time and specify the maximum elapsed time in hours and ss. Number Of Retries and specify the number of retries. Based on this number, the anager attempts to restart the job. Kill Running Jobs When Total Running Time Expires. The job will be killed the job is still in running status even after reaching the maximum elapsed time. bK. ew Media option helps in starting the archive operation on a new media. management feature provides a degree of control over where the data physically the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <client> iDataAgent ip Set.</client> click the Subclient and click Archive. 	
Control 7. Click (Job Retry Options The Job Respecify the number of 1. From 1 8. Right- 3. From 1 4. Select 5. Select minute 6. Select Job Ma 7. Select When 8. Click (Start New Media The Start N This media resides. 1. From 1 8. Click (2. Right- 3. From 1 8. Select 5. Select 1. From 1 8. Click (Mark Media Full The Mark M completion media. 1. From 1 8. Select 5. Select 6. Click (Mark Media Full The Mark M Completion media. 1. From 1 8. Select 5. Select 6. Click (1. From 1 8. Select 5. Select 5. Select 6. Click (8. Select 7. Sel	Aller in a suspended state. DK. Try option helps in configuring the retry behavior of the archive jobs. You can maximum elapsed time before a job can be restarted or killed and the maximum restart attempts. The CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <i>Client></i> <i>i</i> DataAgent typ Set. Click the Subclient and click Archive. The Archive Options window, click Advanced. Job Retry. Enable Total Running Time and specify the maximum elapsed time in hours and as. Number Of Retries and specify the number of retries. Based on this number, the anager attempts to restart the job. Kill Running Jobs When Total Running Time Expires. The job will be killed the job is still in running status even after reaching the maximum elapsed time. DK. ew Media option helps in starting the archive operation on a new media. management feature provides a degree of control over where the data physically the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <i>Client></i> <i>i</i> DataAgent <i>ip</i> Set. click the Subclient and click Archive.	
Job Retry Options The Job Respecify the number of 1. From 1 Backu 2. Right- 3. From 1 4. Select 5. Select 10b Ma 7. Select 10b Ma 10b Ma	<pre>try option helps in configuring the retry behavior of the archive jobs. You can maximum elapsed time before a job can be restarted or killed and the maximum restart attempts. the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <client> iDataAgent ip Set. click the Subclient and click Archive. the Archive Options window, click Advanced. Job Retry. Enable Total Running Time and specify the maximum elapsed time in hours and es. Number Of Retries and specify the number of retries. Based on this number, the anager attempts to restart the job. Kill Running Jobs When Total Running Time Expires. The job will be killed the job is still in running status even after reaching the maximum elapsed time. DK. ew Media option helps in starting the archive operation on a new media. management feature provides a degree of control over where the data physically the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <client> iDataAgent ip Set. click the Subclient and click Archive.</client></client></pre>	
specify the number of 1. From 1 Backu 2. Right- 3. From 1 4. Select 5. Select minuta 6. Select Job Ma 7. Select When 8. Click (Start New Media The Start N This media resides. 1. From 1 Backu 2. Right- 3. From 1 4. Select 5. Select 6. Click (Mark Media Full The Mark M completion media. 1. From 1 Backu 2. Right- 3. From 1 Backu	<pre>maximum elapsed time before a job can be restarted or killed and the maximum restart attempts. the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <client> iDataAgent ip Set. click the Subclient and click Archive. the Archive Options window, click Advanced. Job Retry. Enable Total Running Time and specify the maximum elapsed time in hours and as. Number Of Retries and specify the number of retries. Based on this number, the anager attempts to restart the job. Kill Running Jobs When Total Running Time Expires. The job will be killed the job is still in running status even after reaching the maximum elapsed time. DK. ew Media option helps in starting the archive operation on a new media. management feature provides a degree of control over where the data physically the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <client> iDataAgent ip Set. click the Subclient and click Archive.</client></client></pre>	
Backu 2. Right- 3. From 1 4. Select 5. Select minute 6. Select Job Ma 7. Select when 8. Click (Start New Media The Start N This media resides. 1. From 1 Backu 2. Right- 3. From 1 4. Select 5. Select 6. Click (Mark Media Full The Mark M completion media. 1. From 1 Backu 2. Right- 3. From 1 Backu 2. Right- 3. From 1 Backu 2. Right- 3. From 1 Backu	<pre>p Set. click the Subclient and click Archive. che Archive Options window, click Advanced. Job Retry. Enable Total Running Time and specify the maximum elapsed time in hours and as. Number Of Retries and specify the number of retries. Based on this number, the anager attempts to restart the job. Kill Running Jobs When Total Running Time Expires. The job will be killed the job is still in running status even after reaching the maximum elapsed time. OK. ew Media option helps in starting the archive operation on a new media. management feature provides a degree of control over where the data physically the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <client> iDataAgent ip Set. click the Subclient and click Archive.</client></pre>	Refer to Start New Media.
3. From 1 4. Select 5. Select minute 6. Select Job Ma 7. Select when 8. Click (5. Start New Media The Start N This media resides. 1. From 1 Backu 2. Right- 3. From 1 4. Select 5. Select 6. Click (Mark Media Full The Mark M completion media. 1. From 1 Backu 2. Right- 3. From 1 Backu 3. From 1 Backu 4. Select 5. Select 6. Click (Mark Media Full The Mark M completion media. 1. From 1 Backu 2. Right- 3. From 1 Backu 2. Right- 3. From 1	the Archive Options window, click Advanced. Job Retry. Enable Total Running Time and specify the maximum elapsed time in hours and as. Number Of Retries and specify the number of retries. Based on this number, the anager attempts to restart the job. Kill Running Jobs When Total Running Time Expires. The job will be killed the job is still in running status even after reaching the maximum elapsed time. DK. ew Media option helps in starting the archive operation on a new media. management feature provides a degree of control over where the data physically the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <client> iDataAgent p Set. click the Subclient and click Archive.</client>	Refer to Start New Media.
4. Select 5. Select minute 6. Select Job Ma 7. Select when 8. Click C Start New Media The Start N This media resides. 1. From 1 Backu 2. Right- 3. From 1 4. Select 5. Select 6. Click C Mark Media Full The Mark M completion media. 1. From 1 8. Click C 8. Cli	Job Retry. Enable Total Running Time and specify the maximum elapsed time in hours and es. Number Of Retries and specify the number of retries. Based on this number, the anager attempts to restart the job. Kill Running Jobs When Total Running Time Expires. The job will be killed the job is still in running status even after reaching the maximum elapsed time. DK. ew Media option helps in starting the archive operation on a new media. management feature provides a degree of control over where the data physically the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers < <i>Client</i> > <i>i</i> DataAgent to Set. click the Subclient and click Archive.	Refer to Start New Media.
4. Select 5. Select minute 6. Select Job Ma 7. Select when 8. Click C Start New Media The Start N This media resides. 1. From 1 Backu 2. Right- 3. From 1 4. Select 5. Select 6. Click C Mark Media Full The Mark M completion media. 1. From 1 8. Click C 8. Cli	Job Retry. Enable Total Running Time and specify the maximum elapsed time in hours and es. Number Of Retries and specify the number of retries. Based on this number, the anager attempts to restart the job. Kill Running Jobs When Total Running Time Expires. The job will be killed the job is still in running status even after reaching the maximum elapsed time. DK. ew Media option helps in starting the archive operation on a new media. management feature provides a degree of control over where the data physically the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers < <i>Client</i> > <i>i</i> DataAgent to Set. click the Subclient and click Archive.	Refer to Start New Media.
5. Select minute 6. Select Job Ma 7. Select when 8. Click C Start New Media The Start N This media resides. 1. From 1 8. Select 3. From 1 4. Select 5. Select 6. Click C Mark Media Full The Mark M completion media. 1. From 1 8. Select 5. Select 5. Select 6. Click C 7. Select 7. Select 7	Enable Total Running Time and specify the maximum elapsed time in hours and es. Number Of Retries and specify the number of retries. Based on this number, the anager attempts to restart the job. Kill Running Jobs When Total Running Time Expires. The job will be killed the job is still in running status even after reaching the maximum elapsed time. NK. We Media option helps in starting the archive operation on a new media. management feature provides a degree of control over where the data physically the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers < <i>Client</i> > <i>i</i> DataAgent tip Set. click the Subclient and click Archive.	Refer to Start New Media.
6. Select Job Ma 7. Select when 8. Click (Start New Media The Start N This media resides. 1. From 1 8 acku 2. Right- 3. From 1 4. Select 5. Select 6. Click (Mark Media Full The Mark M completion media. 1. From 1 8 acku 2. Right- 3. From 1 8 acku 2. Right- 3. From 1 8 acku 3. From 1 8 acku	Number Of Retries and specify the number of retries. Based on this number, the anager attempts to restart the job. Kill Running Jobs When Total Running Time Expires. The job will be killed the job is still in running status even after reaching the maximum elapsed time. OK. ew Media option helps in starting the archive operation on a new media. management feature provides a degree of control over where the data physically the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <client> iDataAgent tip Set. click the Subclient and click Archive.</client>	Refer to Start New Media.
Mark Media Full Mark Media Full Mark Jeffer Mark Jeffe	the job is still in running status even after reaching the maximum elapsed time. DK. ew Media option helps in starting the archive operation on a new media. management feature provides a degree of control over where the data physically the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <<i>Client</i>> <i>i</i>DataAgent ap Set. click the Subclient and click Archive.	Refer to Start New Media.
Start New Media The Start N This media This media resides. 1. 1. From 1 Backu 2. 2. Right- 3. From 1 4. Select 5. Select 6. Click C Mark Media Full The Mark M completion media. 1. From 1 Backu 2. 2. Right- 3. From 1	ew Media option helps in starting the archive operation on a new media. management feature provides a degree of control over where the data physically the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <<i>Client</i>> <i>i</i>DataAgent up Set. click the Subclient and click Archive.	Refer to Start New Media.
This media resides. 1. From 1 Backu 2. Right- 3. From 1 4. Select 5. Select 6. Click C Mark Media Full The Mark M completion media. 1. From 1 Backu 2. Right- 3. From 1	management feature provides a degree of control over where the data physically the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers < <i>Client</i> > <i>i</i> DataAgent up Set.	Refer to Start New Media.
resides. 1. From 1 Backu 2. Right- 3. From 1 4. Select 5. Select 6. Click (Mark Media Full The Mark M completion media. 1. From 1 Backu 2. Right- 3. From 1	the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <i><client></client></i> <i>i</i>DataAgent ip Set. click the Subclient and click Archive.	
Mark Media Full Backu Right- Right- Right- Backu Right- B	up Set. click the Subclient and click Archive.	
3. From 1 4. Select 5. Select 6. Click (Mark Media Full The Mark M completion media. 1. From 1 Backu 2. Right- 3. From 1		
4. Select 5. Select 6. Click C Mark Media Full The Mark M completion media. 1. From t Backu 2. Right- 3. From t	the Archive Options window, click Advanced.	
5. Select 6. Click (Mark Media Full The Mark M completion media. 1. From t Backu 2. Right- 3. From t		
5. Select 6. Click (Mark Media Full The Mark M completion media. 1. From t Backu 2. Right- 3. From t	Media	
6. Click C Mark Media Full The Mark M completion media. 1. From 1 Backu 2. Right- 3. From 1	Start New Media.	
Mark Media Full The Mark M completion media. 1. From 1 Backu 2. Right- 3. From 1		
 From 1. From 1. Backu Right- From 1. From 1. Fr	ledia Full on Success option marks the Media as Full, 2 minutes after the successful of the archive. This feature prevents any other data being written to the same	Refer to Export Media.
2. Right- 3. From t	the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <client> iDataAgent p Set.</client>	
3. From	click the Subclient and click Archive .	
	the Archive Options window, click Advanced.	
4. 56/66	•	
5 Soloct	Mark Media Full on Success.	
Use Media Set schedule po	Other Schedules To Use Media Set option allows jobs that are part of the schedule or plicy and using the specific storage policy to start a new media. It also prevents	Refer to Creating an Exportable Media Set.
1. From	rom writing to the same set of media. the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <<i>Client></i> <i>i</i>DataAgent ip Set.	
	click the Subclient and click Archive .	
-	the Archive Options window, click Advanced.	
4. Select		
	AUGW LITHER SCHERUNGS TO LICE Media Set	
6. Click (Allow Other Schedules To Use Media Set.	1
Extend Job Retention This option retention p storage pol		

	1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <<i>Client></i> <i>i</i>DataAgent Backup Set.	
	2. Right-click the Subclient and click Archive .	
	3. From the Archive Options window, click Advanced.	
	4. Select Media .	
	 Select any of the following Extend Job Retention period options: Infinite/Number of days/Storage Policy default. 	
	6. Click OK .	
Data Path Options	Data Protection operations use a specific data path (Library, MediaAgent, Drive Pool, and Drive) to perform the archive operations as configured in the CommCell. By default, the system automatically identifies the data path for the archive operations. The following are some of the important situations where you may need to change the data path:	Refer Change Data Path.
	 When the preferred MediaAgent, library or drive pool is not available during the archive. When you need to use a different MediaAgent, library or drive pool for load balancing purposes. 	
	When you need to direct that archive to a particular location for compliance purposes.	
	1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <<i>Client></i> <i>i</i>DataAgent Backup Set.	
	2. Right-click the Subclient and click Archive .	
	3. From the Archive Options window, click Advanced.	
	4. Select Data Path.	
	5. Select the MediaAgent and Library .	
	 Select the Drive Pool and Drive for optical and tape libraries. 	
	7. Click OK .	
ault Tracker	The VaultTracker feature provides the facility to manage media that are removed from a library and stored in offsite locations. The VaultTracker function provides the following capabilities in your day-to-day operations:	Refer to VaultTracker or VaultTracker or
	 Identifies media that must be sent off-site for storage or brought back from off site locations. 	
	• Automatically moves the media in sequence in the library and provides a pick-up list for the operators.	
	Identifies and tracks the media during transit.	
	• Records and tracks the movement of media not used by all MediaAgents or Foreign Media.	
	 From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <client> iDataAgent Backup Set.</client> 	
	2. Right-click the Subclient and click Archive .	
	3. From the Archive Options window, click Advanced .	
	4. Select VaultTracking.	
	5. Select the necessary options.	
	6. Click OK .	
Merts	The Alert option is used for setting up the criteria to raise notifications/alerts for job statuses such as failure, success, or any other conditions triggered by the archive job. Adding alerts helps the user or the user group to get the notification automatically about the status of the archive job.	Refer to Alerts.
	1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <<i>Client></i> <i>i</i>DataAgent Backup Set .	
	2. Right-click the Subclient and click Archive .	
	3. From the Archive Options window, click Advanced.	
	4. Select Alert.	
	5. Click Add Alert.	
	6. From the Add Alert Wizard window, select the Threshold and Notification Criteria . Click Next.	
	7. Select the Notification Types. Click Next.	
	8. Select the Users and User Groups. Click Next.	
	9. Verify the Summary .	
	10. Click Finish .	
	11. Click OK .	
ommand Line Backup		Refer to Command Line

	commands can be executed from the command line or can be integrated into your own scripts or scheduling programs. In addition, you can also generate scripts for specific operations from the CommCell Console using the Save As Script option. These scripts can later be executed using the commands from the command line interface.	Interface.
CommCell Readiness Report	The CommCell Readiness Report provides you with vital information about the condition of your CommCell.	Refer to CommCell Readiness Report.
Archive/ Compliance Archive Job Summary Report	The Archive/ Compliance Archive Job Summary Report provides the details of all the archive jobs of clients.	Refer to Archive/ Compliance Archive Job Summary Report.
Calendar Archive/ Compliance Archive Job Summary Report	The Calendar Archive/Compliance Archive Job Summary Report provides the total amount of archive jobs run (along with their job status) for a specified time period.	Refer to Calendar Archive/Compliance Archive Job Summary Report.

Advanced Recover - Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Recovering a Message or a Mailbox Item

Finding and Recovering

Finding a Message with a Specific Subject Finding a Message From a Specific User Finding a Message Sent to a Specific User Finding a Message Received in a Specific Time Range Quick Search using Sampling Finding a Message Backed Up at a Specific Time Adding Search Results to a List Using Find from a Browse Window Recovering a Message or a Mailbox Item from the Search Results Save, Email, or Print Search Results

Performing an Out-of-Place Recovery

Recovering to Different Folder on the Same Client

Recovering to a Different Client

Recovering to a Different Exchange Server Version

Recovering a Message Archived from a PST File

Recovering a Message from a Stub in an Archived PST File Using Outlook

Recovering to a PST File

Recalling Messages for an Entire Mailbox

List Stubs Prior to Recall Recalling Messages to the Same Folder In a Mailbox Recalling Messages to a New Folder in a Mailbox

Recovering Messages Across Backup Cycles and Subclients

Scheduling a Recovery

Managing Recovery Jobs

Restarting Jobs Controlling Jobs

Additional Recovery Options

RECOVERING A MESSAGE OR A MAILBOX ITEM

Follow the steps given below to browse an archiveset and recover an archived message or a mailbox item, such as a folder, a contact, or a calendar entry:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers |<Client>| Exchange Mailbox Archiver.
- 2. Right-click the **<***ArchiveSet***>**, point to **All Tasks** and then click **Browse**.
- 3. Click OK.
- Navigate to <ArchiveSet> | <Mailbox Archiver> | <Folder> in the left pane of the Client Browse window.
- 5. Select a message or a mailbox item from the right pane.
- 6. Click Recover All Selected.
- 6. Click To Mailbox.
- 7. In the **Destination Client** list, select the name of client computer.
- 8. Click OK.

FINDING AND RECOVERING

Use Find to search and locate messages from an archived mailbox. Find is available from a ArchiveSet, subclient, or by right-clicking a mailbox or message from a Browse and Recover operation.

When entering criteria, note that up to 24 characters are supported for Sender and Recipient entries. Similarly, up to 42 characters are supported for Subject entries.

FINDING A MESSAGE WITH A SPECIFIC SUBJECT

Scheduling

Provides comprehensive information on scheduling jobs.

Job Management

Provides comprehensive information on managing jobs.

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to **Client Computers** |<*Client*>| Exchange Mailbox Archiver.
- 2. Right-click ArchiveSet or Subclient, point to All Tasks and then click Find.
- Type the **Subject** name of the message to narrow the search by a specific subject line containing the specified text string or wildcard pattern. You can search for partial words without the need for wildcard characters at the beginning and/or end of the search string.

These wildcards, or a combination of these wildcards, are supported in the **Subject** field:

- O $\,$ * for any number of characters e.g., ${\tt Accounting}^{\star}$.
- o ? for any one character e.g., user_group?.
- O [] for a range of characters e.g., $[a-k] \, {\tt Lee}.$
- O [!] for a negation of a range of characters e.g., [!a-k] Lee.

4. Click Search.

The messages that match the criteria are displayed in Search Results.

FINDING A MESSAGE FROM A SPECIFIC USER

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to **Client Computers** |<*Client*>| Exchange Mailbox Archiver.
- 2. Right-click ArchiveSet or Subclient, point to All Tasks and then click Find.
- 3. In **From,** narrow the search by entering a specified user who sent the message.
- 4. Click Search.

The messages that match the criteria are displayed in Search Results.



💿 💿 🗄 🗆 🖻 Match Case 🗆 Sh

٠

Search Clear Help 🛛 Eind: Me

1 ; R

FINDING A MESSAGE SENT TO A SPECIFIC USER

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to **Client Computers** |<*Client*>| Exchange Mailbox Archiver.
- 2. Right-click ArchiveSet or Subclient, point to All Tasks and then click Find.
- 3. In **To**, narrow the search by entering a specified user the message was addressed to. When searching Public Folder data using this field, keep in mind that only e-mails posted to mail-enabled Public Folders will be searchable. If you wish to search posts made to a Public Folder, use the **Subject** or **From** fields instead.
- 4. Click Search.

The messages that match the criteria are displayed in Search Results.



FINDING A MESSAGE RECEIVED IN A SPECIFIC TIME RANGE

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers |<Client>| Exchange Mailbox Archiver.
- 2. Right-click ArchiveSet or Subclient, point to All Tasks and then click Find.
- 3. In Received Time, select an entry from the drop-down list to narrow the search to messages received on the specified date or within the specified date range according to date criteria (Any, Today, Yesterday, This Week, This Month, This Year, Is, After, Before, Between, Specific Date). Depending on your selection, additional date range fields may appear below the Received Time field.
- 4. Click Search.

The messages that match the criteria are displayed in Search Results.

QUICK SEARCH USING SAMPLING

1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers |<Client>| Exchange



Mailbox Archiver.

- 2. Right-click ArchiveSet or Subclient, point to All Tasks and then click Find.
- 3. Click Advanced Options to expand and display the fields.
- 4. In **Sample Every**, specify the rate at which messages are sampled to determine whether they match the search criteria. The default value of 1 indicates that every message will be sampled. Keep in mind that the order in which messages are sampled is based on the order in which the messages were backed up.
- 5. Click Search.

The messages that match the criteria are displayed in Search Results.

FINDING A MESSAGE BACKED UP AT A SPECIFIC TIME

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to **Client Computers** |<*Client*>| Exchange Mailbox Archiver.
- 2. Right-click ArchiveSet or Subclient, point to All Tasks and then click Find.
- 3. Click Advanced Options to expand and display the fields.
- 4. In Backup Time, specify a time or time range (Latest Cycle, After, Before, Between, Specific Date, Any, Today, Yesterday, This week, This Month, This Year, or Relative) to narrow searches to messages that were backed up within the time period specified.
- 5. Click Search.

The messages that match the criteria are displayed in Search Results.

al Control Con

Search Clear Help

ADDING SEARCH RESULTS TO A LIST

Moving items to the Selected List lets you control the items you need to recover. You can narrow down the list from the Selected Results so that you are able to recover only the items from the Selected List.

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers |<Client>| Exchange Mailbox Archiver.
- 2. Right-click ArchiveSet or Subclient, point to All Tasks and then click Find.
- 3. Enter search criteria (e.g., Subject, From, To, etc.) as explained in the previous sections.
- 4. Click Search.

The messages that match the criteria are displayed in Search Results.

Right-click a message and select Add to Selected List.

5. Click the Selected Items tab and the message will be displayed.

USING FIND FROM A BROWSE WINDOW

When you access Find as part of a Browse operation, keep in mind that the time range values are not pre-populated by any previously selected time range settings entered on the Browse Options or Advanced Browse Options dialog.

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to **Client Computers** |*Client>*| **Exchange Mailbox Archiver**.
- 2. Right-click the **<**ArchiveSet**>**, point to **All Tasks** and then click **Browse**.
- 3. Click **OK**.
- 3. Right-click a mailbox or mailbox item (e.g., calendars, journals, etc.) and select Find.
- 4. Enter search criteria (e.g., Subject, From, To, etc.) as explained in the next few sections.
- 5. Click Search.

The search results are displayed in the right pane. You can optionally save the results, email, or print them.

RESTORING A MESSAGE OR A MAILBOX ITEM FROM THE SEARCH RESULTS







- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers |<Client>| Exchange Mailbox Archiver.
- 2. Right-click ArchiveSet or Subclient, point to All Tasks and then click Find.
- 3. Enter search criteria and click Search.
- Right-click a message or a mailbox item from the search results and then select Recover.
- 5. Click To Mailbox.
- 6. In the Destination Client list, select the name of client computer.

In cases where the mailbox alias name has changed, it is strongly recommended to recover archived messages out-ofplace to the current mailbox alias name. Otherwise, attempting to recover the data in-place to a mailbox alias that no longer exists will cause the recover operation to fail.

7. Click **OK**.

SAVE, EMAIL, OR PRINT SEARCH RESULTS

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to *<Client>*.
- 2. Right-click ArchiveSet or Subclient, point to All Tasks and then click Find.
- 3. Enter search criteria and click Search.
- 4. Click Save, Email, or Print in the upper-right corner of the window.
- 5. If Email is selected, enter the SMTP parameters (SMTP Host, To, From, Subject).



] rind Opcore(lecest)	Search Results Selected Items	
Mail	11 matching items	🔚 Sava 🙆 Enal 🕼 Pritz 💭 📉
Subject	Subject v From v To	▼ Folder ▼ Receiv ▼ Size ▼
This is a very long 💌		arah Inbox 11/22/2010 9.48 KB
From		orin Inbox 10/15/2010 14.18 KB
×		buryInbox 11/22/2010 92.01 KB
To		reg B Inbox 11/22/2010 8.98 KB
· ·		hy; S Inbox 10/15/2010 87.95 KB
Received Time		ieler Inbox 10/15/2010 127.96 KB
Any 💌		anst Inbox 10/15/2010 356.70 KB
HIV		Nen Inbox 11/08/2010 8.16 KB heltInbox 11/17/2010 1.95 MB
Advanced Options (R) Sample Every Sectory Time Between	Consistence Shift Planameters S	10 401.8118 10 8.24 KB
From Time Weld 07/13/2	Subject:	Help
Time Zone (U/TC-05:00) Eastern Time (US & C +		
Search Clear H	elo 🖸 Bnd: MaShe 💿 💿 🗆 🗆 Match Case	\square Show matching rows only \square . Whole Word

PERFORMING AN OUT-OF PLACE RECOVERY

By default, the Exchange Mailbox Archiver iDataAgent recovers data to the client computer from which it originated; this is referred to as an in-place recovery. You can also recover the data to another client computer or another folder on the same client.

When you perform an out-of-place recovery, the recovered data assumes the rights (i.e., permissions) of the parent directory.

RECOVERING TO A DIFFERENT FOLDER ON THE SAME CLIENT

Follow the steps given below to recover data to a different folder on the same client from which data is backed up:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to **Client Computers** |*<Client>*| **Exchange** Mailbox Archiver.
- 2. Right-click the <ArchiveSet>, point to All Tasks and then click Browse.
- 3. Click OK.
- 4. Select a mailbox or a message from a mailbox or a mailbox item from the **Client Browse** window and click **Recover All Selected**.
- 5. Click To Mailbox and clear the Recover to Same Folder check box.
- 6. Click Browse and select a folder on the Destination client.
- 7. Click OK.
- 8. Click **OK** to start the recovery.

RECOVERING TO A DIFFERENT CLIENT

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers |<Client>| Exchange Mailbox Archiver.
- 2. Right-click the **<ArchiveSet>**, point to **All Tasks** and then click **Browse**.
- 3. Click **OK**.
- Select a mailbox or a message from a mailbox or a mailbox item from the Client Browse window and click Recover All Selected.



- 5. Click To Mailbox .
- In the Destination client list, select the client. The source and destination clients must reside in the same CommCell Console. The destination client must have the Microsoft Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent installed on it.
- 7. Click **OK** to start the recovery.

Recover Options for All Selected Items:	
General Job Initiation	
To Maibox	
Recovery Destination	
Destination client exproxy5x64	
Recover to Same Paths	
Specify destination path	I
Browse	I
	I
When message exists	I
Unconditional Overwrite	
Unconditionally overwrite only if target is a DataArchiver stub	l
(e) Append	I
💿 Skip	l
	l
() To PST File	I
Browse	I
	-
Cancel Advanced 🚱 Save As Script Help]

RECOVERING TO A DIFFERENT EXCHANGE VERSION

When performing a cross-application recovery of Exchange mailboxes from a newer version of Exchange Server to an older version, it follows the same compatibility support provided by the Exchange Server, unless otherwise noted.

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers |<Client>| Exchange Mailbox Archiver.
- 2. Right-click the **<**ArchiveSet**>**, point to All Tasks and then click Browse.
- 3. Click **OK**.
- 4. Select a mailbox or a message from a mailbox or a mailbox item from the **Client Browse** window and click **Recover All Selected**.
- 5. Click To Mailbox.
- 6. In the **Destination client** list, select the client. The source and destination clients must reside in the same CommCell Console. The destination client must have the Microsoft Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent installed on it.

If you want to recover to a different folder, clear the **Recover to Same Folder** check box and specify the destination path.

7. Click **OK** to start the recovery.

cover Options for All Selected Items:	X
ral Job Initiation	
To Maibox	
Recovery Destination	
Destination client exproxy5x64)
Recover to Same Paths	
Specify destination path	
Browse	
When message exists O Unconditional Overwrite Unconditionally overwrite only if target is a DataArchiver stub	E
Append	
🔘 Skip	
) To PST File	
Browse	
Local Drive Network Network	
BOK Cancel Advanced Bave As Script	Help

RECOVERING A MESSAGE ARCHIVED FROM A PST FILE

Follow the steps given below to browse and recover a message archived from a PST file:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to **Client Computers** |<*Client*>| Exchange Mailbox Archiver.
- 2. Right-click the **<***ArchiveSet***>**, point to **All Tasks** and then click **Browse**.
- 3. Click OK.
- 4. Expand the Migrated From PST folder and select the message that you want to

recover.

- 5. Click Recover All Selected.
- 6. Click **To Mailbox**.
- 7. In the Destination Client list, select the name of client computer.
- 8. Click **OK**.



RECOVERING A MESSAGE FROM A STUB IN AN ARCHIVED PST FILE USING OUTLOOK

Follow the steps given below to recover a message from a stub in an archived PST file using outlook:

- 1. Start Outlook
- 2. Enter your Profile Name.
- 3. Click OK.
- 4. On the File menu, click Open | Personal Folders File (or Outlook Data File on XP).
- 5. Browse to the location where the PST files reside, and select the PST file you want to recover, then click **OK** to open the PST file.
- 6. Navigate to the folder where the message stub resides, then double-click the stub.
- 7. Click Recover.

Note that the message will be recovered in the **Recovered Items** folder in the mailbox.

RECOVERING TO A PST FILE

Follow the steps given below to recover a mailbox or a message or a mailbox item to a PST file:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers |<Client>| Exchange Mailbox Archiver.
- 2. Right-click the <ArchiveSet>, point to All Tasks and then click Browse.
- 3. Click OK.
- 4. Select a mailbox or a message from a mailbox or a mailbox item from the **Client Browse** window and click **Recover All Selected**.
- 5. Click To PST File.
- Click Browse and select the a folder on the client computer to save the PST file.
 You can also save the PST in a network location. Click Network and browse to select a folder on any other client in the domain.
- 7. Click **OK** to start the recovery.

REVIEWING DATA SELECTED FOR RECOVERY

When you select multiple mailboxes, messages and mailbox items from multiple locations, you can review all the data and locations before starting the recovery. Follow the steps give below to review the data selected for recovery:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers |<Client>| Exchange Mailbox Archiver.
- 2. Right-click the <ArchiveSet>, point to All Tasks and then click Browse.
- 3. Click OK.
- 4. Select a mailbox, a message, or a mailbox item from the **Client Browse** window and click **Recover All Selected**.
- 5. Click To Mailbox.
- 6. In the **Destination client** list, select the client. The source and destination clients must reside in the same CommCell Console. The destination client must have the Microsoft Exchange Mailbox *i*DataAgent installed on it.

If you want to recover to a different folder, clear the **Recover to Same Folder** check box and specify the destination path.







- 7. Click Advanced.
- 8. Select the Selected Paths/Filters tab.
- 9. Click **OK**.
- 10. Click **OK** to start the recovery.

RECALLING MESSAGES FOR AN ENTIRE MAILBOX

All the archived Mailbox messages can be recalled using the MassRecall utility. Mailbox objects can either be recalled to the original Mailbox folder from which they were archived (such as the Inbox) or to a different Mailbox folder. This utility must be run on the client machine where the Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent is installed.

To run this utility, use the same outlook profile that is set for the Archiver Account.

LIST STUBS PRIOR TO RECALL

1. Create an argument file, for example input.txt.

Specify the following parameters in the argument file, and save it to the local machine.

user1@email.com,inbox\folder1

where:

- userl@email.com specifies the SMTP address.
- inbox\folder1 specifies the folder for which you wish to list the existing stubs. If this parameter is left blank, then all stubs in the entire Mailbox are listed.
- 2. Run this utility from the location where the Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent is installed.
 - 1. Click Start | Run.
 - 2. Type cmd.
 - 3. Click **OK**.
 - 4. Navigate to the folder where the Exchange Mailbox Archiver is installed.
- 3. Run the following command to view the existing stubs in a Mailbox folder.

CvRecallMailbox.exe outlook1 -f C:\input.txt ExchangeServer1 ActiveDirectory1 ReportingMode targetserver target evmgrcport -o C:\output.txt

where:

- outlook1 specifies the name of the outlook profile set for the Archiver account.
- C:\input.txt specifies the argument file with the saved path.
- ExchangeServer1 specifies the name of the Exchange Server.
- ActiveDirectory1 specifies the name of the Active Directory Server.
- C:\output.txt specifies the new text file that will be created.
- - o C:\output.txt is optional. The output will be displayed on command prompt window if this parameter is left blank.
- Target Server is the server where your Mailbox Archiver agent is installed.
- Target EvMgrc Port is the port number where the EvMgrc is running on the Target Server.

The newly created <code>output.txt</code> file contains the name of the Mailbox folder, number of stubs, and the size of the original messages which can be recalled in the Mailbox folder.

RECALLING MESSAGES TO THE SAME FOLDER IN A MAILBOX



1. Create an argument file, for example input.txt.

Specify the following parameters in the argument file, and save it to the local machine.

user1@email.com,inbox\folder1

where:

- user1@email.com specifies the SMTP address.
- inbox\folder1 specifies the folder to be recalled.
- 2. Run this utility from the location where the Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent is installed.
 - 1. Click Start | Run.
 - 2. Type cmd.
 - 3. Click OK.
 - 4. Navigate to the folder where the Exchange Mailbox Archiver is installed.
- 3. Run the following command to perform an in-place-recall of the objects present in the Mailbox folder.

CvRecallMailbox.exe outlook1 -f C:\input.txt ExchangeServer1 ActiveDirectory1 -targetserver -target evmgrcport

where:

- outlook1 specifies the name of the outlook profile set for the Archiver account.
- C:\input.txt specifies the argument file with the saved path.
- ExchangeServer1 specifies the name of the Exchange Server.
- ActiveDirectory1 specifies the name of the Active Directory Server.
- Target Server is the server where your Mailbox Archiver agent is installed.
- Target EvMgrc Port is the port number where the EvMgrc is running on the Target Server.

All the archived messages in folder1 will be recalled to the current location (all the stubs will be overwritten in the original location).

RECALLING MESSAGES TO A NEW FOLDER IN A MAILBOX

1. Create an argument file, for example input.txt.

Specify the following parameters in the argument file, and save it to the local machine.

user1@email.com,inbox\folder1,folder2

where:

- user1@email.com specifies the SMTP address.
- inbox\folder1 specifies the folder to be recalled.
- folder2 specifies the new destination folder.
- 2. Run this utility from the location where the Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent is installed.
 - 1. Click Start | Run.
 - 2. Type **cmd.**





- 3. Click **OK.**
- 4. Navigate to the folder where the Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent is installed.
- 3. Run the following command to recall Mailbox objects to a different destination folder. CvRecallMailbox.exe outlook1 -f C:\input.txt ExchangeServer1 ActiveDirectory1 -targetserver -target evmgrcport

where:

- outlook1 specifies the name of the outlook profile set for the Archiver account.
- C:\input.txt specifies the argument file with the saved path.
- ExchangeServer1 specifies the name of the Exchange Server.
- ActiveDirectory1 specifies the name of the Active Directory Server.
- Target Server is the server where your Mailbox Archiver agent is installed.
- Target EvMgrc Port is the port number where the EvMgrc is running on the Target Server.

All the archived messages in folder1 will be recalled to folder2.

RECOVER MESSAGES ACROSS BACKUP CYCLES AND SUBCLIENTS

You can browse and recover data spanning multiple backup cycles or across subclients. By default a new cycle begins on the first day of the year with the creation of a new index. You can also schedule to create new index according to your individual backup requirements.

Browsing and recovering data across subclients within an archive set allows you to recover data from the mailboxes that have been moved from one subclient to another.

Browsing and recovering data across backup cycles also allows you to recover data, which was backed up before the last backup cycle. This is accomplished by specifying a time range during browse and recovery. The data that was backed up during the specified time period is marked as a candidate for recovery.

Follow the steps given below to browse and restore data spanning multiple subclients and backup cycles:

- 1. Install the MediaAgent on the CommServe computer.
- 2. From the CommCell Console, navigate to <*Client*> | Exchange Mailbox Archiver.
- 3. Right-click the archive set that contains the data you want to restore and click All Tasks | Browse Backup Data.
- 4. Select **Specify Browse Time**, select date and time from the **Browse data before** drop down menu.
- 5. Click Advanced.
- Select Exclude Data Before and select the specific time range. Both the FROM and TO values are required.
- 7. Click OK.
- Select the folder level under the backup set. Its entire contents will be automatically selected in the right pane.
- 9. Click Recover All Selected.
- From the General tab, either specify Recover to Same Paths or Specify destination path by typing a path or clicking Browse to locate the desired destination.
- 10. Click the Job Initiation tab.
- 11. Select Immediate to run the job immediately.
- 12. Click OK.
- 13. You can monitor the progress of the restore job in the **Job Controller** of the CommCell Console.
- 14. This will restore the data in the specified destination.

SCHEDULING A RECOVERY

1. • From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> | Exchange Mailbox Archiver.





- Right-click an < ArchiveSet > point to All Tasks and then click Browse.
- Click OK.

- Select one or more mailboxes in the left pane. The mailbox items (e.g., calendars, journals, etc.) will be selected in the right pane.
 - Click Recover All Selected.
- Click Job Initiation tab and click Schedule.
 - Click Configure.

2.

з.

- 4. Select the appropriate scheduling options. For example:
 - Click Weekly.
 - Check the days you want the run the recovery job.
 - Change the Start Time to 9:00 PM
 - Click OK to close the Schedule Details dialog
 - Click **OK** to close the Recovery Options dialog

The recovery job will execute as per the schedule.

Browse Options Browse the Latest Data O Specify Browse Time - 03 : 16 AM <u>^</u> Client Computer: Use MediaAgent <ANY MEDIAAGENT> ~ Page Size: 1000 Cancel Advanced List Media OK Help Recover Options for All Selected Iter eral Job Initiation O Immediate Schedule Configure Schedule Pattern Configure © OK Cancel Advanced Save As Script Help One Time Start Time 9:00 PM ODaily Weekly O Monthly O Yearly On these days Monday Tuesday Wednesda Thursday Friday Saturday Sunday

OK Cancel Help Options>>

MANAGING RECOVERY JOBS

Once you initiate the recovery operation, a recover job is generated in the Job Controller. Jobs can be managed in a number of ways. The following sections provide information on the different job management options available:

RESTARTING JOBS

Jobs that fail to complete successfully are automatically restarted based on the job restartability configuration set in the Control Panel. Keep in mind that changes made to this configuration will affect all jobs in the entire CommCell.

To Configure the job restartability for a specific job, you can modify the retry settings for the job. This will override the setting in the Control Panel. It is also possible to override the default CommServe configuration for individual jobs by configuring retry settings when initiating the job. This configuration, however, will apply only to the specific job.

Backup jobs for this Agent are resumed from the point-of-failure.

CONFIGURE JOB RESTARTABILITY AT THE COMMSERVE LEVEL

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, click Control Panel icon.
- 2. Select Job Management.
- 3. Click Job Restarts tab and select a Job Type.
 - Select **Restartable** to make the job restartable.
 - Change the value for Max Restarts to change the maximum number of times the Job Manager will try to restart a job.
 - Change the value for **Restart Interval (Mins)** to change the time interval between attempts for the Job Manager to restart the job.
- 4. Click OK.



Pre/Post Job Retry Map

1 + hr(s) 0 + min(s)

0 1

OK

Encryption

Kill Running Job When Total Running Time Expire

Enable Total Running Time

Enable Number Of Retries

Job Retr

Copy Precedence Browse Options

Cancel Help

Alert

CONFIGURE JOB RESTARTABILITY FOR AN INDIVIDUAL JOB

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> | Exchange Mailbox | <ArchiveSet>.
- 2. Right-click the *Subclient>* in the right pane and then click **Browse Backup Data**.
- 3. Click OK.
- 4. Select the data that you want to restore and click Recover All Selected.
- 5. Click Advanced and select the Job Retry tab
- Select Enable Total Running Time and specify the maximum elapsed time before a job can be restarted or killed

Select **Kill Running Jobs When Total Running Time Expires** to kill the job after reaching the maximum elapsed time.

7. Select Enable Number Of Retries and specify the number of retries.

8. Click **OK.**

CONTROLLING JOBS

The following controls are available for running jobs in the Job Controller window:

SUSPEND	Temporarily stops a job. A suspended job is not terminated; it can be restarted at a later time.		
	Resumes a job and returns the status to Waiting, Pending, Queued, or Running. The status depends on the availability of resources, the state of the Operation Windows, or the Activity Control setting.		
KILL	Terminates a job.		

SUSPENDING A JOB

- 1. From the Job Controller of the CommCell Console, right-click the job and select Suspend.
- 2. The job status may change to Suspend Pending for a few moments while the operation completes. The job status then changes to Suspended.

RESUMING A JOB

- 1. From the Job Controller of the CommCell Console, right-click the job and select Resume.
- 2. As the Job Manager attempts to restart the job, the job status changes to Waiting, Pending, or Running.

KILLING A JOB

- 1. From the Job Controller of the CommCell Console, right-click the job and select Kill.
- Click Yes when the confirmation prompt appears if you are sure you want to kill the job. The job status may change to Kill Pending for a few moments while the operation completes. Once completed, the job status will change to Killed and it will be removed from the Job Controller window after five minutes.

ADDITIONAL RECOVERY OPTIONS

Several additional options are available to further refine your recovery operations. The following table describes these options, as well as the steps to

implement them.

Be sure to read the overview material referenced for each feature prior to using them.

OPTION	DESCRIPTION	RELATED TOPIC
Skip Errors and Continue	This option enables you to to continue the restore job regardless of media errors and create a file that lists the full path names of the files that failed to get restored. Follow the steps given below to set this option:	
	1. From the CommCell Browser, click Client Computers <client> Exchange Mailbox Archiver.</client>	
	 Right-click the <<i>ArchiveSet</i>> that contains the data you want to recover, point to All Tasks and then click Browse. 	
	3. Click OK .	
	 In the Client Browse tab, select the data to be recovered and click Recover all Selected. 	
	5. Click Advanced.	
	6. In the Advanced Restore Options dialog box, click General .	
	7. On the General tab, select the Skip errors and continue check box.	
	8. Click OK .	
Startup Options	The Startup Options are used by the Job Manager to set priority for resource allocation. This is useful to give higher priority to certain jobs. You can set the priority as follows:	Refer to Job Priority and Priority Precedence.
	1. From the CommCell Browser, click Client Computers <client> Exchange Mailbox Archiver.</client>	
	 Right-click the <<i>ArchiveSet</i>> that contains the data you want to recover, point to All Tasks and then click Browse. 	
	3. Click OK .	
	4. In the Client Browse tab, select the data to be recovered and click Recover all Selected.	
	5. Click Advanced.	
	6. In the Advanced Restore Options dialog box, click Startup.	
	7. On the Startup tab, select Change Priority .	
	8. Enter a priority number - 0 is the highest priority and 999 is the lowest priority.	
	9. Select the Start up in suspended State check box to start the job in a suspended state.	
	10. Click OK .	
Copy Precedence	By default, the system retrieves data from the storage policy copy with the lowest copy precedence. If the data was pruned from the primary copy, the system automatically retrieves data from the other copies of the storage policy in the lowest copy precedence to highest copy precedence order. Once the data is found, it is retrieved, and no further copies are checked.	Refer to Recovering Data Fror Copies.
	You can retrieve data from a specific storage policy copy (Synchronous Copy or Selective Copy). If data does not exist in the specified copy, the data retrieve operation fails even if the data exists in another copy of the same storage policy. Follow the steps given below to retrieve the data from a a specific storage policy copy:	
	1. From the CommCell Browser, click Client Computers <client> Exchange Mailbox Archiver.</client>	
	 Right-click the <<i>ArchiveSet</i>> that contains the data you want to recover, point to All Tasks and then click Browse. 	
	3. Click OK .	
	4. In the Client Browse tab, select the data to be recovered and click Recover all Selected.	
	5. Click Advanced.	
	6. In the Advanced Restore Options dialog box, click Copy Precedence.	
	7. On the Copy Precedence tab, select the Restore from copy precedence check box.	
	8. Enter the copy precedence number.	
	9. Click OK .	
Data Path Options	The data recovery operations use a default Library, MediaAgent, Drive Pool, and Drive as the Data Path. You can use this option to change the data path if the default data path is not available. Follow the steps given below to change the default data path:	Refer to Change Data Path.
	1. From the CommCell Browser, click Client Computers <client> Exchange Mailbox Archiver.</client>	

	 Right-click the <<i>ArchiveSet</i>> that contains the data you want to recover, point to All Tasks and then click Browse.
	3. Click OK .
	4. In the Client Browse tab, select the data to be recovered and click Recover all Selected.
	5. Click Advanced.
	6. In the Advanced Restore Options dialog box, click Data Path.
	7. On the Data Path tab, select the MediaAgent and Library .
	8. Select the Drive Pool and Drive for optical and tape libraries.
	9. Select the name of the Proxy server if you wish to restore using a proxy server.
	You can select the Proxy server only when you are restoring from a snapshot. This option is not available for a regular restore.
	10. Click OK .
Encryption	If the client's data is encrypted with a pass phrase, you must enter the pass-phrase to start the data recovery operation. Follow the steps given below to enter the pass-phrase:
	1. From the CommCell Browser, click Client Computers <client> Exchange Mailbox Archiver.</client>
	 Right-click the < ArchiveSet > that contains the data you want to recover, point to All Tasks and then click Browse.
	3. Click OK .
	 In the Client Browse tab, select the data to be recovered and click Recover all Selected.
	5. Click Advanced.
	6. In the Advanced Restore Options dialog box, click Encryption .
	7. Enter the Pass Phrase.
	8. Click OK .
Browse Options	Deleted files can be manually restored by the user. You can specify the time range for the deleted items to be restored.
	1. From the CommCell Browser, click Client Computers <client> Exchange Mailbox Archiver.</client>
	 Right-click the <<i>ArchiveSet</i>> that contains the data you want to recover, point to All Tasks and then click Browse.
	3. Click OK .
	4. In the Client Browse tab, select the data to be recovered and click Recover all Selected.
	5. Click Advanced.
	6. From the Browse Options tab, select Restore deleted items option.
	7. Select Specify Time Range option to specify the time zone, start time and end time for the deleted items to be restored.
	8. Click OK .
Alerts	This option enables users or user groups to get automatic notification on the status of the data recovery job. Follow the steps given below to set up the criteria to raise notifications/alerts:
	1. From the CommCell Browser, click Client Computers <client> Exchange Mailbox Archiver.</client>
	 Right-click the < ArchiveSet > that contains the data you want to recover, point to All Tasks and then click Browse.
	3. Click OK .
	4. In the Client Browse tab, select the data to be recovered and click Recover all Selected.
	5. Click Advanced.
	6. In the Advanced Restore Options dialog box, click Alerts .
	7. Click Add Alert.
	8. From the Add Alert Wizard dialog box, select the required threshold and notification criteria and click Next .
	9. Select the required notification types and click Next .

	11. Click Finish.	
Command Line Restores	12. Click OK . Command Line Interface enables you to perform backups or restore from the command line.	Refer to Command Line
	The commands can be executed from the command line or can be integrated into scripts.	Interface.
	You can also generate command line scripts for specific operations from the CommCell Browser using the Save As Script option.	
CommCell Readiness Report	The CommCell Readiness Report provides you with vital information, such as connectivity and readiness of the Client, MediaAgent and CommServe. It is useful to run this report before performing the data protection or recovery job. Follow the steps given below to generate the report:	Refer to CommCell Readiness Report.
	1. From the Tools menu in the CommCell Console, click Reports .	
	2. Navigate to Reports CommServe CommCell Readiness.	
	3. Click the Client tab and click the Modify button.	
	4. In the Select Computers dialog box, clear the Include All Client Computers and All Client Groups check box.	
	5. Select the client from the Exclude list.	
	6. Click the Include > button.	
	7. Click OK .	
	8. Click the MediaAgent tab.	
	9. Clear the Include All MediaAgents checkbox.	
	10. Select the MediaAgent from the Exclude list.	
	11. Click Include >.	
	12. Click Run .	
	The generated report is displayed.	
Restore Job Summary Report	The Restore Job Summary Report provides you with information about all the data recovery jobs that are run in last 24 hours for a specific client and agent. You can get information such as failure reason, failed objects, job options etc. It is useful to run this report after performing the restore. Follow the steps given below to generate the report:	Refer to Restore Job Summary Report.
	1. From the Tools menu in the CommCell Console, click Reports .	
	2. Navigate to Reports Jobs Job Summary.	
	3. Click Data Recovery on the General tab in the right pane.	
	4. On the Computers tab, select the client and the agent for which you want to run the report.	
	5. Click Run .	

Data Aging - Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent

Data Aging is the process of removing old data from secondary storage to allow the associated media to be reused for future backups.

By default, all backup data is retained infinitely. However, you should change the retention of your data based on your needs. Note that if you continue to have infinite retention, you will also need infinite storage capacity.

5 関

O Retair Por

🚡 Storage Poli

.. Disast... 1 .. Stand... 1 . Stand... 1 Stand... , Stand..

Content 🛐 Summar idol admin

en C... en C... en L... en N... en te...

яПа ×

Auto..

🔠 test-data-aging 🛛

1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Policies | Storage Policies.

2. Highlight the Storage Policy.

з. From the right pane, right-click the Storage Policy Copy and click the Properties.

- 4. • Click the **Retention** tab.
 - Click the Retain For in the Basic Retention Rules for All Backups area.
 - Enter number of days to retain the data.
 - Enter number of cycles to retain the data.
 - Click OK.

5. From the CommCell Browser, click the **Reports** icon.



6. Expand Reports and select Data Retention Forecast and Compliance.

7. Click Run.

8. The report will display the data to be pruned when a data aging job is run.

To ensure only data intended for aging is actually aged, it is important to identify the data that will be aged based on the retention rules you have configured. Hence, ensure this report includes only the data you intend to age.

If necessary, fine-tune your rules so that only the intended data is aged.

Once you run a data aging job, the data will be lost.

- 9. From the CommCell Console, right click the CommServe icon and click All Tasks | Data Aging.
- 10. Select Immediate in the Job Initiation section and click OK.

 You can track the progress of the job from the Job Controller window. When the job has completed, the Job Controller displays Completed.





i ● Teal haddon © Teal have ■ Naving

ob Initiation section and click **OK**.

Make sure that the job completes successfully. If the job did not complete successfully, re-run the job.

ADVANCED TOPICS

Data Aging - Advanced

Provides comprehensive information on additional Data Aging capabilities.

Additional Operations - Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Audit Trail Auxiliary Copy Erasing Backup Data Global Filters License Administration Online Help Links Operating System and Application Upgrades Operation Window Schedule Policy Storage Policy Uninstalling Components

AUDIT TRAIL

The Audit Trail feature allows you to track the operations of users who have access to the CommCell. This capability is useful if a detrimental operation was performed in the CommCell and the source of that operation needs to be determined.

Audit Trail tracks operations according to four severity levels:

- Critical: This level records operations that will result in imminent loss of data.
- High: This level records operations that may result in loss of data.
- Medium: This level records changes to the general configuration of one or more entities. Such changes may produce unintended results when operations
 are performed.
- Low: This level records changes to status, addition of entities, and other operations that have minimal impact on existing CommCell functions.

To set Audit Trail retention periods:

- 1. From the Tools menu in the CommCell Console, click Control Panel, and then select Audit Trail.
- 2. From the Audit Trail dialog box, select the desired retention time (in days) for each severity level.
- 3. Click OK.

AUXILIARY COPY

An auxiliary copy operation allows you to create secondary copies of data associated with data protection operations, independent of the original copy.

- 1. Expand the Policies node, right-click storage policy for which you want to perform an auxiliary copy, click All Tasks, and then click Run Auxiliary Copy.
- 2. If you are starting the auxiliary copy operation from the CommServe level, select the storage policy for which you wish to perform the auxiliary copy.

If you are starting the auxiliary copy operation from the Storage Policy level, the Storage Policy field is already populated with the name of the Storage Policy you selected.

- 3. If the source copy is configured with a shared library, select the Source MediaAgent for the auxiliary copy.
- 4. Click **OK** to start the auxiliary copy operation. A progress bar displays the progress of the operation.

ERASING BACKUP DATA

The Erase Data feature allows you to permanently erase any data that can be backed up. Using Erase Data, you can erase mailboxes, folders in a mailbox, messages within a folder, and attachments.

CONFIGURING ERASE DATA

To erase data, you need to first assign a Filter Storage Policy for Erasing Data. Follow the steps given below to assign a Filter Storage Policy:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, right-click the storage policy that you want to use as a filter storage policy, then click **Properties**.
- 2. From the General tab of the Storage Policy Properties dialog box, select the Allow Erase Data check box.
- 3. Click **OK**.

- 4. From the CommCell Browser, right-click the <Agent> and then click Properties.
- 5. From the Storage Device tab of the agent Properties dialog box, select a filter storage policy from the Filter Storage Policy list.
- 6. Click **OK**.

RUNNING AN ERASE DATA JOB

After the configuration has been completed, you can now browse and erase data.

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, right-click the <Agent>, select All Tasks and then click Erase Data By Browsing.
- 2. You are warned that the data will be permanently removed. Click Yes to continue.
- 3. From the Erase Data by Browsing dialog box, click Browse.
- 4. In the Browse Options dialog box, select a browse time range and any advanced browse options, and click OK.
- 5. From the browse selection window, select the data objects that you want to erase, and click OK.
- 6. In the Job Initiation tab, select Immediate to run the job immediately.

You can track the progress of the job from the Job Controller or Event Viewer.

GLOBAL FILTERS

Global Filters are exclusions that filter data from backups across all Agents in a CommCell that support the feature. Global Filters serve as a template for files, folders, and entities that should always be excluded from all (or most) backups in a CommCell, such as temporary data a computer does not retain or data that is recoverable by means other than a restore. This saves space on media and enhances backup performance.

By default, filters configured for a particular subclient override any Global Filters configured for the CommCell. You can, however, configure subclients to include global filters along with any filters already configured for the subclient.

CONFIGURE GLOBAL FILTERS

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, right-click the CommServe, click Control Panel, and then click Global Filters.
- 2. Select Use Global Filters on All Subclients.
- 3. Click Browse to locate the files or folders to be excluded from backups and click OK.
- 4. Click **OK** to save your changes.

ENABLE/DISABLE GLOBAL FILTERS FOR A SUBCLIENT

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, right-click the subclient for which you want to enable Global Filters and click Properties.
- 2. Click the Filters tab.
- 3. Select one of the following values from the Include Global Filters list:
 - **ON** to enable Global Filters for this subclient.
 - o **OFF** to disable Global Filters for this subclient.
- 4. Click OK.

LICENSE ADMINISTRATION

REQUIRED LICENSES

The Exchange Mailbox *i*DataAgent requires the *i*DataAgent for Exchange Mailbox license.

CONVERTING EVALUATION LICENSES TO PERMANENT LICENSES

If you installed the software using an Evaluation License, you can upgrade to a Permanent License as follows:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, right-click the CommServe icon, click Control Panel, and then click License Administration.
- 2. Select the Update License tab and then click Convert.
- 3. Check the box that corresponds to the evaluation license you would like to upgrade and then click Convert.

The license information is updated in the License Administration window.

USING CAPACITY-BASED LICENSING

License Usage by Capacity is a licensing mechanism that allows you to obtain licenses based on the amount of data you back up. It provides the following features:

- Flexibility of usage on all agents, rather than being tied to number of server, agents, etc.
- Allows you to purchase licenses based on your data protection needs

Both Core and Enterprise license types are available. Refer to License Usage by Capacity for comprehensive information on utilizing this method.

RELEASING A LICENSE

If you no longer require a license on a computer, such as cases where the computer is being retired, you can release the license and use it later for another computer. Backup data from the retired computer can still be restored after the license is released provided the data is not aged.

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, right-click the name of the client from which you want to release a license, click **All Tasks**, and then click **Release License** for **Client**.
- 2. Click **OK** to continue releasing the license
- 3. Click Yes to confirm you want to release the license or No to abort.

ONLINE HELP LINKS

Use the following links to view the online help for the corresponding tabs in the CommCell Console:

OPERATIONS	ENTITY	ONLINE HELP LINKS	SUB LINKS
CONFIGURATION	Agent	Exchange Mailbox Properties (General)	Change User Account
CONFIGURATION		Exchange Mailbox Properties (Version)	
		Exchange Mailbox Properties (Security)	
		Exchange Mailbox Properties (Activity Control)	
		Exchange Mailbox Properties (AD Server)	
		Exchange Mailbox Properties (Storage Device)	
	Backup Set	Backup Set Properties of: <i><backup set=""></backup></i> (General)	
		Backup Set Properties of: < Backup Set > (Auto Discover)	
		Backup Set Properties of: < Backup Set > (Security)	
	Subclient	Subclient Properties of: < <i>Subclient Name</i> > (General)	Add/Modify Mailbox
		Subclient Properties of: < Subclient Name> (Content)	User Account (Pre/Post)
		Subclient Properties of: < Subclient Name> (Filters)	Data Paths for < <i>Storage Policy Name</i> :
		Subclient Properties of: <subclient name=""> (Pre/Post Process)</subclient>	Configure AD User Group for Auto-
		Subclient Properties of: < Subclient Name> (Storage Device)	discovery
		Subclient Properties of: < Subclient Name> (Auto-discovery)	Authenticate Active Directory Domain Controller
		Subclient Properties of: < Subclient Name> (Activity Control)	Change Mailbox Stores for Auto-
		Subclient Properties of: < Subclient Name> (Encryption)	discovery
		Subclient Properties of: < Subclient Name> (Security)	
BACKUP	Backup Options	Backup Options for Subclient: <subclient name=""></subclient>	Save As Script
DACKUP			Command Line XML Options
	Advanced Backup Options	Advanced Backup Options (Data)	Alert Wizard
		Advanced Backup Options (Startup)	
		Advanced Backup Options (Job Retry)	
		Advanced Backup Options (Media)	
		Advanced Backup Options (Data Path)	
		Advanced Backup Options (VaultTracking)	
		Advanced Backup Options (Alert)	
RESTORE	Restore Options	Restore Options for All Selected Items (General)	Save As Script
		Restore Options for All Selected Items (Job Initiation)	Command Line XML Options
	Advanced Restore Options	Advanced Restore Options (General)	Alert Wizard
		Advanced Restore Options (Startup)	
		Advanced Restore Options (Copy Precedence)	
		Advanced Restore Options (Data Path)	
		Advanced Restore Options (Encryption)	

A	Advanced Restore Options (Selected Path/Filters)	
A	Advanced Restore Options (Browse Options)	
A	Advanced Restore Options (Alert)	

OPERATING SYSTEM AND APPLICATION UPGRADES

Operating system upgrades are only supported when upgrading from one version of an OS to a different version of the same OS (e.g., Win2003 to Win2008). The two methods of upgrading are:

- Seamless Upgrade This involves uninstalling the Agent software, upgrading the operating system, and then re-installing the Agent software.
- Full OS Replacement This involves performing a clean install of a new version of the OS, re-installing any application software, then re-installing the CommServe, MediaAgent, and/or Agent software.

For Full OS Replacement, the client computer must be configured to have the CommServe, MediaAgent, and/or Client software re-installed to the same location, the same Fully Qualified Domain Name or short domain name, the same partitions, disk drive format (FAT, NTFS, et. al.), and IP configuration as previously.

If it is necessary to remove Agent software to facilitate an operating system or application upgrade, do not delete the icon for the Agent from the CommCell Console, or all associated backed up data will be lost.

Use the following strategy to upgrade the operating system software:

- Identify the computers you want to upgrade and the CommCell components installed on each of these computers.
- Choose the type of upgrade procedure you want to use on each computer: seamless or full replacement.
- CommServe, MediaAgent, and Client computers can be upgraded in any order.

OPERATION WINDOW

By default, all operations in the CommCell can run for 24 hours. To prevent certain operations from running during certain periods of the day, you can define operation rules so that these operations are disabled during those times.

When operation rules are configured, operations that are started within the time window specified will go to a queued (as opposed to pending) state. Once the time window specified in the operation rule has elapsed, these queued or running operations will resume automatically.

- 1. In the CommCell Browser, right-click the appropriate entity, click **All Tasks**, and then click **Operation Window**.
- 2. Click Add.
- 3. From the Operation Window dialog box:
 - Enter the name of the rule in the Name field.
 - Select either an administration, data protection (either full or non-full), and/or a data recovery operation from the **Operations** pane.
- 4. Click **OK**.

SCHEDULE POLICY

A schedule policy is a defined schedule or group of schedules for specific operations to be performed on associated objects within the CommCell. When the schedules from a policy are run, the specified operations, (e.g., auxiliary copy, backup, etc.,) will be performed on the associated CommCell objects.

- 1. Expand the Policies node, right-click Schedule Policies and click Add.
- 2. Type the **Name** of the schedule policy.
- 3. Select the **Type** of schedule policy.
- 4. Select the Agent Type.
- 5. Type a description of the schedule policy.
- 6. Click Add.
- 7. Enter a Schedule Name in the Schedule Pattern tab.
- 8. Click **OK**.
- 9. On the **Associations** tab, select the objects to be associated with the schedule policy.
- 10. Click OK.

STORAGE POLICY

A Storage policy defines the data lifecycle management rules for protected data. Storage policies map data from its original location to a physical storage media

and determine its retention period.

- 1. Expand the Policies node, right-click Storage Policies, and select New Storage Policy.
- 2. Click Next.
- 3. Select **Data Protection and Archiving** to create a regular storage policy or **CommServe Disaster Recovery Backup** to backup the CommServe database and click **Next**.
- 4. Click Next.
- 5. Enter the name of storage policy and click Next.
- 6. Enter the name of the primary copy and click Next.
- 7. From the drop down box, select the default library for the primary copy and click Next.
- 8. From the drop down box, select the MediaAgent and click Next.
- 9. Enter number of data streams and set the retention period for the policy and click Next.
- 10. Click Next.
- 11. Click Browse, browse to your designated deduplication store location and click Next.
- 12. Confirm your selections and click Finish.

UNINSTALLING COMPONENTS

You can uninstall the components using one of the following method:

Method 1: Uninstall Components Using the CommCell Console

Method 2: Uninstall Components from Add or Remove Programs

METHOD 1: UNINSTALL COMPONENTS USING THE COMMCELL CONSOLE

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, right-click the desired Client Computer and click All Tasks -> Add/Remove Programs and click Uninstall Software.
- 2. Uninstall Software Options dialog will appear.
- 3. In the Uninstall Software tab, select Uninstall All to uninstall all the software packages.
- 4. In the Job Initiation tab, select Immediate to run the job immediately.

You can track the progress of the job from the **Job Controller** or **Event Viewer**.

METHOD 2: UNINSTALL COMPONENTS FROM ADD OR REMOVE PROGRAMS

- 1. Click the Start button on the Windows task bar and then click Control Panel.
- 2. Double-click Add/Remove Programs.
 - For Windows Vista/Windows 2008, click Uninstall a Program in the Control Panel.
- 3. Click **Remove** to uninstall the components in the following sequence:
 - 1. <Agent>
 - 2. File System iDataAgent
 - 3. Base Software

ADVANCED TOPICS

Provides comprehensive information about additional capabilities for the following features:

- Audit Trail
- Auxiliary Copy
- Erase Backup Data
- Global Filters
- License Administration
- License Usage by CapacityOperating System and Application Upgrades
- Operation Window
- Schedule Policy
- Storage Policies
- Uninstalling Components

Administration Guide - Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent

Back to Top

Recall Messages - Outlook Application

RECALLING MESSAGES FROM STUBS

If your administrator has configured this capability, you can recall archived messages directly from Outlook. Archived messages appear in your Outlook mailbox with a special icon in the message header. You can bring back the original message content by clicking the special icon.

Use the following procedure to recall archived messages:

- 1. Obtain your Outlook user name and password from your administrator.
- 2. Open the Outlook application.

If necessary, provide the user name and password provided by your administrator.

Locate the archived message you want to recall.
 Archived messages display a special icon in place of the typical envelope icon.



- 4. Double-click the icon.
 - The message is automatically displayed along with any attachments.
 - The message is also placed in the **Recovered Items** folder. The message will remain in this folder until it is moved or deleted.
 - If the message includes attachments, you can double-click the attachment link to view the attachment or save it to your computer.

If you want to recall the message again, you may do so by repeating the steps in this procedure.

RECALLING MESSAGES FROM UNIVERSAL STUB LINK

If your administrator has configured this capability, you can recall archived messages directly from Outlook. The body of the message includes a link that, by clicking it, brings back the original content of the message.

Use the following procedure to recall archived messages using the universal stub link:

- 1. Obtain your Outlook user name and password from your administrator.
- 2. Open the Outlook application.

If necessary, provide the user name and password provided by your administrator.

3. • Locate the archived message you want to recall.

Archived messages display a special icon in place of the typical envelope icon.

• Click the Click here to recall this message link to recall the message.



This is a test email with attachments

- 4. • If the message contains attachments, those attachments are listed in a .txt file as well as in the message body.
 - Click the Click here to recall this message to recall the message and the • attachments.

If prompted for a user name and password, enter the credentials you provided in Step 2.

- 5. The message is automatically displayed along with any attachments.
 - The message is also placed in the **Recovered Items** folder. The message will • remain in this folder until it is moved or deleted.
 - If the message includes attachments, you can double-click the attachment link to view the attachment or save it to your computer.

If you want to recall the message again, you may do so by repeating the steps in this procedure.



Recall Messages - Outlook Web Access (OWA)

RECALLING MESSAGES FROM STUBS

If your administrator has configured this capability, you can recall archived messages directly from the Outlook Web Access (OWA) interface in your web browser. Archived messages appear in your mailbox with a special icon in the message header, which can be clicked to access the original content of the message.

🔘 💿 👻 http://mail.company.com

Outlook Web App

Mail > Inbox 2 Item

Fayorites

🔄 Inbox

Inbox

Canal Sent Items

Sent Items
Deleted Item:

Junk E-Mail
 Notes
 Recovered Item
 RSS Feeds

🗿 Deleted Items

For example: http://mail.company.com/owa

Remember my credentials

Search Entire Mailbox

🙆 Te

New + Delete + Move + Filter + View +

Real Sample email without attachments

Double-click the stub

archive message with attach.

User name

Password

Use the following procedure to recall archived messages:

- 1. Type the Outlook Web Access URL provided by your administrator in the address line of your web browser.
- 2. Type the user name and password provided by your administrator.
 - Click OK.
- Locate the archived message you want to recall.
 Archived messages display a special icon in place of the typical envelope icon.

- 4. Double-click the icon.
 - The message is automatically displayed along with any attachments.
 - The message is also placed in the **Recovered Items** folder. The message will remain in this folder until it is moved or deleted.
 - If the message includes attachments, you can double-click the attachment link to view the attachment or save it to your computer.

If you want to recall the message again, you may do so by repeating the steps in this procedure.



• > ×

C

Q

est on

11:53 AM

11:50 AM

ons by Date 👻

RECALLING MESSAGES FROM UNIVERSAL STUB LINK

If your administrator has configured this capability, you can recall archived messages directly from the Outlook Web Access (OWA) interface in your web browser. The body of the message includes a link that, by clicking it, brings back the original content of the message.

Use the following procedure to recall archived messages:

- 1. Type the Outlook Web Access URL provided by your administrator in the address line of your web browser.
- 2. Type the user name and password provided by your administrator.
 - Click OK.



🕖 🕒 🗢 http://mail.company.com/awa

3. • Locate the archived message you want to recall.

• > ×

as well as in the message body.

4.

٠

attachments.

in Step 2.

Archived messages display a special icon in place of the typical envelope icon.

• Click the **Click here to recall this message** link included in the body of the message.

If the message contains attachments, those attachments are listed in a .txt file

If prompted for a user name and password, enter the credentials you provided

• Click the Click here to recall this message to recall the message and the

- Outlook Web App Mail > Inbox 2 Item: Find Sc Favorites
 Favorites
 Inbox
 Sent Items
 Deleted Items New + Delete + Move + Filter + Ø Sample email without attachments P Search Entire Mailbo Administrator Representation of the second s Inbox Drafts Sent Items Click here to recall this message Test archive message with attach. 11:50 AM This is a sample email Junk E-Mail Notes Recovered Ite Outlook Web App Mail > Inbox 2 Ite Find So Favorites inbox Sent Items Deleted Item 0 Test archive message with attachments 0 Adm inistrator ŵ R Test arc with attack Inbox Sent Items Test archive message with attach Click here to recall this m Junk E-Mail Notes Recovered Iter Archived attachment list: -03-10 Board Meeting Transcript.doc(1
- **5.** The message is automatically displayed along with any attachments.
 - The message is also placed in the **Recovered Items** folder. The message will remain in this folder until it is moved or deleted.
 - If the message includes attachments, you can double-click the attachment link to view the attachment or save it to your computer.

If you want to recall the message again, you may do so by repeating the steps in this procedure.



Desktop Browse - Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent (Administrator)

Install Setup



Desktop Browse enables users to browse data from an user-friendly Web interface from any remote location. To enable Desktop Browse operations, you need to first install the Web Search Server and the Web Search Client. The Web Search Server and Web Search Client can be installed on the same computer or on different computers.

Ensure that Service Pack 2 has been installed on the Client computer and Web Search Server prior to using this feature.

INSTALLING THE WEB SEARCH SERVER AND WEB SEARCH CLIENT

- 1. Ensure that the IIS is installed on the CommServe computer before installing the Web Search Server and Web Search Client.
- 2. Run Setup.exe from Software Installation Discs on the CommServe computer.

3.	Select the required language.	
	Click Next.	
		Select the language you will use during installation.
		English (United States)
		Next > Cancel
		Taut
4.	Select the option to install software on this computer.	
	NOTES	
	• The options that appear on this screen depend on the computer in which the	
	software is being installed.	
		Advanced options
		View documentation website View Install Quick Start Guide (Requires Adobe Acrobat Reader)
		Install Adobe Acrobat Reader
		₽ Exit
		₩ LM
5.	Click Next.	Installer
		Welcome
		The Installer will guide you through the setup process for Software
		This program will install Software on your computer.
		It is strongly recommended that you exit all Windows programs before running this
		Setup program. Click Cancel to quit Setup and then close any programs you have running. Click
		Next to continue with Setup.
		WARNING: This program is protected by copyright law and international treaties.
		Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this program, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum
		extent possible under the law.
		Installer
		Next> Cancel
6.	Click OK .	Installer
		It is strongly recommended that any and all virus scanning software be disabled immediately before continuing with this Software installation. Failure to do so may result in
		immediately before continuing with this Software installation. Failure to do so may result in file-locking by the virus scanner and subsequent failure for setup to install its own files.

Click OK once you have disabled them and setup will continue

OK.

Administration Guide - Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent

Click Next.

 Expand Client Modules | Web Search Server & Browse and select Web Search Server and Web Search Client.
 Click Next.

9. Click Yes.

- 10. Click Yes.
- 11. Specify the SQL Server System Administrator password.

NOTES

• This is the password for the administrator's account created by SQL during the installation.

Click Next.

Select the platforms you want to configure.	
	Move the pointer over a platform name to see a description of the platform and reasons why it may be diabled. Disk Space. [Req/Recommended] Instalation Foder: 0 MB/ 0 MB Temporary on C: drive: 0 MB/ 0 MB Special Registry Keys In Use ext > Cancel
nstaller	
Setup detected one or more instances of Microsoft SQL SR For performance easons, it is storgly recommended not to collwave server that make use of these instances. Click Yes to continue or No to ext.	rver running on this system. run any other Applications on
<u>Yes</u> <u>N</u> o	
nstaller	
Setup detected an instance of SQL Server with the name Compo this computer. If any third party applications are using this instance recommended that you exit the instal, unimulal Company instance Otherwise, you may continue with the instal. Click Yes to continue or No to exit. Yes No	e, it is strongly
nstaller	
SQL User Password Provide a password for SQL user 'sa'	
Please provide a password for SQL user 'sa'	925
SQL user 'sa' Enter Password:	

<u>N</u>ext> <u>C</u>ancel

License Agreement Please read the following License Agreement. Press the PAGE DOW/N key to view the entire agreement.

I accept the terms in the license agreement.
 I do not accept the terms in the license agreement.

Installer

nstaller

Select Platforms

End User License and Limited Warranty Agreement Software Release 9.0.0 (including Microsoft@ SQL Server⁷⁴⁴ 2008 Enterprise Edition, SQL Server⁷⁴⁴ 2008 Express Edition and Windows Pre-Installation Environment)

Fud Hoan I lanuas Aannas

.....

Next >

< Back

^

~

Cancel

12. Modify **Apache Tomcat Server port number** to **82**.

Click Next.

NOTES:

• Ensure that these port numbers are different and are not already used by any other services or application.

13. Click Next.

14. Select Add programs to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List, to add CommCell programs and services to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List.

Click Next.

This option enables CommCell operations across Windows firewall by adding CommCell programs and services to Windows firewall exclusion list.

It is recommended to select this option even if Windows firewall is disabled. This will allow the CommCell programs and services to function if the Windows firewall is enabled at a later time.

15. Enter the Web Search Server database installation path.

Click **Browse** to modify the default location.

Click Next.

Port Number Selec			
and Apache.	c tion I numbers you want to use for II!	5	
1	IS Default WebSite port numbe	r. 80	e
Apa	che Tomcat Server port numbe	80	
	Search Service port numbe	81	
Installer	< Back	Next >	Cancel
Installer			
Download and Inst	all Latest Update Packs ne latest service pack and post provider website.		
	d latest update pack(s) nternet connectivity at this time. ad speed.	This process may take some	time
Installer	< Back	Next >	Cancel
Installer			
Windows Firewall	Exclusion List municate through Windows		
Windows Firewall i	is ON		
🔽 Add programs	to the Windows Firewall Exclusi	on List	
If you plan on usin exclusion list.	g Windows Firewall, it is recomm	nended to add the software p	programs to the
Installer	< Back	Next>	Cancel
Installer		Next >	
Installer		Next>	
~	< Back	Next>	
Installer Database Path Location for database f	< Back	Next>	Cancel

< Back

Next>

Cancel

Installer

16. Click Next.

Administration Guide - Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent

		Installer
		Web Administration Web Administration for Web Search Client
		⊂ Virtual Directories for Web Search Client:
		Compliance site: compliancesearch
		End-user site: search
		Admin site: searchadmin
		Installer
17.	Click Vez	
17.	Click Yes .	Installer
		Setup must now stop and restart the World Wide Web Publishing (W3SVC) service.
		Setup must now stop and restart the World Wide Web Publishing (W35VL) service. Select Yes to continue or No to continue without restarting the service.
		If you select No, you must manually stop and restart the World Wide Web Publishing (W3SVC) service when setup completes.
		(W3SVC) service when setup completes.
		Yes No
18.	Click OK .	Installer
		Before starting any software services, this computer will require a reboot after completing and the services of the service
		of Setup.
10	Click Next	
19.	Click Next.	Installer
19.	Click Next.	Summary
19.	Click Next.	
19.	Click Next .	Summary Summary of install selections
19.	Click Next .	Summary
19.	Click Next .	Summary Summary of install selections
19.	Click Next .	Summary Summary of install selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files.
19.	Click Next .	Summary Summary of install selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files.
19.	Click Next .	Summary Summary of install selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. Destination Path = C:\Program Files\ CommServe Host = mycomputer.mycompany.com
19.	Click Next .	Summary Summary of install selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. Destination Path = C.\Program Files\ CommServe Host = mycomputer mycompany.com Interface Name = audi.mycompany.com Client = audi.
19.	Click Next .	Summary Summary of install selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. Destination Path = C:\Program Files\ CommiServe Host = mpcomputer impcompany.com Interlace Name = audi.mpcompany.com Dent = supple = C:\Program Files\UpbResults UpbResults Table = C:\Program Files\UpbResults
19.	Click Next .	Summary Summary of install selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. Destination Path = C:\Program Files\ CommServe Heat = rev:Compare rev:Com Underfice Name = audia rev:Compare rev:Com Clicent = audi Global Filters = Use Cell level policy
19.	Click Next .	Summary Summary of install selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. Destination Path = C:\Program Files\ CommServe Host = mycomputer.mycompany.com Interface Name = audi.mycompany.com Client = audi. Job Results Path = C:\Program Files\UobResults Global Filters = Use Cell level policy
19.	Click Next .	Summary Summary of install selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. Destination Path = C:\Program Files\ CommServe Heat = rev:Compare rev:Com Underfice Name = audia rev:Compare rev:Com Clicent = audi Global Filters = Use Cell level policy
19.	Click Next .	Summary Summary of install selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. Destination Path = C:\Program Files\ Commission Path = C:\Program Files\ Commission Path = C:\Program Files\ Commission Path = C:\Program Files\ Destination Path = C:\Program Files\ Commission Path = C:\Program Files\ Disclose Files = uadi Job Results Path = C:\Program Files\UbBResults Global Filters = Use Cell level policy Installer
		Summary Summary of install selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. Destination Path = C.\Program Files\ CommServe Host = mycomputer mycompany, com Interface Name = audi.mycompany.com Client = audi. Job Results Path = C.\Program Files\UobResults Global Filters = Use Cell level policy Installer < Back Next >
20.		Summary Summary of install selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. Destination Path = C.\Program Files\ Dommserve Host = mycomputer.mycompany.com Interface Name = audi.mycompany.com Global Filers = Use Cell level policy Installer Cancel
		Summary Summary of install selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. Destination Path = C.\Program Files\ CommServe Host = mycomputer mycompany, com Interface Name = audi.mycompany.com Client = audi. Job Results Path = C.\Program Files\UobResults Global Filters = Use Cell level policy Installer < Back Next >
		Summary Summary of install selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. Destination Path = 0.\Program Files\ CommServe Host = reycomputer mycomm any com Interface waid mycompany.com Client = aud Job Results Path = Use Program Files\ Global Filters = Use Cell level policy Installer Schedule Reminder
		Summary Summary of install selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. Destination Path = 0.\Program Files\ CommServe Host = reycomputer mycomm any com Interface waid mycompany.com Client = aud Job Results Path = Use Program Files\ Global Filters = Use Cell level policy Installer Schedule Reminder
		Summary Summary of install selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. Destination Path = 0.\Program Files\ CommServe Host = reycomputer mycomm any com Interface waid mycompany.com Client = aud Job Results Path = Use Program Files\ Global Filters = Use Cell level policy Installer Schedule Reminder
		Summary Summary of install selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. Destination Path = C:\Program Files\ CommiServe Host = mycomputer mycompany.com Dennt = audit mycompany.com Dennt = audit mycompany.com Dennt = audit mycompany.com Destination Path = C:\Program Files\ CommiServe Host = mycomputer mycompany.com Dennt = audit mycompany.com Destination Path = C:\Program Files\ CommiServe Host = mycomputer mycompany.com Dent = audit mycompany.com Destination Path = C:\Program Files\UbBesuits Global Filters = Use Cell level policy Installer Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Schedule for each DataAgent that has been installed on
		Summary Summary of install selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. Destination Path = C:\Program Files\ CommiServe Host = mycomputer inycompany, com Denne = audit mycompany, com Denne = audit audit mycompany, com Denne = audit audit mycompany, com Destination Path = C:\Program Files\ CommiServe Host = mycomputer inycompany, com Denne = audit mycompany, com Denne = audit mycompany, com Denne = audit mycompany, com Denne = audit Path = C:\Program Files\UbbResults Global Filters = Use Cell level policy Imataller Installer Cancel Installer Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Schedule for each DataAgent that has been installed on this client computer.
		Summary Summary of install selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. Destination Path = C:\Program Files\ CommServe Host = mycomputer.mycompany.com Detrit = audi.mycompany.com Detrit = audi.mycompany.com Client = audi.mycompany.com Destination Path = C:\Program Files\UobResults Global Files = Use Cell level policy Installer Cancel Installer Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Schedule for each iDataAgent that has been installed on this client computer. Job Schedules are required to allow the iDataAgents to perform automated backup and restore operations.
		Summary Summary of install selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. Destination Path = C.\Program Files\ CommServe Host = mycomputer mycompany.com Interface None = audi.mycompany.com Client =audi Job Results Path = C.\Program Files\UbProgram.Files\UbProgram.Client Paudi Global Filters = Use Cell level policy Installer Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You till need to create a Job Schedule for each DataAgent that has been installed on this client computer. Job Schedules are ensation withe DataAgents to perform automated backup
		Summary Summary of install selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. Destination Path = C:\Program Files\ CommServe Host = mycomparter sproorpary.com CommServe Host = mycomparter sproorpary.com CommServe Host = mycomparter sproorpary.com CommServe Host = mycomparter sproorpary.com Destination Path = C:\Program Files\ CommServe Host = mycomparter sproorpary.com Dent = aud Job Results Path = C:\Program Files\ Definet = aud Job Results Path = C:\Program Files\DefinetUbResults Sinbal Filters = Use Cell level policy Installer Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Schedule for each DataAgent that has been installed on this client computer. Job Schedule are required to allow the DataAgents to perform automated backup and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be accomplicated through the CommCell Console
		Summary Summary of install selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. Destination Path = C:\Program Files\ CommServe Host = mycomputer mycompany.com Therates Name = audi-mycompany.com UoR Result Path = C:\Program Files\UbResults Global Filters = Use Cell level policy Installer Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You till need to create a Job Schedule for each DataAgent that has been installed on this client computer. Job Schedule reation can be accomplished through the CommCell Console administration interface.
		Summary Summary of install selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. Destination Path C.VProgram Files/ CommServe Host = mycomputer information computer information to the start settings. Click Next to begin copying files. Destination Path C.VProgram Files/ CommServe Host = mycomputer, com Client = audi Job Results Path C.VProgram Files/VobResults Global Filter: Use Cell level policy Installer Schedule Reminder Destination Job Schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Schedule for each DataAgent that has been installed on this click computer. Job Schedule creation can be accomplished through the CommCell Console administration interface. Installer
		Summary Summary of install selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. Destination Path = C:\Program Files\ CommServe Host = mycomputer mycompany.com Therates Name = audi-mycompany.com UoR Result Path = C:\Program Files\UbResults Global Filters = Use Cell level policy Installer Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You till need to create a Job Schedule for each DataAgent that has been installed on this client computer. Job Schedule reation can be accomplished through the CommCell Console administration interface.

21. Click **Reboot** to finish the installation.

X

a reboot after completion

×

~

Next >
essfullo		
m:81/SearchSvc		
m-80/cearch		
m:80/searchadmin		
	cuired that you reboot this	
		-
		_
	essfully. m:81/SearchSvc m:80/search m:80/searchadmin m:80/searchadmin m:80/searchadmin m:80/searchadmin m:80/searchadmin ore starting any service, it is re	m:81/SearchSvc m:80/search m:80/search

Desktop Browse - Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent (Administrator)

Install Setup

< Previous Next >>

Once the Web Search Server and Web Search Client are installed, perform the following configurations:

SETTING UP PERMISSIONS FOR END USERS

- 1. Obtain the domain name and fully qualified domain name of the Active Directory server.
- 2. Ensure that LDAP is configured on the AD server:
 - From the Active Directory Server, select Start | Run.
 - Type Idp on the Run dialog box and click OK.
 - Click the Connections menu option, and select Connect.
 - From the **Connect** dialog box, enter the following information:
 - Server: Enter the name of the external domain server, e.g., computer.domain.com.
 - $\circ~$ Port: Enter 636 as the port number for the external domain server.
 - SSL: Mark this checkbox to check for the proper certificate.
 - Click OK. If properly configured for LDAP, the external domain server details will be displayed in the LDP windowpane. If not configured for use with LDAP, an error message will appear indicating that a connection cannot be made using this feature.
- From the CommCell Browser, expand the Security node, right-click Name Servers | Add New Domain and click Active Directory.

- 4. Enter the domain name in NetBIOS Name text box, e.g., mydomain.
 - Enter the Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN), e.g., mydomain.mycompany.com in the Domain Name text box.



- Click Edit to enter the user account information for the domain.
 - Type Username and Password in Enter User Account Information.
 - Click OK.

5.

Add New Domain Controller 🛛 🗙
NetBIOS Name: Domain Name: User Account: Edit Conservation Conserva
OK Cancel Help
Add New Domain Controller
NetBIOS Name:
Domain Name: User Account: Edit

Enable SSO Use Secure LDAP Disable the use of this controller

Description

- Select Use Secure LDAP to enable the secure Lightweight Directory Access • Protocol (LDAP) with the external domain.
 - Click OK.

6.

- 7. Once you have registered the Domain Controller, restart the IIS services on the Web Search Server.
 - From your CommServe computer, click the Start button on the Windows task bar and then click Administrative Tools.
 - Click Services.
 - In the Services window, select and right-click IIS Admin Service and click Restart.
 - Restart Other Services dialog will be displayed, click Yes.
- From the CommCell Browser, expand the Security node, right-click CommCell User 8. Groups and select New User Group.

so-antoné4	A searchest > 0	Security > 2 Conincel User Groups >		0 D 0	
Committee Client Computer Groups	Liter Group	Desciption	Enabled	*	New User Group
Cleat Computer Groups	a nator	Administrative Group	V	-	
Security	A View Al	Members of this group can see			
Connections: 2 Connections: 2 Connections: 2 Connections: 2 Connection: 2 Con			(acting)		
CommCell Browner					
Agents					

Cancel Help

OK

- 9. • Type the user group name in **Name** text box.
 - Type a description on the user group in **Description** box.
 - Click Capabilities tab.



- Browse
- End user search
- Click > to move the selected capabilities to the **Assigned Capabilities** list box.
- Click Associated Entities tab.

- **11.** Expand **Client Computers** node and select the client computers to be browsed.
 - Click OK.



New User Group Properties

- 12. Ensure that the specific external user group in which the user belongs has Group Scope defined as Globalon the Active Directory Domain:
 - Navigate to Start | Administrative Tools | Active Directory Users and Computers.
 - Right-click the external group and select **Properties**.
 - Select Group from Group Scope and click OK.

13. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Security | Name Server |<Domain Name>, right-click External Groups and select Add New Group.

- Click Browse.
 - Select the **<external user group name>** in which the user belongs.

- **15.** Select the **CommCell User Group** to associate with the specified external user group.
 - Click OK.







16. From the CommCell Browser, right-click to **<Client Computer>** on which Web Search Server is installed and click **Properties**.

17. Click Search Server URLs tab.

Make a note of $\mbox{End}\ \mbox{User}\ \mbox{Url}$ to provide the URL to the user to browse and recover the data.

SETTING UP PERMISSIONS FOR COMPLIANCE USERS

- 1. Obtain the domain name and fully qualified domain name of the Active Directory server.
- 2. Ensure that LDAP is configured on the AD server:
 - From the Active Directory Server, select Start | Run.
 - Type **Idp** on the **Run** dialog box and click **OK**.
 - Click the **Connections** menu option, and select **Connect**.
 - From the **Connect** dialog box, enter the following information:
 - Server: Enter the name of the external domain server, e.g., computer.domain.com.
 - $\circ~$ Port: Enter 636 as the port number for the external domain server.
 - $\circ~$ SSL: Mark this checkbox to check for the proper certificate.
 - Click **OK**. If properly configured for LDAP, the external domain server details will be displayed in the LDP windowpane. If not configured for use with LDAP, an error

OK Cancel Help



message will appear indicating that a connection cannot be made using this feature.

3. From the CommCell Browser, expand the Security node, right-click Name Servers | Add New Domain and click Active Directory.

- 4. Enter the domain name in NetBIOS Name text box, e.g., mydomain.
 - Enter the Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN), e.g., mydomain.mycompany.com in the Domain Name text box.

	Connect Service: Service: Ser		
Ready			
🛕 Councel Browser 🛛 🖉	Job Controller X KE Name Servers X 💁 What's rew? X		4 ⊨ 8
R A Clert Computer Groups	eventer 3 (2 such 2 (2 more 3		* = = * * *
Add New Dom			
NetBIOS Name:	mycompany		
Domain Name:	mycompany		
User Account:	gbuilder	Edit	
Resource Domain		~	
Enable SSO			

🚯 Ldo

. 🗆 X



- Click **Edit** to enter the user account information for the domain.
 - Type Username and Password in Enter User Account Information.
 - Click OK.

Add New Domain Controller
NetBIOS Name: Domain Name: User Account: Rest Enter User Account Information User Name: Person Name: Confirm Password: 4 Confirm Password: 4 Confirm Password: 4 Confirm Password: 4
OK Cancel Help
Add New Domain Controller
NetBIOS Name:
User Account: Edit

Enable SSO Use Secure LDAP Disable the use of this controller

Description

- Select Use Secure LDAP to enable the secure Lightweight Directory Access • Protocol (LDAP) with the external domain.
 - Click OK.

6.

- 7. Once you have registered the Domain Controller, restart the IIS services on the Web Search Server.
 - From your CommServe computer, click the Start button on the Windows task bar and then click Administrative Tools.
 - Click Services.
 - In the $\ensuremath{\mathsf{Services}}$ window, select and right-click $\ensuremath{\mathbf{IIS}}$ $\ensuremath{\mathsf{Admin}}$ $\ensuremath{\mathsf{Service}}$ and click • Restart.
 - Restart Other Services dialog will be displayed, click Yes.
- From the CommCell Browser, expand the Security node, right-click CommCell User 8. Groups and select New User Group.

so-antoné4	A searchest > 0	Security > 2 Conincel User Groups >		0 D 0	
Committee Client Computer Groups	Liter Group	Desciption	Enabled	*	New User Group
Cleat Computer Groups	a nator	Administrative Group	V	-	
Security	A View Al	Members of this group can see			
Connections: 2 Connections: 2 Connections: 2 Connections: 2 Connection: 2 Con			(acting)		
CommCell Browner					
Agents					

Cancel Help

OK

- 9. • Type the user group name in **Name** text box.
 - Type a description on the user group in **Description** box.
 - Click Capabilities tab.

- **10.** Press **Ctrl** key and select the following capabilities:
 - Browse
 - o Compliance Search
 - Legal Hold Management
 - Annotation Management
 - Tag Management
 - ERM Management
 - Click > to move the selected capabilities to the **Assigned Capabilities** list box.
 - Click Associated Entities tab.

- **11.** Expand **Client Computers** node and select the client computers to be browsed.
 - Click OK.



New User Group Properties

Name: 1

General Capabilities Users Associated Entities Search

- 12. Ensure that the specific external user group in which the user belongs has Group Scope defined as Globalon the Active Directory Domain:
 - Navigate to Start | Administrative Tools | Active Directory Users and Computers.
 - Right-click the external group and select **Properties**.
 - Select Group from Group Scope and click OK.

13. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Security | Name Server |<Domain Name>, right-click External Groups and select Add New Group.

- Click Browse.
 - Select the **<external user group name>** in which the user belongs.

- **15.** Select the **CommCell User Group** to associate with the specified external user group.
 - Click OK.







Select the CommCell user groups to be associated with the above Exter Available CommCell Groups Associated CommCell Group Global Domino Enduser Group View All exch-endusersearch master	
Select the CommCell user groups to be associated with the above Exter Available CommCell Groups Associated CommCell Group Global Domino Enduser Group View All exchendusersearch	nal Group:
Select the CommCell user groups to be associated with the above Exter Available CommCell Groups Associated CommCell Group Global Domino Enduser Group View All exchendusersearch	nal Group:
Available CommCell Groups Associated CommCell Group Global Domino Enduser Group Wew All exch-endusersearch master	
View All < exch-endusersearch	5
exch-endusersearch	
(master	
1 2	
Description	
·	
	Help
ford - CommCett Console File View Tacks Windows "	
2 🖪 🖪 🗞 🖼 🚺	
CommCell Browser 7 Grad_on	
a and the Compart Graph and Charles Comparts and Charles Comparts and Charles Comparts and Charles Comparts and Charles System Al Tables and Charles System And Charles and Charles	
B Showy_on B Stord_on	
Security Mew Properties Properties	
e Reports	
Content Director SyM Enterprise Viewer Content price Viewer	
ar ∰ Cost Analysis æ ∰ Workflows	
🛆 CommCel Browser	
S Agents	
2 1 object(s) ford_cn admin	
s adharda)	
Client Computer Properties	
	nt Side Deduplica
General Version Security Activity Control Groups Frewall Configuration Policies Encryption Advanced Content Indexing Search Server URLs Registry Key Settings Clie	
Compliance UH: http://search3.dm3.company.com:82/compliancesearch	
Compliance UH: http://search3.dm3.company.com:82/compliancesearch End User UH: http://search3.dm3.company.com:82/search	
Compliance UH: http://search3.dm3.company.com:82/compliancesearch	
Compliance LH: http://search3.dm3.compary.com/82/compliancesearch End User LH: http://search3.dm3.compary.com/82/search Admin/Search Analytics LH: http://search3.dm3.compary.com/82/searchadmin	
Complanos UH: http://search3.dxi3.company.com/s2/complanosearch End User UH: http://search3.dxi3.company.com/s2/search3 Adm/Search Analytis: http://search3.dxi3.company.com/s2/search3dxii Meb Server UH: http://search3.dxi3.company.com/s2/search3dxii	
Complanos UH: http://search3.dxi3.company.com/s2/complanosearch End User UH: http://search3.dxi3.company.com/s2/search3 Adm/Search Analytis: http://search3.dxi3.company.com/s2/search3dxii Meb Server UH: http://search3.dxi3.company.com/s2/search3dxii	
Complanos UH: http://search3.dxi3.company.com/s2/complanosearch End User UH: http://search3.dxi3.company.com/s2/search3 Adm/Search Analytis: http://search3.dxi3.company.com/s2/search3dxii Meb Server UH: http://search3.dxi3.company.com/s2/search3dxii	
Complanos UH: http://search3.dxi3.company.com/s2/complanosearch End User UH: http://search3.dxi3.company.com/s2/search3 Adm/Search Analytis: http://search3.dxi3.company.com/s2/search3dxii Meb Server UH: http://search3.dxi3.company.com/s2/search3dxii	
Complance UH: Intp://search3.dm3.compary.com/s2/complancesearch End User UH: http://search3.dm3.compary.com/s2/search4 Adem/Search Analytics UH: http://search3.dm3.compary.com/s2/search4 Med Searce UE: http://search3.dm3.compary.com/s2/search4	
Complance UH: Intp://search3.dm3.compary.com/s2/complancesearch End User UH: http://search3.dm3.compary.com/s2/search4 Adem/Search Analytics UH: http://search3.dm3.compary.com/s2/search4 Med Searce UE: http://search3.dm3.compary.com/s2/search4	
Complexing UH: http://search3.dm3.compary.com/82/complexiges/archaener/http://search3.dm3.compary.com/82/searchaener/http://search3.dm3.compary.com/82/searchaener/http://search3.dm3.compary.com/82/searchaener/http://search3.dm3.compary.com/82/searchaener/http://search3.dm3.compary.com/82/searchaener/http://search3.dm3.compary.com/82/searchaener/http://search3.dm3.compary.com/82/searchaener/http://search3.dm3.compary.com/82/searchaener/http://search3.dm3.compary.com/82/searchaener/http://search3.dm3.compary.com/82/searchaener/http://search3.dm3.compary.com/82/searchaener/http://search3.dm3.compary.com/82/searchaener/http://search3.dm3.compary.com/82/searchaener/http://search3.dm3.compary.com/82/searchaener/http://search3.dm3.compary.com/82/searchaener/http://search3.dm3.compary.com/82/search3.dm3.dm3.compary.com/82/search3.dm3.dm3.compary.com/82/search3.dm3.com/82/search3.dm3.dm3.dm3.dm3.dm3.dm3.dm3.dm3.dm3.dm	
Complexed UN: http://search3.dm3.compary.com/82/complexeserch End User UN: http://search3.dm3.compary.com/82/search4 Admin/Search Anabylos: http://search3.dm3.compary.com/82/search4admin Mob Server UN: http://search3.dm3.compary.com/82/search4admin	
Complement UH: http://search3.dm3.compary.com/82/complementsearch End Use UH: http://search3.dm3.compary.com/82/search3.dm3 Admit/Search3.md3.compary.com/82/search3.dm3 http://search3.dm3 Mode Server Elan http://search3.dm3.compary.com/82/search3/cm2 Web Server Name: search3.dm3.compary.com	ncel Help

16. From the CommCell Browser, right-click to **<Client Computer>** on which Web Search Server is installed and click **Properties**.

Make a note of **End User Url** to provide the URL to the user to browse and recover the data.

17.

Click Search Server URLs tab.

ENABLING SECURED ACCESS FOR WEB SEARCH CLIENT

Use the following steps to enable secured access on the Web search client. This will allow you to access the Web Console using https instead of http.

INSTALL JAVA WITH ALL THE UPDATES

- 1. Stop the Tomcat services
- 2. If UAC is enabled, disable it.
- 3. Download and install the latest version of JAVA with all the updates on the Web client computer.
- 4. Open the command prompt window on the Web client computer, and execute the following command to verify if JAVA has been properly installed on the Web client computer:

C:\java -version

If you find that JAVA with the latest updates has not been installed, uninstall JAVA that you have installed and reinstall it again with all the updates.

Navigate to the command prompt on the Web client computer, and run the command specified in step 4 to verify if JAVA has been installed successfully. Skip this step if the updates are installed successfully.

- 5. Start Tomcat services. If the Tomcat fails to start, point the JVM manually to Tomcat using the following steps:
 - Open the command prompt window on the Web client computer, navigate to <product_INSTALL_PATH>\Apache\bin folder and execute the following command:
 - C:\<PRODUCT_INSTALL_PATH>\Apache\bin>tomcat6w.exe //ES//GxTomcatInstance001
 - where, Instance001 is the instance installed on the WebClient computer.
 - On the Tomcat Services Instance properties dialog box, click the Java tab, and clear the Use default check box.
 - Restart Tomcat services

CONFIGURE SSL ON THE TOMCAT SERVER

Use the following steps for configuring SSL (Secure Socket layer) on the Tomcat Server:

1. Navigate to command prompt and run the following command:

C:\Program Files\Java\jre6\bin>keytool -genkey -alias cvtomcat -keyalg RSA -keystore "C:\Program Files\company\product\Apache\cert\keystore"

- 2. Backup the server.xml file located in <product_install_path>\Apache\conf before making any changes to it.
- 3. In order to setup a JAVA JSSE connector to support SSL, search for the following entry in the server.xml:

<Listener className="org.apache.catalina.core.AprLifecycleListener" SSLEngine="on" />

Modify the above entry as following:

<Listener className="org.apache.catalina.core.AprLifecycleListener" SSLEngine="off" />

4. Add the following entry to the server.xml file:

<Connector port="443" protocol="org.apache.coyote.http11.Http11NioProtocol" SSLEnabled="true" maxThreads="150" scheme="https" secure="true" clientAuth="false" keystoreFile="C:/Program Files/CommVault/Simpana/Apache/cert/keystore" keystorePass="mnoettomcat" sslProtocol="TLS" />

5. Save the server.xml file, and restart the Tomcat services.

< Previous Next >>

Desktop Browse - Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent (User)

Getting Started Restore Advanced Options

(Previous) Next >

Desktop Browse enables users to browse and restore data using a web browser from any remote location without the need for installing the software.

LOGGING TO WEB CONSOLE

1. Open the supported Web Browser and type the Web Console URL in the address line. For example, http://amber.domain.company.com/<web_alias_name>

🖉 Blank Page - Windows Internet Explorer	
() Thtp://amber.domain.company.com/compliancesearch	
File Edit View Favorites Tools Help	
🙀 Favorites 🏾 🏀 Blank Page	

- Type the login credentials to access the Web Console.
 - Click Login.

2.

😋 🕑 👻 🙋 http:// company:82/com	mpliancesearch/			✓ 49
Pile Edit View Pavorites Tools P	1elp			
🖕 Favorites 🧭 Compliance Search				
	📁 Login to We	b Console		
	Usemame:	1		
	Password:			
		Idc_doc_vm	~	
	Domain:			
	Domain:		Login	
	Domain:	[
	Domain:			

BROWSING AND RESTORING DATA

1. From the Web Console, click **Browse** on the left pane.

2. Double-click the **<CommServe computer name>**.

Recent Dearches					
				(A)	
			Advanced Search		
Search					
By Sets					
Erwse					
Search View Report View					
Search Application Loaded.				Ecopped in User: dos_admin	(parae +
Er rese	Search Browne Dream 77				
Branne Carologia	Search Trovice Encars 10				
Erzenze C	Sourch Brown-Breats 77				
El tenset	Seach Bower-Entaits "				
Transa Canada Jac	Search Thouse Engls				
To name	Instrik Thomas Emails "				
To name	Search Trouve for any "				
Preser	Search Troove for any "				
Preez C	Barch Providentials				
In sease Constant Con	Barch. Provide Strate."			R	
Prove C	BaseCh Provide Structure **		Advanced Search	A	
	March Brook Street **		ådancel Saach	×	
	March Reveal Courts 10		Advanced Search	<u>A</u>	
	Taxet. Entropy Entropy To		Advanced Search	20	
	Taxas		Absted Lanch	×	
	Taxata		Abarod Sanh	10	
			Addressed Stands	×	
			Abarod Sanh		
			Abbarot Sand	×	
			Abaros Linech		
			AbasetSonA	a.	
		[danot.inst	×	
			folecost filmed	24	
		[Adamad Simol	ж	
			Abacat Sents	×	
(Theorem California			Almost Sand	ж	
			Almost Sand	3	
			Abaculines.	ж	
			Almost Sock		

3. Double-click <Archived MailBoxes>



- **4.** Click the **<Mailbox name>**.
 - Double-click the Mailbox item from which you want to restore from the right pane.

Right-click the item to be restored, and select Restore.
 The item is copied to the MyReviewSet folder under MySets | ReviewSet node in the Web Console.

7. Right-click the item and select **Download Item**.

- 8.
- Click Save from the File Download dialog.
- Specify the location where the file needs to be downloaded in the Web Browser's download dialog box.
- Click Save.



Desktop Browse - Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent (User)

Getting Started Restore

estore Advanced Options

< Previous Next >

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Restoring Emails From a Specific Time Range Finding Emails with a Specific Subject Name Finding Emails From a Specific User Finding Emails To a Specific User Finding emails with the Received time range

RESTORING EMAILS FROM A SPECIFIC TIME RANGE

You can also browse and restore emails that were backed up some time earlier or within a specific time range.

- 1. From the Web Console, click **Browse** on the left pane.
- 2. Double-click the <CommServe computer name>.
- 3. Double-click Archived MailBoxes.
- 4. Double-click the specific **<mailbox name>** and select one of the following options:
 - O Recent
 - Last Week
 - $\circ~$ Two Weeks Ago
 - Three Weeks Ago
 - o Last Month
- 5. Right-click the **<mailbox>** and select **Browse By Time**.
- 6. Select the time range in the Before drop down boxes.
- 7. Click **After** and specify the time range.
- 8. Click OK.
- 9. Navigate to the mailbox item to be restored on the right pane.
- Right-click the item and select **Restore.** The mailbox item is copied to the MyReviewSet folder under MySets | ReviewSet node in the Web Console.
- 11. Right-click the item and select Download Item.
- 12. Click Save from the File Download dialog.
- 13. Specify the location where the mailbox item needs to be downloaded in the Web Browser's download dialog box , and click **Save**.

FINDING EMAILS WITH A SPECIFIC SUBJECT NAME

You can use **Find** option to search and locate emails with a specific **Subject** name.

Follow the steps given below to find and locate Mailbox items with a specific $\ensuremath{\textbf{Subject}}$ name.

- 1. From the Web Console, click Browse on the left pane.
- 2. Double-click the **<CommServe computer name>**.
- 3. Double-click Archived MailBoxes.
- 4. Right-click the <Mailbox name> and select Find.
- 5. Type the **Subject** details of the email.
- 6. Click OK.

Orman	Earth Broaseldc.doc.x	n Hes 2			
a 💋 ide_doc_m	101_001_V10				
4 🗭 Files	File Name		Size	Modded line	Retrieved
	Ted		141.68	14/12/2910-90.4453 PM	۲
ListWeek S Ago					
Three Weeks Aga	1				
LastMonth	Specify Browse Time				
E C dadacales	before:				
	11/17/10	3 220 FM ¥			
	Atter				
		C 2:20 FM			
		Carcel			
No. Search					
My Sets					
Dermore	(I I Papet MT P P				Displaying 1 - 1 of 1
Search View Report View					
de der verstStonelanssearch/#					Copped in User: doc_admin@id.tab +

	v

FINDING EMAILS FROM A SPECIFIC USER

You can use Find option to search and locate emails from a specific user.

Follow the steps given below to find and locate emails from a specific user..

- 1. From the Web Console, click **Browse** on the left pane.
- 2. Double-click the **<CommServe computer name>**.
- 3. Double-click Archived MailBoxes.
- 4. Right-click the **<Mailbox name>** and select **Find**.
- 5. Type the **From** details of the Email.
- 6. Click **OK**.



FINDING EMAILS TO A SPECIFIC USER

You can user **Find** option to find and locate emails to a specific user.

Follow the steps given below to find and locate emails to a specific user.

- 1. From the Web Console, click **Browse** on the left pane.
- 2. Double-click the **<CommServe computer name>**.
- 3. Double-click Archived MailBoxes.
- 4. Right-click the **<Mailbox name>** and select **Find**.
- 5. Type the **To** details of the Mailbox item.
- 6. Click **OK**.

nd options in folder \setminus	X
Email	
Subject	
From	
То	
Received Time	
Any	×
	Ok Cancel

FINDING EMAILS WITH THE RECEIVED TIME RANGE

Follow the steps given below to find and locate Mailbox items based on the $\ensuremath{\textbf{Received}}$ $\ensuremath{\textbf{Time.}}$

- 1. From the Web Console, click **Browse** on the left pane.
- 2. Double-click the **<CommServe computer name>**.
- 3. Double-click Archived MailBoxes.
- 4. Right-click the **<Mailbox name>** and select **Find**.
- 5. Select Received Time from drop-down menu.
- 6. Click **OK**.

d options in folder \setminus	×
Email	
Subject	
From	
То	
Received Time	
Any	~

Administration Guide - Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent

Previous Next >

Desktop Browse - Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent (User)

Getting Started Restore Advanced Options

< Previous Next >

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Retaining an Email for Long Term Moving an Email to a Records Management Site Adding Comments to an Email Adding Review Tags to an Email Downloading an Email

Downloading Multiple Emails

Saving an Email Properties

Sharing Emails to Other Users

Sharing Browse Results to Other Users

RETAINING AN EMAIL FOR LONG TERM

Compliance users can retain a specific mail for a longer term by moving them to a Legal Hold container.

- 1. From the Web Console, click MySets on the left pane.
- 2. Double-click Review Set and click the <Review Set Name>.
- 3. Right-click the mail, navigate to Add Item To | Legal Holds and select <Legal Hold Name>.



MOVING AN EMAIL TO A RECORDS MANAGEMENT SITE

Compliance users can move mails to a Records Management Site (eg., Microsoft SharePoint Site) using an ERM Connector.

- 1. From the Web Console, click **MySets** on the left pane.
- 2. Double-click Review Set and click the <Review Set Name>.
- 3. Right-click the mail, and select Submit To ERM.
- Click ERM Connector Name drop-down box and select the <ERM Connector name>.
- 5. Click **OK**.

ADDING COMMENTS TO AN EMAIL

- 1. From the Web Console, click **MySets** on the left pane.
- 2. Double-click Review Set and click the <Review Set Name>.
- 3. Right-click the mail and select **Comment**.
- 4. Type the statement for comments and click **Comment**.
- 5. Click **Close** to exit the Comment window.



File None depends of a File None Chappends 22, utb Chall None deCala Address Cha

Learning and a second and

ADDING REVIEW TAGS TO AN EMAIL

Compliance users can apply review tags to a mail to facilitate easy search based on tags at a later point of time.

1. From the Web Console, click MySets on the left pane.

- 2. Double-click Review Set and click the <Review Set Name>.
- 3. Right-click the mail and select Manage Tag.
- 4. On the Manage Tag(s) window, select the tag to apply.
- 5. Click Apply Tags.

DOWNLOADING AN EMAIL

- 1. From the Web Console, click MySets on the left pane.
- 2. Double-click Review Set and click the <Review Set Name>.
- 3. Right-click the mail and select Download Item.
- Specify the location where the mail needs to be downloaded in the Web Browser's download dialog box.

By Sets	E Search I	ly Review Set 27							
▲ 🔂 Review Det								Show All + Option	5.4
🔛 My ReviewDet		Title	Location	Size	Modified Time	Taglió	Retrieved Hold	Record Cente	
 B. Lagarenter Generation Generation Territori Ter	File Name File Nam Clard Nam Account	Lasa E E E E E E E E E E E E E E E E E E	€ Cartere (concert free (concert free (concert free (concert free concert free Canton	3348				•	
To Search									
ity Sets									
Drowse									
Search View Report View									
Tutal Delected Bencal, 1								User doc_admingliddab	

DOWNLOADING MULTIPLE EMAILS

In order to download multiple mails, you can export the selected mails/folder to a compressed file format (CAB format) and then download the CAB file to your computer.

- 1. From the Web Console, click **MySets** on the left pane.
- 2. Double-click Review Set and click the <Review Set Name>.
- 3. Right-click the mail and select **Export To** | **CAB**.
- 4. Specify the Download Name.
- 5. Select the Select Export Set.
- 6. Click **OK**. The selected mail(s) are moved to the selected **Export Set** with the given name.
- 7. Click MySets | Export Set.
- 8. Click the Export Set which contains the CAB file.
- 9. Right-click the CAB file and select Download.
- 10. Click Save from the File Download dialog box.
- 11. Navigate to the location where you want to download the file.
- 12. Click OK.

SAVING AN EMAIL PROPERTIES

You can save the properties of all the mails in a review set as an XML file to your local computer.

- 1. From the Web Console, click **MySets** on the left pane.
- 2. Double-click Review Set.
- 3. Right-click the <Review Set Name> and select Save to XML.
- 4. Click Save from the File Download dialog.
- 5. Navigate to the location where you want to save the file.
- 6. Click **OK**.

SHARING EMAILS TO OTHER USERS

You can share and assign access permissions to all the mails in your Review Set folder to selected users.

- 1. From the Web Console, click **MySets** on the left pane.
- 2. Double-click Review Set and click the <Review Set Name>.
- 3. Right-click the review set and select Share.

By Sets \cdots	Search	My Review Set								
🔂 Review Del								Show	Al + Options	
My Reviewbet		Title	Location	Sae	Modified Time	Tag(x)	Retrieved	muld	Record Center	
© Legat Hold Coury Get © Coury Get © Export Det % Filters © Trap Bet © Chart Councedons © Job Onton	* D	LAB	E Reterce Conclusion Subset To BRK Add Theres To Dekle Nemper Top Dekle	3148	1014/2019 01 1844		3		٢	
		D	vit Set enriced name lect Export Set	Create OK	e Carcel					
	File Sane File Pain Clarit Name Retrieved	E Bijdeljve V								
	Preview	Not Available								
Search										
By Sets										
Drowse										
learch View Report View										
Intel Detected Rental: 1								Logged in User.	toc. administration	

My Sets C	Search	My Redeaded ²⁰								
a 🙃 Review Sel								Stow	Al - Options	
My Revendent		2.4br	Location	Size	Modified Time	Taghi	Retrieved	Head	Record Center	
Elegal Hold Celece		depends.chee	C/,depende22,346	16118	18/25/2010 02:20:00		1	Louisville		12
- 🖪 GotrySet Share	10 Mil 6	shat is this consider confile le		15.13	18/28/2899-05/29/34		1		۲	
- B Expert Set										
- Try Filters Planage Tag										
> 2 Tag Set Export to >										
BRM conn Addreve Job Bakes										
Submit To GRM										
				Þ.						10
	File None	dependucing 🔛		~						
	File Puth Carel Name	Chikpende22,106 drQda								
	Card Nana Retrieved	a de chia								
		Not Available.								
	114/369	TOG ATTEMD.								
-										
Search	1									
My Sets										
C Etrase										
Search View Report View										



- 4. Click Add.
- 5. Select the user/user groups from the **Select User or Group** window.
- 6. Click **OK.**
- 7. Select **Allow** check box to assign the respective privileges.
- 8. Click **OK**.

SHARING BROWSE RESULTS TO OTHER USERS

When browsing data, you can share the browse results with other users.

- 1. From the Web Console, click **Browse**.
- 2. Navigate to the Mailbox to be browsed.
- 3. Copy the URL of the browse result page from the browser's address bar and email to other users.

When the recipient users open the URL, they can directly view the browse result page as soon as they login to the Web Console.

Previous Next >

Best Practices - Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent

EXCLUDE CALENDAR, TASK, SCHEDULES AND CONTACTS TO ENHANCE ARCHIVING PERFORMANCE

While specifying the archiving rules, it is recommended to exclude certain Exchange IPM classes, such as tasks, calendar and contacts from archiving to enhance archive performance. For details to exclude the Exchange IPM classes, see Exclude Exchange Interpersonal Message (IPM) Classes from Archives.

Frequently Asked Questions - Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent

HOW DOES STUB RECALL WORK AND WHAT DO I DO IF THE RECALL FAILS?

For an end-user to successfully trigger stub recalls all the components involved should be configured as follows:

FOR EXCHANGE 2010

When a stub recall is triggered from the Outlook, by default the recall request is processed by the Bull Calypso Client Event Manager (EvMgrc) service on the CAS server. Subsequently the routing depends on location where the Exchange Mailbox Archiver agent is installed.

- 1. If the Exchange Mailbox Archiver agent and the CAS server are installed on the same computer then the recall request is processed on the CAS server.
- 2. If the Exchange Mailbox Archiver agent is installed on a proxy computer then the recall request is redirected to the EvMgrc service on the proxy computer. The recall is processed on the proxy computer.

Hence if you encounter recall failures:

- 1. Verify if the CAS server is running.
- Verify if the Bull Calypso Client Event Manager (EvMgrc) service on the CAS server is running.
- 3. If applicable, check if the Bull Calypso Client Event Manager (EvMgrc) service on the proxy computer is running.
- 4. If applicable, check if the proxy has been enabled. See Configuration for details.

FOR EXCHANGE 2007

When a stub recall is triggered from the Outlook, by default the recall request is processed by the Bull Calypso Client Event Manager (EvMgrc) service on the Mailbox Role server. Subsequently the routing depends on location where the Exchange Mailbox Archiver agent is installed.

- 1. If the Exchange Mailbox Archiver agent and the Mailbox Role server are installed on the same computer then the recall request is processed on the Mailbox Role server.
- If the Exchange Mailbox Archiver agent is installed on a proxy computer then the recall request is redirected to the EvMgrc service on the proxy computer. The recall is processed on the proxy computer.

Hence if you encounter recall failures:

- 1. Verify if the Mailbox Role server is running.
- 2. Verify if the Bull Calypso Client Event Manager (EvMgrc) service on the Mailbox Role server is running.
- If applicable, check if the Bull Calypso Client Event Manager (EvMgrc) service on the proxy computer is running.
- 4. If applicable, check if the proxy has been enabled. See Configuration for details.

OUTLOOK WEB ACCESS (OWA) RECALLS

When a recall request is triggered from OWA, an LDAP lookup using msExchangeHomeMDB reveals the name of the Mailbox Role /CAS server. The processing of this recall request depends on the following:

- If uselocalcasforrecall web.config key is present on the CAS server, then the request is handled on the local computer and the following scenarios apply:
- 1. If the Exchange Mailbox Archiver agent and the CAS server are installed on the same computer then the recall request is processed on the CAS server.
- 2. If the Exchange Mailbox Archiver agent is installed on a proxy computer then the recall request is redirected to the EvMgrc service on the proxy computer. The recall is processed on the proxy computer.

Hence if you encounter recall failures:

- 1. Verify if the CAS server is running.
- 2. Verify if the Bull Calypso Client Event Manager (EvMgrc) service on the CAS server is running.
- 3. If applicable, check if the Bull Calypso Client Event Manager (EvMgrc) service on the proxy computer is running.
- 4. If applicable, check if the proxy has been enabled. See Configuration for details.







- If uselocalcasforrecall web.config key is not present, then the recall request is redirected to the Mailbox Role server and the following scenarios apply:
- 1. If the Exchange Mailbox Archiver agent and the Mailbox Role server are installed on the same computer then the recall request is processed on the Mailbox Role server.
- 2. If the Exchange Mailbox Archiver agent is installed on a proxy computer then the recall request is redirected to the EvMgrc service on the proxy computer. The recall is processed on the proxy computer.

Hence if you encounter recall failures:

- 1. Verify if the Mailbox Role server is running.
- 2. Verify if the Bull Calypso Client Event Manager (EvMgrc) service on the Mailbox Role server is running.
- 3. If applicable, check if the Bull Calypso Client Event Manager (EvMgrc) service on the proxy computer is running.
- 4. If applicable, check if the proxy has been enabled. See Configuration for details.

HOW DO I ASSIGN FULL ACCESS TO ALL MAILBOXES ON A SERVER

FOR EXCHANGE SERVER 2010

- Ensure that the service account is a member of Organization Management group.
- Ensure that the mail-enabled user is a member of the Local Administrator Group and have rights to all mailboxes on the server.

To assign full access follow the steps given below:

- Using ADSIEDIT navigate to Configuration | Services | Microsoft Exchange.
- Right-click your organization name, click Properties | Securities and click the Advanced tab.
- Click Edit to modify the permissions set for Organization Management group.
- Click to select Full Control, Receive As and Send As permissions and wait for replication.
- Click the Effective Permission tab and Select the name of the backup account.
- The backup account should display the following as selected:

Full Control

All Extended Rights

Send As

Receive As

• Start the PowerShell and type the following to add the backup account so it has full control over all the databases:

Get-MailboxDatabase -server (server name) | Add-ADPermission -user "backup account" -ExtendedRights Receive-As

Run the above PowerShell every time a new database is added.

 Navigate to the Exchange Management Console, right-click the <mailbox> and click Manage Full Access Permissions to view the mailbox listed under Full Access Permissions.

FOR EXCHANGE SERVER 2007

- Service account should be a member of Exchange Organization Administrators group.
- Ensure that the mail-enabled user is a member of the Local Administrator Group and have rights to all mailboxes on the server.

FOR EXCHANGE SERVER 2003

- The mail-enabled user is a member of the Local Administrator Group and have rights to all mailboxes on the server.
- Using the Exchange System Manager snap-in, right-click the organization object and delegate control.
- Using the Wizard, assign the MailboxAdmin user Exchange Full Administrator privileges.

HOW CAN I DO STUB RECALL WHEN THE PRIMARY COPY OFFLINE?

By default if the primary copy of the data is unavailable the stub recall will fail. However you can configure to trigger stub recall from an alternate data copy as follows:

- 1. In the Comcell Browser double-click the Control Panel.
- 2. Click the **Browse/Search/Recovery** option.
- 3. Select the Automatically switch copy to read data from any copy option.



Administration Guide - Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent

4. Click Ok.

Troubleshooting - Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent

Archive Recover

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Unable to Select Offline Archiving Backup Process Hangs in a Pending State Multiple Jobs are Failing with Profile Errors Automatic Profile Creation is Failing Unable to Log on to Microsoft Information Store/Profile Creation is Failing Process Hangs While Enabling/Disabling MAPI Error During the Installation of MAPI CDO on Exchange 2003 Microsoft MAPI Version Error Error Message: MAPI_E_FAIL_ON_PROVIDER (8004011d) Error Message: extask.cpp:HrInitialize(1342) Initializing MAPI Subsystem Error Message: MAPI_E_NETWORK_ERROR Error Message: Cannot Open Folder for Mailbox "username" Error:MAPI_E_NOT_FOUND (0x8004010f) Error Message: Could Not Open the Exchange Private Message Store with Profile ExchAdm (E_FAIL (0x80004005)) Error Message: ERROR CODE [28:153]

UNABLE TO SELECT OFFLINE ARCHIVING

PROBLEM

While setting properties, the option to select Offline Archiving is not available.

SOLUTION

If you are unable to select Offline Archive, verify if the DisablePST key is enabled. In case it is enabled follow the procedure given in KB article 258277: Disabling the AutoArchive and Personal Folder File Features.

BACKUP PROCESS HANGS IN A PENDING STATE

PROBLEM

The backup processes may hang up in pending state because of incorrect permissions set at the service account level.

SOLUTION

To fix service account permission issues ensure the following:

- Service account is the local administrator on the client where the backups are run.
- Service account should be a member of Exchange Organization Administrators group for Exchange 2007 or Organization management group for Exchange 2010.

Follow the steps given below for fixing permission issues on Exchange 2010:

- 1. Using ADSIEDIT navigate to Configuration | Services | Microsoft Exchange.
- 2. Right-click your organization name, click Properties | Securities and click the Advanced tab.
- 3. Ensure that Organization Management group does not have "Receive As" or "Send As" access set to Deny.

Follow the steps given below for fixing permission issues on Exchange 2010 server:

- 1. On the Exchange 2010 server, open the command prompt.
- 2. Type get-mailboxDatabase | add-adpermission -user <service account> -ExtendedRights Receive-As.

MULTIPLE JOBS ARE FAILING WITH PROFILE ERRORS

PROBLEM

Multiple jobs will fail with profile errors when there is one profile for more than one job.

SOLUTION

Enable the following registry key to create job specific profiles:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers.
- 2. Right-click the <*Client*> in which you want to add the registry key, and then click **Properties**.
- 3. Click the **Registry Key Settings** tab.
- 4. Click Add.
- 5. Enter CreateProcessSpecificProfile in the Name field.
- 6. Enter MSExchangeMBAgent in the Location filed.
- 7. Enter REG_DWORD in the **Type** filed.
- 8. Enter 1 to enable and 0 to disable the key in the **Value** field.
- 9. Click OK.
- 10. From the CommCell Console, navigate to <Client> | Exchange Mailbox |defaultBackupSet.
- 11. Right click the subclient and click **Backup**.
- 12. Select Full as backup type and Immediate to run the job immediately.
- 13. Click OK.

You can track the progress of the job from the **Job Controller or Event Viewer** window.

AUTOMATIC PROFILE CREATION IS FAILING

PROBLEM

Automatic profile creation process is failing as the service account name is not unique and have similar starting series.

SOLUTION

It is recommended to make the service account name unique for the process of auto discovery. It should not have similar starting series as any other account. Follow the steps given below to verify this manually:

- 1. Use Manual Profile Creation to create a new profile.
- 2. Enter the service account name and click Check Name.
- 3. If many names are displayed, it is recommended to change the service account name.

UNABLE TO LOG ON TO MICROSOFT INFORMATION STORE/PROFILE CREATION IS FAILING

PROBLEM

For Exchange Server 2010 you will not be able to log on to Microsoft Information Store and profile creation may also fail, if there is a mismatch in the Exchange Server name and the Exchange Server name specified in the agent properties that has the Client Access Role installed.

SOLUTION

For Exchange Server 2010 verify that the Exchange Server name specified in agent properties has the Client Access Role installed. In case the Exchange Server does not have the Client Access Role specified follow the steps given below to point to another server with client access role installed on it:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, right-click the client computer that has Exchange Mailbox *i*DataAgent installed.
- 2. Click Properties.
- 3. Select Registry Key Settings tab.
- 4. Click Add.
- 5. Enter sCASServerName in the Name field.
- 6. From the Location list, select iDataAgent.
- 7. From the **Type** list, select REG_SZ.
- 8. Enter a CAS server name (e.g., Ex2010CASR2) in the Value field. The CAS server is

used to create the profile.

9. Click OK.



PROCESS HANGS WHILE ENABLING/DISABLING MAPI

PROBLEM

Process hangs while enabling/disabling MAPI because the Exchange client is unable to connect Twith the Global catalogue.

SOLUTION 1.

Create a new profile using Enable Referral Option by following one of the options mentioned below:

Open the command prompt.

Type C:\>gcreconnect.

Usage: GCReconnect [-?] -m mailbox -s server [-e] [-x] [-n name] [-1] [-r] [-w]

Options:

- -m mailbox Specifies the mailbox to log on to.
- -s server Specifies the Exchange server where the mailbox resides.
- -e Enable referral and reconnect If referral and reconnect are not enabled, MAPI will connect directly to the Exchange server for name lookup
- -x Enable additional referral and reconnect settings for Exchange 2007 Implies-e
- -n name Specifies a name to resolve with ResolveName If not specified, QueryIdentity will be used instead
- -I Loop over MAPILogonEx. Will log on and off repeatedly until key is hit
- -r Loop over ResolveName. Will log on once and do name lookup repeatedly until key is hit Requires -n, not valid with -I
- -w Wait for keyboard input before and after creating and configuring profile

-? Displays this usage information.

SOLUTION 2

Delete the existing profile and follow the steps given below:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to **Client Computers**.
- 2. Right-click the <*Client*> in which you want to add the registry key, and then click **Properties**.
- 3. Click the Registry Key Settings tab.
- 4. Click Add.
- 5. Enter enableReferral in the Name field.
- 6. Enter MSExchangeMBAgent in the Location filed.
- 7. Enter REG_DWORD in the **Type** filed.

- 8. Enter 1 in the **Value** field.
- 9. Click **OK**.

ERROR DURING THE INSTALLATION OF MAPI CDO ON EXCHANGE 2003

PROBLEM

If you try to install MAPI CDO on Exchange 2003, you may encounter error messages during installation. This is due to lack of compatibility between MAPI CDO and Microsoft Exchange Server 2003.

SOLUTION

It is recommended to uninstall MAPI CDO and install MAPI by following the steps given below:

On Exchange Server:

- 1. Navigate to the system32 folder.
- 2. Run FixMapi.
- 3. Uninstall old mapicdo.
- 4. Reboot the computer.
- 5. Verify the presence of mapi32.dll and msmapi32.dll and rename them.

PROBLEM

On the Proxy Computer that has Outlook installed, in case there are any MAPI issues, follow the steps given below:

- 1. Uninstall old mapicdo if any.
- 2. Reboot the computer.
- 3. Install Outlook.
- 4. Navigate to the system32 or the syswow64 folder.
- 5. Run FixMapi.
- 6. Reboot the computer.

MICROSOFT MAPI VERSION ERROR

PROBLEM

During Outlook installation, you might encounter a MAPI version error. This is because two MAPI versions cannot coexist.

SOLUTION

The MAPI version error may occur if you have a 32-Bit Outlook version and you are trying to install a 64-Bit Outlook version. This is because the 64-Bit MAPI and 32-bit MAPI cannot coexist on the same computer. It is recommended to uninstall one of the outlook versions.

ERROR MESSAGE: MAPI_E_FAIL_ON_PROVIDER (8004011D)

PROBLEM

You will get this error message if the Outlook profile is in the **Cache** mode.

SOLUTION

- 1. On the client computer, open the ${\bf Control\ Panel}$ and click the ${\bf Mail}$ icon.
- 2. Open the <**Profile**>, click the email account and select the related <**Account**>.
- 3. Click Change.
- 4. Verify that the Use Cached Exchange Mode box is unchecked.

ERROR MESSAGE: EXTASK.CPP:HRINITIALIZE(1342) INITIALIZING MAPI SUBSYSTEM

PROBLEM

You will get this error message when a backup process hangs due to the MAPI CDO conflict.

SOLUTION 1.

1. On the client computer navigate to the following files:

Mapi32.dll

msmapi32.dll

emsmdb32.dll

- 2. Right-click the above mentioned files, click **Properties** and click the **Details** tab.
- 3. Click the **Version** tab and verify that all the files point to Outlook.

SOLUTION 2.

On the Proxy Computer:

- 1. Uninstall old mapicdo.
- 2. Reboot the computer.
- 3. Install Outlook.
- 4. Navigate to the system32 or the syswow64 folder.
- 5. Run FixMapi.
- 6. Reboot the computer.

Note that running **FixMapi** will solve the above mentioned error on the proxy computer.

On Exchange Server:

- 1. Uninstall old mapicdo.
- 2. Reboot the computer.
- 3. Verify the presence of mapi32.dll and msmapi32.dll and rename them.
- 4. Install Outlook.

ERROR MESSAGE: MAPI_E_NETWORK_ERROR

PROBLEM

You will get this error message when there is no connectivity with Client Access Role server for Exchange 2010 and for Mailbox Role Server for Exchange 2007.

SOLUTION

Ensure for Exchange 2010 there is connectivity to the Client Access Role Server. In case of Exchange 2007, ensure connectivity to Mailbox Role Server.

ERROR MESSAGE: CANNOT OPEN FOLDER FOR MAILBOX "USERNAME" ERROR:MAPI_E_NOT_FOUND (0x8004010F)

PROBLEM

You will get this error message when the backup processes hangs in a pending state and the extended right on your service account is not set to **Receive As** on all databases on the Exchange Server.

SOLUTION 1

- 1. Open the profile in Outlook, it should open successfully.
- 2. Use MFCMapi utility to open the service account profile.
- 3. Click Session | Logon and click Display Stores.
- 4. Select the service account profile.
- 5. Click the MDB menu and click Open Other Users Mailbox.

- 6. Click the <**Mailbox**> and select the default flags to open it.
- 7. Navigate to the tree level for Top of Information Store, browse mailbox folders.

If there are no permission errors through the above mentioned process, then the service account should have the extended right set to **Receive-As** on all databases on the Exchange Server as follows:

SOLUTION 2

1.

2.

з.



- Click to select Full Control, Receive As and Send As permissions and wait for replication.
- 5. Click the Effective Permission tab and Select the name of the backup account.





The backup account should display the following as selected:

- Full Control
- All Extended Rights
- Send As

6.

- Receive As
- Start the PowerShell and type the following to add the backup account so it has full control over all the databases:

Get-MailboxDatabase -server (server name) | Add-ADPermission -user "backup account" -ExtendedRights Receive-As

 Navigate to the Exchange Management Console, right-click the <mailbox> and click Manage Full Access Permissions to view the mailbox listed under Full Access Permissions.

SOLUTION 3

For Exchange 2010 and 2007 verify that the **Cache** mode is disabled on the Service Account. For more details, on Microsoft permission settings, see Allow Mailbox Access.

ERROR MESSAGE: COULD NOT OPEN THE EXCHANGE PRIVATE MESSAGE STORE WITH PROFILE EXCHADM (E_FAIL (0x80004005))

PROBLEM

You will get this error message when the extended right on your service account is not set to Receive As on all databases on the Exchange Server.

SOLUTION

- 1. Open the profile in Outlook, it should open successfully.
- 2. Use **MFCMapi** utility to open the service account profile.
- 3. Click Session | Logon and click Display Stores.
- 4. Select the service account profile.
- 5. Click the MDB menu and click Open Other Users Mailbox.
- 6. Click the <**Mailbox**> and select the default flags to open it.
- 7. Navigate to the tree level for **Top of Information Store**, browse mailbox folders.
- 8. If there are no permission errors through this process, the service account should have the extended right set to **Receive-As** on all databases on the Exchange Server.

ERROR MESSAGE: ERROR CODE [28:153]: THE MAILBOX PROFILE USED BY THIS PRODUCT IS INVALID. PLEASE TRY USING MDBVU, OUTLOOK OR ANY OTHER EXCHANGE CLIENT TO CHECK IF THE

PROFILE WORKS CORRECTLY

PROBLEM

You will get this error message when the extended right on your service account is not set to Receive As on all databases on the Exchange Server.

SOLUTION

- 1. Open the profile in Outlook, it should open successfully.
- 2. Use MFCMapi utility to open the service account profile.
- 3. Click Session | Logon and click Display Stores.
- 4. Select the service account profile.
- 5. Click the MDB menu and click Open Other Users Mailbox.
- 6. Click the <**Mailbox**> and select the default flags to open it.
- 7. Navigate to the tree level for Top of Information Store, browse mailbox folders.
- 8. If there are no permission errors through this process, the service account should have the extended right set to **Receive-As** on all databases on the Exchange Server.

Troubleshooting - Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent

Archive Recover

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Recall Fails with "Could Not Connect to EVMGRC" Error User Credentials Are Not Acknowledged During a Stub Recalls Unable to Access OWA Server when Recalling from Message Stubs Unable to Access OWA Server when Recalling from the Universal Stub Link Auto Discover Services Are Not Available During OWA Recalls when Recalling from Message Stubs Auto Discover Services Are Not Available During OWA Recalls when Recalling from the Universal Stub Link Unable to Select an Alternate Active Directory Server During OWA Recalls to Retrieve Mailbox Information when Recalling from Message Stubs Unable to Select an Alternate Active Directory Server During OWA Recalls to Retrieve Mailbox Information when Recalling from the Universal Stub Link OWA Recall Fails with Permission Error in a Multiple Site Exchange Environment OWA Recall Failing with LDAP Permission Error OWA is Attempting to Recall from a Server that Does Not Have Exchange Web Service (EWS) Exchange Web Service (EWS) is not Configured as SSL Site for End-User Unable to View OWA Recall Logs Permission Restrictions for End-user to Run Active Directory Query The Stubs are Not Getting Deleted After Recalls Recovering Data Associated with Deleted Clients and Storage Policies

RECALL FAILS WITH "COULD NOT CONNECT TO EVMGRC" ERROR

PROBLEM 1

If Outlook Add-In users are trying to recall items that are not available in Offline cache and they do not have connectivity to the Exchange Server.

SOLUTION 1

It is recommended for Outlook Add-In users to connect to the Exchange Server in order to recall items not available in Offline cache.

PROBLEM 2

In a DAG configuration if the home server is unavailable during a recall operation.

SOLUTION 2

By default in DAG configuration, recall requests are directed to the Home server, which never changes even if the server hosting the active copy changes.

If the home server is unavailable to process recall request it is recommended to place uselocalcasforrecall web.config key on the CAS server. This will enable the CAS server to process the recall request locally.

USAGE

<add key="CVOWA:UseLocalCASForRecall" value="true" />

USER CREDENTIALS ARE NOT ACKNOWLEDGED DURING A STUB RECALLS

PROBLEM

I keep getting prompted for my credentials over and over again when trying to do a stub recall.

SOLUTION

- Ensure that .NET 3.5 is installed on the computer, which has OWA Proxy Enabler installed on it.
- Log on to the IIS server installed on the computer, which has OWA Proxy Enabler installed. Navigate to the virtual directory cowebrecall and ensure that

Basic and Integration authentication is enabled.

UNABLE TO ACCESS OWA SERVER WHEN RECALLING FROM MESSAGE STUBS

PROBLEM

The end-user is unable to access OWA server through the web as there could be a proxy or a load balance OWA server available through which the recall request are being routed to the mail OWA server.

SOLUTION

Places the CVOWA:CASProxyExternalUrl key in the web.config file located in <Exchange_Install_Path>\ClientAccess\OWA. This key allows the end-user to access OWA server available behind a proxy or a load balance OWA server.

USAGE

```
<add key ="CVOWA:CASProxyExternalUrl" value ="https://webmail.aaa.com" />
```

WHERE

Value - The name of the proxy or the load balancing server. For example there is a load balance server named "webmail.aaa.com" available in front of OWA servers. The end-user access OWA through url "https://webmail.aaa.com". In this case the value of this key should be set to "https://webmail.aaa.com".

UNABLE TO ACCESS OWA SERVER WHEN RECALLING FROM THE UNIVERSAL STUB LINK

PROBLEM

An end-user doing Universal recall is unable to access OWA server through the web.

SOLUTION

Places the CV:OwaRoot key in the web.config file located in <Calypso installed location>\cvwebrecall. This key provides an alternative OWA URL to be used for auto open when a load balance server is available with the OWA server. In such cases the OWA URL returned by the auto discover service may not accessible from outside.

USAGE

<add key ="CV:OwaRoot" value="https://webmail.aaa.com" />

WHERE

Value - Is the name of the proxy or the load balancing server. For example there is a load balance server named "webmail.aaa.com" available in front of OWA servers. The end-user access OWA through url "https://webmail.aaa.com". In this case the value of this key should be set to "https://webmail.aaa.com".

AUTO DISCOVER SERVICES ARE NOT AVAILABLE DURING OWA RECALLS WHEN RECALLING FROM MESSAGE STUBS

PROBLEM

For an end-user Exchange auto discover services on 'serverA' is not available when he is accessing OWA through 'serverA'.

SOLUTION

Places the CVOWA:AutoDiscoverUrl key in the web.config file located in <Exchange_Install_Path>\ClientAccess\OWA. If auto discover URL on the server is inaccessible, the following web setting key can be used to provide an alternative auto discover URL.

USAGE

```
<add key ="CVOWA:AutoDiscoverUrl" value ="https://serverB/autodiscover/autodiscover.xml" />
```

۸

۸

Value - Is the set to Server B on which the Exchange auto discover services are available.

AUTO DISCOVER SERVICES ARE NOT AVAILABLE DURING OWA RECALLS WHEN RECALLING FROM THE UNIVERSAL STUB LINK

PROBLEM

For an end-user doing Universal recall, Exchange auto discover services on 'serverA' is not available.

SOLUTION

Places the CV:AutoDiscoverUrl key in the web.config file located in <Exchange_Install_Path>\ClientAccess\OWA. If auto discover URL on the server is inaccessible, the following web setting key can be used to provide an alternative auto discover URL.

USAGE

<add key ="CV:AutoDiscoverUrl" value ="https://serverB/autodiscover/autodiscover.xml" />

WHERE

Value - Is the set to Server B on which the Exchange auto discover services are available.

UNABLE TO SELECT AN ALTERNATE ACTIVE DIRECTORY SERVER DURING OWA RECALLS TO RETRIEVE MAILBOX INFORMATION WHEN RECALLING FROM MESSAGE STUBS

PROBLEM

By default OWA recall use the Active Directory server selected by Active Directory Domain Service on OWA server to get the details of the current OWA logged on user through the Active Directory query. This process would not be functional in case the user wants to use an alternate Active Directory server.

SOLUTION

Places the CVOWA:LdapPath key in the web.config file located in <Exchange_Install_Path>\ClientAccess\OWA. Add the name of the alternate Active Directory server as the value for the key to get the details of the current OWA logged on user.

USAGE

<add key ="CVOWA:LdapPath" value ="dc.domain.com" />

WHERE

Value - Is the AD alternate server name. For example if the user wants OWA recalls to use "dc.domain.com" as the Active Directory server to retrieve mailbox information.

UNABLE TO SELECT AN ALTERNATE ACTIVE DIRECTORY SERVER DURING OWA RECALLS TO RETRIEVE MAILBOX INFORMATION WHEN RECALLING FROM THE UNIVERSAL STUB LINK

PROBLEM

Universal recall utilize Exchange auto discover service to retrieve mailbox information. By default the Active Directory query generates the auto discover URL but the user is not able to retrieve auto discover URL information by using any other AD server.

SOLUTION

Places the CV:LdapPath key in the web.config file located in <Exchange_Install_Path>\ClientAccess\OWA if the user wants to use a specific Active Directory server to retrieve the Exchange auto discovery URL.

USAGE

```
<add key="CV:LdapPath" value="dc.domain.com" />
```

.

-

.

WHERE

Value - Is the AD alternate server name. For example if the user wants OWA recalls to use "dc.domain.com" as the Active Directory server to retrieve mailbox information.

OWA RECALL FAILS WITH PERMISSION ERROR IN A MULTIPLE SITE EXCHANGE ENVIRONMENT

PROBLEM

By default OWA recalls use the account of the current log on OWA user to communicate with EWS. If there are multiple sites involved, OWA request may be redirect to a CAS or mailbox Role server located in another site.

This may lead to loss of user account information during the OWA redirection and therefore the EWS call may fail.

SOLUTION

Places the CVOWA:UseArchiverAccount key in the web.config file located in <Exchange_Install_Path>\ClientAccess\OWA. This key provides a way to use Bull Calypso achiver account instead of current OWA log on user account to communicate with EWS.

USAGE

```
<add key ="CVOWA:UseArchiverAccount" value="true" />
```

For Exchange 2010

When using **CVOWA:UseArchiverAccount** key run the following power shell command on the Client Access Server against the account specified on the properties of the Exchange Archiver account:

New-ManagementRoleAssignment -Name:impersonationAssignmentName -Role:ApplicationImpersonation -User:ArchiverUser

For Exchange 2007

When using **CVOWA:UseArchiverAccount** key run the following power shell commands on the Mailbox Role server against the account specified on the properties of the Exchange Archiver account:

Get-ExchangeServer | where {\$_.IsClientAccessServer -eq \$TRUE} | ForEach-Object {Add-ADPermission -Identity \$_.distinguishedname -User (Get-User -Identity ArchiverUser | select-object).identity -extendedRight ms-Exch-EPI-Impersonation}

Get-MailboxDatabase | ForEach-Object {Add-ADPermission -Identity \$_.DistinguishedName -User ArchiverUser -ExtendedRights ms-Exch-EPI-May-Impersonate}

OWA RECALL FAILING WITH LDAP PERMISSION ERROR

PROBLEM

By default OWA recall does impersonation to do Active Directory query, but in case the logged on user does not have the permissions to run an Active Directory query the recalls will fail with LDAP permission errors.

SOLUTION

Places the CVOWA:ImpersonateUser key in the web.config file located in <Exchange_Install_Path>\ClientAccess\OWA. This key controls whether to impersonate the current OWA logged in user to query mailbox information from AD.

USAGE

<add key ="CVOWA:ImpersonateUser"value="true" />

WHERE

Value - can be set to False when the user does not have the correct LDAP permissions.

OWA IS ATTEMPTING TO RECALL FROM A SERVER THAT DOES NOT HAVE EXCHANGE WEB SERVICE (EWS)

.

۸
PROBLEM

Recalls from OWA are failing when the user is trying to accesses OWA through server A from which the Exchange Web Service (EWS) is blocked. Where as the EWS is accessible from server B.

SOLUTION

By default OWA recall uses the same host server as that of Exchange Web Service (EWS). In case the user has the EWS configured on another server, they would require an alternate EWS host server name to complete the recall process.

This can be done by placing the CVOWA:NameResolution key in the web.config file located in <Exchange_Install_Path>\ClientAccess\OWA.

USAGE

<add key="CVOWA:NameResolution" value="Excforrecall" />

WHERE

Value- Is the EWS host server name.

EXCHANGE WEB SERVICE (EWS) IS NOT CONFIGURED AS SSL SITE FOR END-USER

PROBLEM

By default OWA recalls communicates with EWS with SSL http protocol. In case EWS is not configured as an SSL site, the end-user would not be able to recall from OWA.

SOLUTION

Place CVOWA:UseNonSSLForEws key in the web.config file located in <Exchange_Install_Path>\ClientAccess\OWA.

USAGE

<add key="CVOWA:UseNonSSLForEws"/>

UNABLE TO VIEW OWA RECALL LOGS

PROBLEM

You are unable to view the OWA recall logs from 'CvDiagnostics.

SOLUTION

Places the CVOWA:EventLog key in the web.config file located in <Exchange_Install_Path>\ClientAccess\OWA. If this key is enabled, the OWA recall logs will be written to 'CvDiagnostics' event entry.

USAGE

<add key ="CVOWA:EventLog" value="true"/>

PERMISSION RESTRICTIONS FOR END-USER TO RUN ACTIVE DIRECTORY QUERY

PROBLEM

For end-users the permissions set to run Active Directory query are restricted and therefore retrieving complete mailbox information is not possible for the enduser.

SOLUTION

Places the CVOWA:UseAutoDiscover key in the web.config file located in <Exchange_Install_Path>\ClientAccess\OWA. This key allows to modify the end-

.

user environment and allows him to retrieve complete mailbox information by replacing the Active Directory look up service with the Exchange auto discovery service.

USAGE

```
<add key ="CVOWA:UseAutoDiscover" value="true"/>
```



THE STUBS ARE NOT GETTING DELETED AFTER RECALLS

PROBLEM

The stubs still appear after a stub recovery operation.

SOLUTION

Places the CVOWA:DeleteStub key in the web.config file located in <Exchange_Install_Path>\ClientAccess\OWA. This key is used to set delete stub option globally. If the setting is set to 'true', the stub will be deleted after recovering. If the setting is set to 'false', the stub will not be deleted after recovering.

USAGE

```
<add key ="CVOWA:DeleteStub" value="true"/>
```

RECOVERING DATA ASSOCIATED WITH DELETED CLIENTS AND STORAGE POLICIES

The following procedure describes the steps involved in recovering data associated with the following entities:

- Deleted Storage Policy
- Deleted Client, Agent, Backup Set or Instance

BEFORE YOU BEGIN

This procedure can be performed when the following are available:

- You have a Disaster Recovery Backup which contains information on the entity that you are trying to restore. For example, if you wish to recover a storage policy (and the data associated with the storage policy) that was accidentally deleted, you must have a copy of the disaster recovery backup which was performed before deleting the storage policy.
- Media containing the data you wish to recover is available and not overwritten.
- If a CommCell Migration license was available in the CommServe when the disaster recovery backup was performed, no additional licenses are required. If
 not, obtain the following licenses:
 - IP Address Change license
 - CommCell Migration license

See License Administration for more details.

• A standby computer, which will be used temporarily to build a CommServe.

RECOVERING DELETED DATA

- 1. Locate the latest Disaster Recovery Backup which contains the information on the entity (Storage Policy, Client, Agent, Backup Set or Instance) that you are trying to restore.
 - You can check the Phase 1 destination for the DR Set or use Restore by Jobs for CommServe DR Data to restore the data.
 - If the job was pruned and you know the media containing the Disaster Recovery Backup, you can move the media in the Overwrite Protect Media
 Pool. See Accessing Aged Data for more information. You can then restore the appropriate DR Set associated with the job as described in Restore by Jobs for CommServe DR Data.
 - o If the job is pruned and you do not know the media containing the Disaster Recovery Backup, you can do one of the following:

If you regularly run and have copies of the Data on Media and Aging Forecast report you can check them to see if the appropriate media is available.

- 2. On a standby computer, install the CommServe software. For more information on installing the CommServe, see CommServe Deployment.
- 3. Restore the CommServe database using the CommServe Disaster Recovery Tool from the Disaster Recovery Backup described in Step 1. (See Restore a Disaster Recovery Backup for step-by-step instructions.)

- 4. Verify and ensure that the Bull Calypso Client Event Manager Bull Calypso Communications Service (EvMgrS) is running.
- 5. If you did not have a CommCell Migration license available in the CommServe when the disaster recovery backup was performed, apply the IP Address Change license and the CommCell Migration license on the standby CommServe. See Activate Licenses for step-by-step instructions.
- 6. Export the data associated with the affected clients from the standby CommServe as described in Export Data from the Source CommCell.

When you start the Command Line Interface to capture data, use the name of the standby CommServe in the - commcell argument.

7. Import the exported data to the main CommServe as described in Import Data on the Destination CommCell.

This will bring back the entity in the CommServe database and the entity will now be visible in the CommCell Browser. (Press F5 to refresh the CommCell Browser if the entity is not displayed after a successful merge.)

- 8. If you have additional data that was backed up after the disaster recovery backup and before the deletion of the entity, use the procedure described in Import Metadata from a Tape or Optical Media to obtain the necessary information.
- 9. You can now browse and restore the data from the appropriate entity.

As a precaution, mark media (tape and optical media) associated with the source CommCell as READ ONLY before performing a data recovery operation in the destination CommCell.

Agent Properties (General)

Use this dialog box to obtain or provide general and/or user account information for the agent.

Client Name

Displays the name of the client computer on which this Agent is installed.

Billing Department

Displays the name of the billing department, when the Agent is associated with a billing department.

iDataAgent

Displays the identity of the Agent that is installed on the client computer.

Installed date

Displays the date on which the Agent was installed or upgraded on the client computer.

Profile Name

Displays the name of the profile that is associated with the appropriate Administrator Mailbox. Use this space to modify this name.

Mailbox Name

Displays the name of the mailbox that is associated with the appropriate Administrator profile. Use this space to modify this name.

Exchange Administrator Account

Displays the Exchange Administrator Account for the site in which this Exchange Server resides. Click Change Account to modify the account credentials.

Change Account

Click to change the Exchange Administrator Account associated with this agent. These credentials are initially provided during agent installation. Populate the resulting dialog box only if you changed the Exchange Administrator Account and it now differs from the one displayed in the **Exchange Administrator Account** field.

Backup Deleted Item Retention

Specifies whether to enable backups for Deleted Item Retention. By default, the Deleted Item Retention folder is not included in backups.

When cleared, backups of the Deleted Item Retention folder are disabled.

Use CSVDE For Discovery

Specifies whether to use CSVDE filtering for discovery operations. When selected, a CSVDE filter must be entered into the corresponding entry space.

Use of this option requires expert-level knowledge of CSVDE, which is a Microsoft tool used for extracting and filtering information from Active Directory. Incorrect use of the CSVDE filtering option can result in failed discovery and data protection operations.

The following example filters out system mailboxes residing on the SERVERNAME server from discovery operations:

"(&(msExchHomeServerName=*/cn=SERVERNAME)(!(CN=SystemMailbox{*)))"

When cleared, user-specified CSVDE filtering will not be used for discovery operations.

Exchange Server Name

Displays the hostname of the Exchange Server that is installed on the client computer. Use this space to modify the hostname if the name displayed is incorrect. If more than one hostname is entered, separate the hostnames with the semi-colon delimiter.

When backing up Exchange 2010 Database Availability Group (DAG) servers, enter the Mailbox server role that is used by backup and restore operations and configure the sCASServerName registry key to specify a CAS server for creating the profile.

Exchange Version

Lists the version of the Exchange Server that is installed on the client computer. To modify the version, select one from the list.

Manage Content Automatically

Specifies to automatically assign auto discovered content to the subclients.

By default, if a change is made to an automatically discovered mailbox that alters the association criteria it was discovered with, the next backup will automatically reassign the mailbox to the appropriate subclient that satisfies the new criteria.

Clear this option to disable this functionality.

Back to Top

Version

Use this dialog box to view the iDataAgent version.

Activity Control

Use this dialog box to enable or disable data management and data recovery operations on a selected client or client computer group.

Enable Backup

Specifies whether data management operations will occur from this agent.

If cleared:

- The button **Enable after a Delay** appears to the right side of this operation activity. It allows to pre-determine the date and time at which data management operations will begin on the selected agent.
- Data management operations from this agent cannot be started and are skipped.
- Running and waiting data management operations for this agent run to completion.
- Stopped data management operations for this agent cannot be resumed until this option is enabled.
- Pending data management operations for this agent do not run until this option is enabled.

(Job states are indicated in the Job Controller.)

Enable Restore

Specifies whether data recovery operations will occur from this agent.

If cleared:

- The button **Enable after a Delay** appears to the right side of this operation activity. It allows to pre-determine the date and time at which data recovery operations will begin on the selected agent.
- Data recovery operations for this agent cannot be started and are skipped.
- Running data recovery operations for this agent run to completion.
- Pending data recovery operations for this agent do not run until data recovery operations are enabled.

(Job states are indicated in the Job Controller.)

Security

Use this dialog box to:

- Identify the user groups to which this CommCell object is associated.
- Associate this object with a user group.
- Disassociate this object from a user group.

Available Groups

Displays the names of the user groups that are not associated with this CommCell object.

Associated Groups

Displays the names of user groups that are associated with this CommCell object.

Agent Properties (AD Server)

Use this dialog box to specify one or more Active Directory (AD) servers (i.e., domain controllers) that host an Exchange Server. Specifying additional AD Servers provides complete backup coverage of all Exchange mailboxes.

AD Server List

Displays the domain name of one or more Active Directory (AD) servers. You can use this space along with the **Add** and **Delete** buttons to include or remove Active Directory (AD) servers. For example, you may need to add an AD server in these scenarios:

- In cases where an Exchange Server is installed in a child domain and the schema master is in the parent domain, add the Active Directory (AD) server name of the schema master in the parent domain.
- In cases where a domain or forest has multiple domain controllers which may not fully replicate to each other, multiple domain controllers can be added to

ensure a complete list of mailboxes are backed up.

Add

Click to include an Active Directory (AD) server. Enter either a hostname, a fully-qualified domain name, or IP address.

Delete

Click to remove an Active Directory (AD) server.

Agent Properties (Storage Device)

Use this tab to view or change the filter storage policy for Erase Data by Browsing.

Filter Storage Policy

Displays the filter storage policy for Erase Data by Browsing that is associated with this agent. To associate a filter storage policy to a new agent or to change the filter storage policy associated with an existing agent, click one in the list.

Change User Account

Use this dialog box to view or change the Exchange Administrator account information that was set during installation.

Exchange Administrator Account

Displays the Exchange Administrator Account for the site in which this Exchange Server resides. Use this space to modify the account if it has changed and now differs from the one displayed here or if the account was incorrectly entered during installation.

Password

Use this space to specify or modify the Administrator Account password.

Confirm Password

Use this space to retype the password for confirmation.

Security

Use this dialog box to:

- Identify the user groups to which this CommCell object is associated.
- Associate this object with a user group.
- Disassociate this object from a user group.

Available Groups

Displays the names of the user groups that are not associated with this CommCell object.

Associated Groups

Displays the names of user groups that are associated with this CommCell object.

Save as Script

Use this dialog box to choose a name and path for the script file and the mode of execution.

Client

Enter or select the name of the client computer where the script will be created.

Path

Enter the path for the script that will be created.

Browse

Click this button to browse to a path for the command line script.

- Scripts are not supported on the Windows NT platform.
- It is recommended not to use any reserved device names (e.g., LPT1) as the name of the file.
- The file names are not case-sensitive.
- Do not end the file name with a trailing space or a period. Although the underlying file system may support such names, the operating system does not support them.

Mode

Synchronous

Specifies that the script execute in synchronous mode. A synchronous operation exits only when the operation has completed. This option is only available when scripting a single job.

Asynchronous

Specifies that the script execute in asynchronous mode. An asynchronous operation submits the job to the CommServe and exits immediately, returning control to the calling program or script.

Specify User Account to Run the Script

Specifies to use the given user account to save the operation as a script.

• Use the Currently Logged in User Account

Click to use the same user account used for logging into the CommCell Console.

• User Name

Type the user name that was used for logging into the CommCell Console.

• Password

Type the password for the user account used for logging into the CommCell Console.

o Confirm Password

Type to re-confirm the password.

• Use a Different User Account

Click to specify a different user account to save the operation as a script.

User Name

Enter the different user name to be used for saving the operation as a script.

Password

Enter the password for the user account to be used for saving the operation as a script.

• Confirm Password

Type to re-confirm the password.

Back to Top

Startup

Select from the following options. Note that all the options described in this help may not be available and only the options displayed in the dialog box are applicable to the operation for which the information is being displayed.

Priority

• Use Default Priority

If selected, the default priority for this type of job will be used in determining how the Job Manager will allocate resources for this job.

• Change Priority

Use this option to manually specify the priority for the job, between 0 (highest priority) and 999 (lowest priority). The Job Manager will use the priority setting when allocating the required resources. This is useful if you have jobs that are very important and must complete, or jobs that can be moved to a lower priority.

Start up in suspended state

Specifies that this job will start in the Job Controller in a suspended state and cannot run until the job is manually resumed using the Resume option. This

option can be used to add a level of manual control when a job is started. For example, you could schedule jobs to start in the suspended state and then choose which scheduled jobs complete by resuming the operation started in the suspended state.

Description

Use this field to enter a description about the entity. This description can include information about the entity's content, cautionary notes, etc.

Job Retry

Note that all the options described in this help may not be available and only the options displayed in the dialog box are applicable to the agent or operation for which the information is being displayed.

Enable Total Running Time

The maximum elapsed time, in hours and minutes, from the time that the job is created. When the specified maximum elapsed time is reached, as long as the job is in the "Running" state, it will continue; if the job is not in the "Running" state when the specified time is reached, Job Manager will kill the job.

Enable Number of Retries

The number of times that Job Manager will attempt to restart the job. Once the maximum number of retry attempts has been reached, if the job has still not restarted successfully, Job Manager will kill the job. Note that this job-based setting will not be valid if restartability has been turned off in the Job Management Control Panel.

Kill Running Jobs When Total Running Time Expires

Option to kill the job when the specified Total Running Time has elapsed, even if its state is "Running". This option is available only if you have specified a Total Running Time.

Vault Tracking

Select options to export and track media, using Vault Tracker.

👷 Vault Tracking Options will be displayed only when a Vault Tracker license is available in the CommServe.

Vault Tracking options are only applicable for data protection operations using a storage policy associated with a library containing removable media (e.g., tape, optical or stand-alone.)

Export media after the job finishes

Specifies the media used by the data protection operation and media with the specific Media Status (if specified) will be exported and tracked by Vault Tracker.

Exclude Media Not Copied

When selected, allows you to exclude media with jobs that have to be copied.

Media Status

• All

Click to select all media. Clear this option to select media with a specific status.

• Active

Click to select media with its status marked as active.

• Full

Click to select media with its status marked as full.

Overwrite Protected

Click to select media with its status marked as read-only .

Bad

Click to select media with its status marked as bad.

Export Location

Specifies the destination location and lists the stationary locations entered using the Export Location Details dialog box.

Track Transit

Specifies that transit information must be tracked, and lists the transit locations entered using the Export Location Details dialog box.

Use Virtual Mail Slots

Specifies the exported media is stored within the library in the virtual mail slots defined in the Library Properties (Media) dialog box.

Filter Media By Retention

Specifies that the system must automatically filter media based on whether the media has extended retention jobs or not.

Media with extended retention job(s)

Specifies that media with at least one extended retention job will be exported.

• Media with no extended retention job(s)

Specifies that media with no extended retention jobs will be exported.

Alert

Use this tab to configure an alert for a schedule policy.

Configure Alert

• Alert

The currently configured Alert.

• Add/Modify Alert

When clicked, opens the Alert Wizard to configure alerts for this operation.

Delete Alert

When clicked, deletes any existing alerts that are already configured.

Alert Wizard

Threshold and Notification Criteria Selection

Use this step to select or modify the alert threshold and notification criteria. (See Alerts and Monitoring in Books Online for detailed information.)

Alert Criteria

Select the conditions that will initiate the alert. The alerts available are grouped into five categories:

- Application Management
- Automatic Updates
- Configuration
- Job Management
- Media Management

Send Individual Notification for This Alert

Enable this option to send an individual alert notification, instead of multiple alerts within a single alert notification, for the criteria selected.

Notification Criteria

Select whether the alert notification should be repeated, the frequency and whether notification should be sent when the condition clears.

Escalation Notification Criteria

Some alert notifications allow for configuration of an escalated alert. If this option is available, select the time at which the escalated alert notification should be sent, the frequency and whether notification should be sent when the condition clears.

Notify only when jobs qualify for extended retention*

Select this option when configuring a Job Management Data Protection alert. If selected, when a data protection job meets the thresholds of the configured alert criteria, users will only be notified of those jobs that are set for extended retention.

Notify only when job contains failed objects*

Select this option when configuring a Job Management Data Protection alert. If selected, when a data protection job meets the thresholds of the configured alert criteria, users will only be notified of those jobs that contain failed objects.

*This notification option is applicable for Job Management Data Protection alerts only.

ALERT CRITERIA

The following tables identify the types of available alerts within each category, the user capabilities needed for each alert, the entities the alert can be associated with, the types of criteria available, and a description.

APPLICATION MANAGEMENT

		Entities that can be Associated with the Alert		Description
ContinuousDataReplicator			Log File Volume Reached Low Watermark	 One of the following has occurred: A destination computer has imposed throttling on the source computer, based on the percentage of allocated log space remaining on the destination computer. A destination computer has stopped the source computer from sending logs, based on the percentage of allocated log space remaining on the destination computer. A source computer has run out of log space, and CDR has stopped monitoring the source paths for all the Replication Pairs, put the pairs in an aborted state, and deleted all log files. The free disk space thresholds are configurable in the ContinuousDataReplicator Properties (Operational
			No transfer activity Failed Replication	Parameters) window. There has been no data replicated from the source to the destination. The CommServe automatically checks for transfer activity every 15 minutes. A Replication Pair's job has failed, been aborted by a user, or
	Agent Management or Alert Management capability with association at the object associated with the alert.	Clients Client Groups	Journal Mailbox Threshold Exceeded	 aborted by the system. The journal mailbox exceeded its limit. (The mailbox threshold is set by the user in the CommCell console.) NOTES See <i>Configure the Agent for a Journal Mailbox Threshold Alert</i> in Books Online for step-by-step instructions for setting the threshold limit on the agent. If you would like to change the interval at which the threshold limit is checked or the time-out for the monitoring process, you can set these through the nArcMonitorIntervalInMins and nArcMonitorTimeOutInMins registry keys.
	Agent Management or Alert Management capability with association at the object associated with the alert.	Clients Client Groups	New Virtual Servers Were Found. Restart IIS Services. SharePoint version is upgraded. Restart IIS.	New virtual servers were found on the SharePoint server after an archive operation, which requires the Internet Information Services (IIS) to be restarted. The SharePoint server has been upgraded, which requires the Internet Information Services (IIS) to be restarted.

AUTOMATIC UPDATES

Alert Type	User Capabilities Needed for Each Alert type	Entities that can be Associated with the Alert	Criteria	Description
Download Updates	Administrative		Job Failed	Updates failed to be downloaded.
	Management or Alert Management capability		Job Succeeded	Updates were downloaded successfully.
	with CommCell association.		Job Succeeded with Errors	A download updates operation completed with errors.
Install Updates	Administrative	Machines	Job Failed	An update installation failed.
	Management or Alert	Client Groups	Job Succeeded	An update installation completed successfully.
	Management capability with CommCell association.		Job Succeeded with Errors	An update installation operation completed with errors.
			Job Initiated	An update installation was initiated.
Updates Available to Download	Administrative Management or Alert Management capability with CommCell association.		Updates Available to Download	An update is available to be downloaded for installation. The frequency interval at which these updates are detected is configurable in the registry key.
Upgrades and Service Packs	Management or Alert	Machines Client Groups	Release Upgrade Required	A new release software upgrade is required. (If configured, this alert occurs when a Client and/or MediaAgent software version is lower than that of the CommServe.)

association.		The frequency interval at which these updates are detected is configurable in the registry key.
	Service Pack Required	A software update is required.
		(If configured, this alert occurs when a Client and/or MediaAgent service pack version is lower than that of the CommServe.)
		The frequency interval at which these updates are detected is configurable in the registry key.

CONFIGURATION

Alert Type	User Capabilities Needed for Each Alert type	Entities that can be Associated with the Alert	Criteria	Description
Clients	Agent Management or Alert Management	Management ility with iation at the t associated with	Properties Modified	The properties of a client were modified, or there was an unauthorized attempt to alter properties.
	capability with association at the object associated with the alert.			The minimum thresholds have been reached for the client software installation and system directories, which include the Job Results.
				The threshold for Job Results directory is configurable in the CommCell Console's Client Computers Properties window.
				The thresholds for the software installation and system directories and the frequency interval at which the directories are monitored are configurable in the registry key.
				If Data Classification Enabler is installed, this alert, if configured, will be sent if 85 percent or more of the volume's disk space is consumed.
				For computers where QSnap and either the Quick Recovery Agent or ContinuousDataReplicator are installed, this alert, if configured, will be sent if 80 percent or more of a volume's disk space is consumed, for all of the client computer's volumes.
				If Content Indexing Engine is installed, this alert, if configured will be sent for the following:
				• If 80 percent or more of the volume's disk space is consumed.
				• If the minimum free space falls below 10 GB.
		Agents	Properties Modified	The properties of an agent were modified, new content was added (for the Oracle agent only), or there was an unauthorized attempt to alter properties. This alert is also generated if the content, pre-post commands, or storage policy of a subclient were modified.
CommCell	Administrative Management or Alert		Alert every <i>n</i> failed login attempts	There were <i>n</i> failed attempts made to login to the CommCell.
	Management capability with CommCell association		Alert CommServe License Expires With <i>n</i> Days	The CommServe license will expire in <i>n</i> days.
			Alert when License	The CommServe license has reached <i>n</i> %.
			Consumed reaches <i>n</i> %	License Capacity Usage details get updated every 24 hours. It may also be updated if a Data Aging Job is run or if CommServe services are restarted.
			Properties Modified	The properties of the CommServe were modified, or there was an unauthorized attempt to alter properties.
			Alert Modified	A user was added or removed to an alert, an alert was modified, or there was an unauthorized attempt to modify the properties of an alert.
			Force De-configured	A user failed or successfully forced de-configured an Agent, Client, or MediaAgent.
			Disk Space Low	The minimum thresholds have been reached for the CommServe software installation and system directories or there is insufficient disk space for the CommServe database to grow.
				The threshold for the software installation and system directories and the frequency interval at which the directories are monitored are configurable in the registry key.
				The threshold for CommServe database directory, and the frequency interval at which the database directory is monitored, are configurable in the CommCell Console's Control Panel - System window (Database space check interval and Database Space Check Thresholds).

Library	Library Management or Alert Management capability with library association	Libraries	Properties Modified	The properties of a library were modified, an overwrite media option was selected for the library, or there was an unauthorized attempt to alter properties of a library.
MediaAgents	MediaAgents Media Management or Alert Management	MediaAgents	Properties Modified	The properties of a MediaAgent were modified, or there was an unauthorized attempt to alter the properties of a MediaAgent.
	capability with MediaAgent association		Disk Space Low	The minimum thresholds have been reached for the MediaAgent software installation and system directories, which include the Index Cache.
			The threshold for MediaAgents Index Cache directory is configurable in the CommCell Console's MediaAgents Properties window.	
				The threshold for the software installation and system directories and the frequency interval at which the directories are monitored are configurable in the registry key.
			DDB Store got corrupted	Deduplication Store of a MediaAgent is corrupted.
			MediaAgent went Offline	A MediaAgent was switched on/offline.
			Notify only if Condition persists for	Notify only if the condition persists for certain length of time.
			Repeat notification every	Repeat the notification for every n hours and m minutes. (n and m are set by the user at the time of configuration.)
Schedules	Alert Management capability with CommCell association		Scheduler Changes	A schedule was added, deleted, or modified, a job failed to be scheduled, a user added, removed, or modified a holiday.
Storage Policy	Storage Policy Management or Alert Management capability with storage policy association	Storage Policies	Properties Modified	The properties of a storage policy were modified, or there was an unauthorized attempt to alter the properties of a storage policy.

JOB MANAGEMENT

Alert Type	User Capabilities Needed for Each Alert type	Entities that can be Associated with the Alert	Criteria	Description
Auxiliary Copy	Administrative	Storage Policies	Job Succeeded	An auxiliary copy operation completed successfully.
	Management or Alert Management capability	Storage Policy Copies	Job Succeeded with Errors	An auxiliary copy operation completed with errors.
	with CommCell association		Job Skipped	A scheduled auxiliary copy operation ran late, was skipped, or was skipped due to a holiday.
			Job Failed	An auxiliary copy operation failed, failed to start, or the operation was aborted by the system.
			Job Activity	An auxiliary copy operation was killed, resumed, or suspended by a user.
			Auxiliary Copy fallen behind alert	The following criteria have been met for the selected storage policy:
				• data to be copied is more than <i>n</i> GB
				• jobs have not been copied in more than <i>n</i> days
				(<i>n</i> is set by the user in the Storage Policy Properties (Advanced) window.)
				The interval at which the storage policy is checked for this criteria can be configured in the Media Management Configuration (Auxiliary Copy Configuration) window; the default Interval (Hours) between Auxiliary Copy Fallen Behind alerts is 24 hours.
			Delayed by <i>n</i> Hrs	An auxiliary copy operation was in a waiting state for n hours. (n is set by the user at time of configuration.)
			Alert every <i>n</i> attempt (Phase failures)	There were <i>n</i> attempts made to resume the auxiliary copy operation after a phase failure.
			Alert every <i>n</i> attempt (Network failures)	There were <i>n</i> attempts made to resume the auxiliary copy operation after a network failure.
Backup Copy	Administrative	Storage Policies	Job Succeeded	A backup copy operation completed successfully
Workflow	Management or Alert Management capability with CommCell		Job Succeeded with Errors	A backup copy operation completed with errors.
	association		Job Skipped	A scheduled backup copy operation ran late, was skipped, or was skipped due to a holiday.
			Job Failed	A backup copy operation failed, failed to start, or the operation was aborted by the system.
			Job Activity	A backup copy operation was killed, resumed, or suspended by a user.

			Job Started	A backup copy operation was started by a user.
Continuous Data Replication	Data Protection Operations or Alert Management capability at each associated entity.	Clients Agents Replication Sets	Job Succeeded	A Recovery Point creation, Consistent Recovery Point creation, or CopyBack operation completed successfully.
			Job Succeeded with Errors	A Recovery Point creation, Consistent Recovery Point creation, or CopyBack operation completed with errors.
			Job Skipped	A scheduled Recovery Point creation, Consistent Recovery Point creation, or CopyBack operation ran late, was skipped, or was skipped due to a holiday.
			Job Failed	A Recovery Point creation, Consistent Recovery Point creation, or CopyBack operation failed, failed to start, or the operation was aborted by the system.
			Job Activity	A Recovery Point creation, Consistent Recovery Point creation, or CopyBack operation was killed, resumed, or suspended by a user.
			Delayed by <i>n</i> Hrs	A Recovery Point creation, Consistent Recovery Point creation, or CopyBack operation was in a waiting state for <i>n</i> hours. (<i>n</i> is set by the user at time of configuration.)
			Alert every <i>n</i> attempt (Phase failures)	There were n attempts made to resume the Recovery Point Creation or CopyBack operation after a phase failure.
			Alert every <i>n</i> attempt (Network failures)	There were <i>n</i> attempts made to resume the Recovery Point Creation or CopyBack operation after a network failure.
Data Aging	Administrative		Job Succeeded	A data aging operation completed successfully.
	Management or Alert Management capability		Job Succeeded with Errors	A data aging operation completed with errors.
	with CommCell association		Job Skipped	A scheduled data aging operation ran late, was skipped, or was skipped due to a holiday.
			Job Failed	A data aging operation failed, failed to start, or the operation was aborted by the system.
			Job Activity	A data aging operation was killed by a user.
Data Classification	Alert Management capability	Clients Client Groups	Classification Failed	A data classification operation failed to write to the database.
Data Protection	Data Protection Operations or Alert Management capability	Clients Client Groups	Job Succeeded Job Succeeded with Errors	A data protection operation completed successfully. A data protection operation completed with errors.
	at each associated entity.	Agents Backup Sata	Job Skipped	A scheduled data protection operation ran late, was skipped, or was skipped due to a holiday.
		Backup Sets Instance/Partition All Subclients** Subclients	Job Failed	A data protection operation failed, failed to start, or was aborted by the system.
			Job Activity	A data protection operation was killed, resumed, or suspended by a user.
			No Data Protection	A data protection operation failed to start.
			Delayed by <i>n</i> Hrs	A data protection operation was in a waiting state for n hours. (n is set by the user at time of configuration.)
			No Backup for last <i>n</i> Days	A data protection operation did not complete successfully for the last <i>n</i> days. (<i>n</i> is set by the user at the time of configuration in the alert wizard.)
			Job exceeded running time of <i>n</i> Hrs	A data protection operation was in a suspended, running or in a pending state for more than n hours. (n is set by the user at the time of configuration in the alert wizard.)
			Alert every <i>n</i> attempt (Phase failures)	There were n attempts made to resume the data protection operation after a phase failure.
			Alert every <i>n</i> attempt (Network failures)	There were n attempts made to resume the data protection operation after a network failure.
			Increase in Data Size by <i>n</i> %	A data protection job is at least <i>n</i> % larger in data size than the previous data protection job of the same type (full, incremental, differential or synthetic full). Default is set at 10%. (<i>n</i> is the percentage of increase in data size, at which if met, will trigger the alert. The actual data size increase may
			Decrease in Data Size by <i>n</i> %	be larger than the $n\%$.) A data protection job is at least $n\%$ smaller in data size than the previous data protection job of the same type (full, incremental, differential or synthetic full). Default is set at 10%. (<i>n</i> is the percentage of decrease in data size, at which if met, will trigger the alert. The actual data size decrease may be larger than the $n\%$.)
			Notify only when jobs qualify for extension retention	The data protection job is set for extended retention.
			Notify only when job contains failed objects	The data protection job contains one or more failed objects.

		Instance/Partition		A data recovery operation failed, failed to start, or the operation was aborted by the system.
			Job Activity	A data recovery operation was killed, resumed, or suspended by a user.
			Job Started	A data recovery operation was started by a user.
			List Media	A user requested a list of media used for the original data protection operation.
Data Verification	Administrative	Storage Policies	Job Succeeded	A data verification operation completed successfully.
	Management or Alert Management capability	Storage Policy Copies	Job Succeeded with Errors	A data verification operation completed with errors.
			Job Skipped	A scheduled data verification operation ran late, was skipped, or was skipped due to a holiday.
			Job Failed	A data verification operation failed, failed to start, or the operation was aborted by the system.
			Job Activity Delayed by <i>n</i> Hrs	A data verification operation was killed, resumed, or suspended by a user. A data verification operation was in a waiting state for <i>n</i> hours
Disaster Recovery	Administration		Job Succeeded	(<i>n</i> is set by the user at time of configuration.) A disaster recovery backup completed successfully, a backup
Backup	Management or Alert			set was pruned during the operation (default = 5 backup sets)
	Management capability with CommCell		Job Succeeded with Errors	A disaster recovery backup operation completed with errors/warnings.
	association.		Job Skipped	A scheduled disaster recovery backup ran late, was skipped, or was skipped due to a holiday.
			Job Failed	A disaster recovery backup failed, failed to start, the operation was aborted by the system, or no storage policy was defined for the operation.
			Job Activity	A disaster recovery backup operation was killed by a user.
			Delayed by <i>n</i> Hrs	A disaster recovery backup operation was in a waiting state for n hours. (n is set by the user at time of configuration.)
Erase Data	Administration Management or Alert Management capability	Clients	Job Succeeded	An erase data operation completed successfully
		Agents	Job Succeeded with Errors	An erase data operation completed with errors/warnings.
	with CommCell association.	Backup Set Subclients	Job Skipped	A scheduled erase data operation ran late, was skipped, or was skipped due to a holiday.
		Subchents	Job Failed	An erase data operation failed, failed to start, was killed by a user, was aborted by the system.
			Job Activity	An erase data operation was killed, resumed, or suspended by a user.
Media Erase	Library Management or Alert Management	Libraries	Job Succeeded	A media erase operation completed successfully.
	capability with library association		Job Succeeded with Errors	A media erase operation completed with errors/warnings.
			Job Failed Job Activity	A media erase operation failed, failed to start, or was killed by a user. A media erase operation was killed, resumed, or suspended by
			SOD Activity	a user.
Media Inventory	Library Management or	Libraries	Job Succeeded	An inventory operation completed successfully.
	Alert Management capability with library association		Job Succeeded with Errors Job Failed	An inventory operation completed with errors.
Media Refreshing	Administrative	Storage Policies	Alert every <i>n</i> attempt	An inventory operation failed, failed to start, or was killed by a user. There were <i>n</i> attempts made to resume the data protection
	Management or Alert Management capability	-	(Phase failures) Alert every <i>n</i> attempt	operation after a phase failure. There were n attempts made to resume the data protection
	with CommCell		(Network failures)	operation after a network failure.
	association		Delayed by <i>n</i> Hrs	An offline content indexing operation was in a waiting state for n hours. (n is set by the user at time of configuration.)
			Job Succeeded Job Succeeded with Errors	An offline content indexing operation completed successfully. An offline content indexing operation completed with errors.
			Job Skipped	An offline content indexing operation ran late, was skipped, or was skipped due to a holiday.
			Job Failed	An offline content indexing operation failed, failed to start, the operation was aborted by the system.
		- ···	Job Activity	An offline content indexing operation was killed by a user.
Offline Content	Administrative	Storage Policies	Job Succeeded	An offline content indexing operation completed successfully.
Indexing	Management or Alert Management capability	-	Job Succeeded with	An offline content indexing operation completed with errors.

	with CommCell association		Job Skipped	An offline content indexing operation ran late, was skipped, or was skipped due to a holiday.
			Job Failed	An offline content indexing operation failed, failed to start, the operation was aborted by the system.
			Job Activity	An offline content indexing operation was killed by a user.
			Delayed by <i>n</i> Hrs	An offline content indexing operation was in a waiting state for n hours. (n is set by the user at time of configuration.)
Information	Administrative		Job Succeeded	An information management operation completed successfully.
Management	Management or Alert Management capability		Job Skipped	An information management operation ran late, was skipped, or was skipped due to a holiday.
	with CommCell association		Job Succeeded with Errors	An information management operation completed with errors.
			Job Failed	An information management operation failed, failed to start, the operation was aborted by the system.
			Job Activity	An information management operation was killed by a user.
			Delayed by <i>n</i> Hrs	An information management operation was in a waiting state for n hours. (n is set by the user at time of configuration.)
Report	Administration		Job Activity	A report operation was killed by a user.
	Management capability with CommCell		Job Failed	A report operation failed, failed to start, the operation was aborted by the system, or a report failed to be saved.
	association.		Job Skipped	A report operation ran late, was skipped, or was skipped due to a holiday.
			Job Succeeded	A report operation completed successfully.
			Job Succeeded with Errors	A report operation completed with errors.
SRM Data Collection	Management capability	capability	Alert every n attempt (Phase failures)	There were n attempts made to resume the data collection operation after a phase failure.
	with CommCell association.		Alert every n attempt (Network failures)	There were n attempts made to resume the data collection operation after a network failure.
			Job Activity	A data collection operation was killed by a user.
			Job Failed	A data collection operation failed, failed to start, the operation was aborted by the system.
			Job Skipped	A data collection operation ran late, was skipped, or was skipped due to a holiday.
			Job Succeeded	A data collection operation completed successfully.
			Job Succeeded with Errors	A data collection operation completed with errors.
			No Data Protection	A data collection operation failed to start.

**DataArchiver agents only

MEDIA MANAGEMENT

Alert Type	User Capabilities Needed for Each Alert type	Entities that can be Associated with the Alert	Criteria	Description
Device Status	Library Management or	Libraries	Drive went Offline	A drive in a library switched offline.
	Alert Management		Library went Offline	A library switched offline.
	capability with CommCell association		Mount Path went Offline	A mount path went offline.
	Library Management or Alert Management capability with library association.	r Libraries	Insufficient Storage	The number of spare media inside the library for a scratch pool and cleaning pool fell below the low water mark defined or there is no spare media inside the library. For a disk library, the free disk space fell below the low water mark or there is insufficient disk space.
			Maintenance Occurred	A drive cleaning operation completed successfully or failed.
			Maintenance Required	The library or drive has exceeded its threshold, a drive requires cleaning, or the mount path has exceeded its fragmentation threshold.
				The percentage threshold at which the mount path is deemed fragmented can be configured in the Media Management Configuration (Service Configuration) window, Mount Path Fragmentation Threshold Percentage option.
			Media Handling Errors	The system found a duplicate barcode/label in the library, or the system detected a media in the wrong library.
			Media Handling Required	A media is not in the library, or a media in a drive needs changing because the system detected wrong or no media in the drive.
			Media Mount and Usage Errors	A media is marked read only, bad or depreciated, or a mount or an unmount error has occurred.

			User Overwrite of Media	The media was overwritten due to an option selected by the user.
			Media Ready in Mail	Media in mail slot is ready to be picked up by the user.
			Slot	NOTES
				 This criterion is applicable to a VaultTracker media export (to mail slot) only, which requires a VaultTracker license. For more information, see License Administration in Books Online.
				• It is recommended that the <media list=""> and <more MEDIA Y/N> tokens be added to the notification message when configuring this alert. For more information, see Alert Tokens in Books Online.</more </media>
			Media Recalled	The media has been retrieved from an export location for a specific operation. For more information, see Recall Media in Books Online.
VaultTracker	Library Management or	Tracking Policies	Job Succeeded	A pending media movement completed successfully.
	Alert Management capability with Library		Job Succeeded with Errors	A pending media movement completed with errors.
	association.		Job Failed	A pending media movement failed.
			Job Initiated	A pending media movement was created.
			Media Handling Required	A media is moved to a virtual mail slot, or a media needs import.
			Media Picked Up	Media was picked up.
			Media Reached Destination	A media has reached the required destination.
			Media Returned to Source	A media was returned to the source.
			Rolled Back	A media movement was rolled back.

Browse Options

Use this dialog box to select the basic options under which you want to browse the data secured by a data protection operation in the selected client, agent, instance/partition, or backup set level depending on the functionality of a given agent.

The system provides several browse options. These options influence the behavior of the browse operation in the subsequent Browse window. Note that all the options described in this help may not be available and only the options displayed in the dialog box are applicable to the agent for which the information is being displayed.

Browse the Latest Data

Specifies whether the browse operation must display data from the most recent data protection operation (from now back to the last full backup) in the Browse window. (This option is selected by default.)

Specify Browse Time

Specifies whether the browse operation must display data, up to the specified date and time in the Browse window. Data secured after the specified date and time will be omitted in this window.

Browse Data Before/Browse to Point-In-Time

Specifies the date and time that must be used to display the data in the Browse window.

• Time Zone

Lists the time zones. To change the time zone, click one in the list.

Select from Available Browse Times

Displays a list containing the time of different backup jobs available in the destination, from which data can be browsed. For Workstation Backup Agent, this option displays the list of recovery points available in the destination. Select the desired time.

Use MediaAgent

Specifies the name of MediaAgent that will be used to perform the browse (and restore) operation. If necessary, you can change the name of the MediaAgent. For example, if the library is shared and you wish to use a specific MediaAgent (instead of the system selected MediaAgent, or a MediaAgent which may be idle, or less critical) or if you know that the media containing the data you wish to restore is available in the library attached to the specified MediaAgent.

If the media containing the data is not available in the tape/optical library attached to the MediaAgent, the system will automatically prompt you to insert the appropriate media. In the case of a disk library, the operation will fail if the requested data is not available in the disk library attached to the specified MediaAgent.

Client Computer

Lists the client computers available for the browse operation. This option is available only when the browse operation is performed either from the client node in

the CommCell Browser, Browse & Recover option from the Tools menu in the CommCell Console or when the New Browse button is clicked in the Browse window.

Specify Browse Path

Specifies the starting point for the browse operation. Also provides a space for you to type the path.

Show Deleted Items

Specifies whether the operation will browse all the data (including deleted items) secured by all data protection operations for the selected backup set as of the specified browse items.

Table View

Specifies whether the backup data should be displayed as database tables during the browse operation.

Image Browsing

Specifies whether the operation will browse all the data (including deleted items) secured by all data protection operations for the selected backup set as of the specified browse times.

The main difference between image browse and no-image browse is that deleted items are shown only by the no-image browse.

Keep in mind that the display of deleted items depends on whether full backup transparency is enabled. If full backup transparency is disabled (the default), only those deleted items that existed back through the most recent full backup are shown. However if full backup transparency is enabled, the deleted items shown includes those that existed during the time interval from initial index creation through the time being browsed.

To determine whether full backup transparency is enabled or disabled, from the CommCell Browser, right-click the *i*DataAgent and then select **Properties.** Click the **Index** tab. If **Create new index on full backup** is selected, then full backup transparency is disabled.

File Level Browse (Restore individual files/folders from disk image)

Specifies whether the operation will browse all the files and folders secured by all data protection operations for the selected backup set as of the specified browse items.

Volume Level Browse (Restore the disk image/volume)

Specifies whether the operation will browse all the volumes secured by all data protection operations for the selected backup set as of the specified browse items.

Database

For SQL Server, specifies whether to browse individual databases.

File/File Group

For SQL Server, specifies whether to browse file groups and files for the databases.

Page Size

Use the space to enter the default number of objects to be displayed in the Browse window. This field reverts back to the default setting after use. In the Browse window, you can browse through each page list by selecting the appropriate page number.

Browse Data from SQL

Specifies that SharePoint documents can be mined from an offline mining database.

SQL Instance

For SharePoint Offline mining, specifies the SQL instance that is associated with the offline mining database. Click ... to select from a list or type the instance name.

User Account

For SharePoint Offline mining, specifies the Username and Password of the account that can access the instance. Click Edit to enter the username and password.

Config Database

For SharePoint Offline mining, specifies the Configuration Database that will be used to mine SharePoint documents. Click ... to select from a list or type the Configuration Database name.

Browse only volumes

Specifies that the browse operation must display only a list of volumes; required for a Volume Level Restore.

Advanced

Click to access additional browse capabilities.

List Media

Click to display media required for restore or index restore operations.

Type of Intended Restore (Virtual Server *i*DataAgent)

This section provides the facility to select the type of restore you want to perform following the Browse operation.

• Individual Files/Folders

Select this option if you intend on performing a file/folder-level restore.

Entire Volume

Select this option if you intend on performing a volume-level restore.

• Container Restore

Select this option if you intend on performing a disk-level restore.

Browse/Restore Directory Server data from database

For Active Directory Offline Mining, enter the path to the database from which you want to restore directory server data. For Active Directory Server databases, this file will be the ntds.dit file. For ADAM and Lightweight Server databases, this file will be the adamntds.dit file. Click **Browse** to locate the database or enter the complete database path in the **File Path** field.

Back to Top

Advanced Browse Options

Use this dialog to access additional browse capabilities for the browse window. Note that all the options described in this help may not be available and only the options displayed in the dialog box are applicable to the agent for which the information is being displayed.

Use MediaAgent

Select the MediaAgent associated with the data you want to browse, or select Any MediaAgent.

Show Deleted Items

Specifies whether the operation will browse all the data (including deleted items) secured by all data protection operations for the selected backup set as of the specified browse items.

Page Size

Specifies the number of objects to be displayed in the browse window.

Include Metadata

Specifies that the browse operation results must also include data containing metadata information.

Exclude Data Before

Specifies that the browse operation must return data that has been backed up after the specified date. Also provides a space for you to type the date and time.

Browse from copy precedence

When selected, the system retrieves the data from the storage policy copy with the specified copy precedence number. If data does not exist in the specified copy, the operation fails even if the data exists in another copy of the same storage policy.

When cleared, (or by default) the system retrieves data from the storage policy copy with the lowest copy precedence. If the data was pruned from the primary copy, the system automatically retrieves the data from the other copies of the storage policy starting with the copy with the lowest copy precedence and proceeding through the copies with higher copy precedence. Once the data is found, it is retrieved, and no further copies are checked.

Back to Top

List Media

Use this dialog box to select the options that must be used to predict the required media.

Media For the Latest Data

Specifies whether the list media operation must display media associated with the most recent data protection operation (from now back to the last full backup) This option is selected by default.

Specify Time Range

Specifies whether the whether the list media operation must display media associated with the specified date and time.

Data Before/Time Range

Specifies the date and time that must be used to display media.

• Time Zone

Lists the time zones. To change the time zone, click one in the list.

Advanced

Click to access additional options.

Operation Window

Use this dialog box to add, modify, or delete operation rules for system operations.

Name

The friendly name assigned to the operation window.

Operations

The operations included in the rule.

Days

Displays the days in which the operations in this rule should not be run.

Do not run intervals

Displays the times in which the operations in this rule should not be run.

Add

Click this button to add an operation rule from the Operation Rule Details dialog box.

Modify

Click this button to modify an operation rule from the Operation Rule Details dialog box.

Delete

Click this button to delete an operation rule.

Ignore Operation Rules at Higher Levels (not applicable at the CommServe and Client group level)

Select this option to disable all operation rules set at levels above the currently selected entity.

Subclient Properties (General)

Use this dialog box to add, modify or view general information on the selected subclient.

Client Name

Displays the name of the Client computer to which this subclient belongs.

Billing Department

Displays the name of the billing department, when the subclient is associated with a billing department.

iDataAgent

Displays the name of the Agent to which this subclient belongs.

Backup Set

Displays the name of the Backup Set to which this subclient belongs.

Subclient Name

Displays the name of this Subclient. You can use this space to enter or modify the name of the subclient.

Default Subclient

Displays whether this is the default subclient. When a subclient is designated as the default subclient, it will back up all the data for the subclient that is not assigned to any other subclients within the backup set, and it cannot be deleted.

Description

Use this field to enter a description about the entity. This description can include information about the entity's content, cautionary notes, etc.

Back to Top

Subclient Properties (Content)

Use this tab to define the contents of a new subclient or to change the content of an existing subclient. Mailboxes that are listed in the **Contents of subclient** pane are backed up/migrated/archived/content indexed by the subclient.

Contents of subclient

Displays a list of mailboxes included as content for this subclient. The autodiscovered mailboxes are displayed in italics whereas manually discovered mailboxes are displayed in normal font. This is to differentiate which mailboxes will be qualified for Automatic Content Management.

• Display Name

Displays the Display Name of the mailbox included as content for this subclient.

• Alias Name

Displays the Alias Name of the mailbox included as content for this subclient.

SMTP Address

Displays the Simple Mail Transfer Protocol Address of the mailbox included as content for this subclient.

Mailbox Store

Displays the Mailbox Store in which the mailbox resides.

Configure

Click to discover and change the associations of the mailboxes to the subclients. Any mailboxes included as content for a user-defined backup set/subclient will be automatically excluded from the default backup set/subclient.

Delete Archived messages after successful archive operations

Specifies whether to delete the contents of the mailbox after the data has been successfully archived. Selecting this option will cause the system to delete the data from mailboxes included in subclient content after the data has been successfully archived.

Only backup following folders (separated by ;)

This allows you to configure the Exchange Mailbox *i*DataAgent to backup messages that reside in a specific root-level mailbox folder for the subclient of any backup set. Other folders in the mailbox will not be backed up.

Perform backup using mining off snapshot

Click to run a data protection job from an offline snapshot copy of the Exchange data. Snap mining can improve performance in that it offloads processing on the production application server.

Exchange DB client

Specifies the client computer where the Exchange Database is installed.

Client

Specifies the client computer that was used to create the snapshot.

Agents

Specifies the agent that was used to create the snapshot of the Exchange data.

Instance

Specifies the instance that was used to create the snapshot of the Exchange data.

Backupset

Specifies the backupset that was used to create the snapshot of the Exchange data.

subclient to use

Specifies the subclient that was used to create the snapshot of the Exchange data

Exchange DB subclient to use

Specifies the Exchange Database iDataAgent subclient to use for mining the SnapProtect backup.

Proxy Client

Click and select a proxy computer to run the data protection job of the snapshot on a Proxy Client.

Subclient Properties (Auto-discovery)

Use this dialog box to view and establish the criteria to automatically discover new mailboxes. The criteria that can be configured depends on the assignment method that was selected in **Backup Set Properties (Auto Discover)**. Assignment methods include:

- Regular Expressions
- Database Affinity
- Active Directory User Group Affinity

Automatically add new mailboxes that don't qualify for membership in any of the sub-clients

Specifies whether to assign auto-discovered mailboxes to the contents of this subclient. This is useful in cases where mailboxes have not been assigned to any other subclient within the Backup Set. This option applies only to the default subclient. Clearing this option will disable auto-discovery on the default subclient.

Add Mailbox Display Name

Displays a list of mailbox display name patterns i.e., regular expressions. Mailboxes that match the specified patterns entered in **Mailbox Display Names** will be automatically discovered and assigned to this subclient. This display pane is enabled when the **Match Mailboxes by Regular Expressions** option was selected in Backup Set Properties (Auto Discover).

Mailbox Display Names

Use this space to enter a mailbox display name pattern using regular expressions (i.e., wildcards). See Wildcards for a list of supported wildcards.

Wildcard Example	Description
Accounting*	Auto-discovers any mailbox display name that begins with Accounting followed by any number of any characters (e.g., Accounting Mailbox, Accounting Manager, etc.).
[!ei]nsure	Auto-discovers any mailbox display name that ends with nsure but does not begin with e or i (e.g., unsure).
[!a-k]Lee	Auto-discovers any mailbox display name that does not begin with a through k and that ends with Lee (e.g., xLee, yLee, etc.).

Add

Click to commit the mailbox display name pattern for auto-discovery entered in **Mailbox Display Names** and add it the **Add Mailbox Display Name** display pane. This button is enabled when the **Match Mailboxes by Regular Expressions** option was selected in Backup Set Properties (Auto Discover).

Remove

Click to delete the selected mailbox display name pattern. This button is enabled when the **Match Mailboxes by Regular Expressions** option was selected in Backup Set Properties (Auto Discover).

Newly discovered mailboxes from the following mailbox stores will automatically be associated with this subclient

Displays a list of databases. Mailboxes in these databases will be automatically discovered and assigned to this subclient. This display pane is enabled when the **Database Affinity** option is selected in Backup Set Properties (Auto Discover).

The new discovered mailboxes of the following AD User Group will be backed up to this subclient

Displays a list of the Active Directory User Groups. Mailboxes in these AD User Groups will be automatically discovered and assigned to this subclient. This display pane is enabled when the **AD User Group Affinity** option is selected in Backup Set Properties (Auto Discover).

Configuration

Click to configure the databases or AD User Groups that will be used to automatically discover mailboxes and assign them to this subclient.

Back to Top

Configure Mailbox Stores for Auto-discovery

Use this dialog box to change the assignment of databases to subclients. Mailboxes in these databases will be automatically discovered and assigned to this subclient.

Mailbox Store

Displays the name of the database where newly discovered mailboxes for the assigned subclient will be backed up.

Subclient

Displays the name of the subclient whose newly discovered mailboxes will be backed up to the assigned database. To change the subclient assignment, click on the subclient and select a different one from the drop-down list.

Change all selected stores to:

Lists subclients that can be assigned to databases for auto-discovery. To change the subclient assignment, select one or more databases and click a subclient in the list.

Configure AD User Group for Auto-discovery

Use this dialog box to add or change Active Directory (AD) User Groups. Mailboxes in these AD User Groups will be automatically discovered and assigned to this subclient.

AD User Group Name

Displays the name of the Active Directory User Group where newly discovered mailboxes for this subclient will be backed up.

Subclient

Displays the name of the subclient that is assigned to the Active Directory User Group. Newly discovered mailboxes that reside in the AD User Group will be assigned to this subclient. To change the assignment, click on the subclient and select a different one from the drop-down list.

Move all selected items to:

Lists subclients that can be assigned to Active Directory User Groups. To change the subclient assignment, select one or more Active Directory User Groups and click a subclient in the list.

Discover

Specifies to discover an Active Directory User Group. When clicked, the Authenticate Active Directory Domain Controller dialog box will prompt you to provide authentication information before proceeding with the discovery process.

Configure Subclient Mailbox Affinity

Mailbox Affinity

Use this list to select the assignment method by which newly discovered mailboxes will be included in the contents of user-defined subclients. To change the assignment method, select one from the list. Choose from the following assignment methods:

• Ad Hoc

Manual assignment of newly discovered mailboxes.

• Mailbox

Automatic assignment of newly discovered mailboxes that match a wildcard pattern or mailbox name specified in the Subclient Properties (Mailboxes) dialog.

• Active Directory User Group

Automatic assignment of newly discovered mailboxes by Active Directory User Group specified in the Subclient Properties (Mailboxes) dialog.

Subclient Properties (Pre/Post Process)

Use the Pre/Post Process tab to add, modify or view Pre/Post processes for the selected subclient.

Pre-Backup process

Displays the name/path of the backup that you want to run before the respective phase. You can use this space to enter a path for the backup process that will execute before this phase on the subclient. Click **Browse** to search for and select the name/path of the process. The system allows the use of spaces in the name/path, provided they begin with an opening quotation mark and end with a closing quotation mark.

Post-Backup process

Displays the name/path of the backup process that you want to run after the respective phase. You can use this space to enter a path for the backup process that will execute after this phase on the subclient. Click **Browse** to search for and select the name/path of the process. The system allows the use of spaces in the name/path, provided they begin with an opening quotation mark and end with a closing quotation mark.

Run Post Backup Process for all attempts

Specifies whether this process will execute for all attempts to run the phase. Selecting this option will execute the post backup process for all attempts to run the phase, including situations where the job phase is interrupted, suspended, or fails. Otherwise, when the checkbox is cleared the specified process will only execute for successful, killed, or failed jobs.

PreSnap process

Displays the name/path of the Snap process that you want to run before the respective phase. You can use this space to add or modify PreSnap processes for a subclient. Click **Browse** to search for and select the name/path of the process. The system allows the use of spaces in the name/path, provided they begin with an opening quotation mark and end with a closing quotation mark.

PostSnap process

Displays the name/path of the Snap process that you want to run after the respective phase. You can use this space to add or modify PostSnap processes for a subclient. Click **Browse** to search for and select the name/path of the process. The system allows the use of spaces in the name/path, provided they begin with an opening quotation mark and end with a closing quotation mark.

On Source

Specifies whether the PreSnap/PostSnap process will execute on the source computer.

On Proxy

Specifies whether the PreSnap/PostSnap process will execute on the proxy computer.

Browse

Click to search for and select the Pre/Post Process.

Run As / User Account

Displays either the Local System Account, or for added security, another account as having permission to run these commands.

Change

Click to add or modify the account that has permission to run these commands.

Back to Top

Storage Device

Use this dialog box to establish the storage device related settings on the selected subclient. Note that all the options described in this help may not be available and only the options displayed in the dialog box are applicable to the agent or enabler for which the information is being displayed.

The following tabs are displayed:

- (Data) Storage Policy
- Data Transfer Option
- Deduplication

STORAGE POLICY

Use this tab to select or view storage policy settings on the selected subclient.

Data/Database/Transaction Log Storage Policy

Displays the storage policy to which this subclient is currently associated. To associate a storage policy to a new subclient or to change the storage policy associated with an existing subclient, click one in the list.

Incremental Storage Policy

Displays the name of the Incremental Storage Policy associated with this subclient, if the storage policy has the Incremental Storage Policy option enabled.

Data Paths

Click to view or modify the data paths associated with the primary storage policy copy of the selected storage policy.

Number of Data/Database/Transaction Log Backup Streams

Displays the number of streams used for backup operations. To change the number of streams, click one in the list. For DB2 DPF, be sure to set the appropriate number of streams for each database partition by double-clicking the appropriate **Stream** space and typing the desired number.

Client/Instance/Status/Stream

Displays the names of the instances according to current backup priority along with other associated information that are included in the Oracle RAC node. To change the backup priority of the instances, click the instance name as appropriate and use the directional arrows provided.

Maximum Backup Streams

For Informix, displays the maximum number of streams used for database backup operations, which is determined from the ONCONFIG file. The number of streams for backups cannot be set currently from the CommCell Console. Instead, you must set the BAR_MAX_BACKUP parameter in the \$ONCONFIG file on the Informix client. Also, the number of streams specified by the storage policy must be greater than or equal to the number specified by the BAR_MAX_BACKUP parameter.

Data Threshold Streams

For Oracle RAC, specifies whether to run the backup job immediately when the total number of reserved streams is greater than or equal to the value in this field. If you click this option, use the space provided to change this value if desired.

Create Storage Policy

Click to launch the Create a Storage Policy wizard. Once the storage policy has been created, it will be displayed in the list of storage policies to which the selected subclient can be associated.

Buffer Size

Use this space to specify the size (in 4 KB pages) of each buffer to be used for building the backup image. The minimum value is 8, and the default value is 1024. If you select value 0, the value of the backbufz database manager configuration parameter will be used as the buffer allocation size.

DATA TRANSFER OPTION

Use this tab to establish the options for data transfer. Note that all the options described in this help may not be available and only the options displayed in the dialog box are applicable to the agent for which the information is being displayed.

Software Compression

Indicates whether software compression for the subclient or instance is enabled or disabled, and if enabled whether it is performed on the client or MediaAgent computer.

• On Client

Click to enable software compression on the client computer.

• On MediaAgent

Click to enable software compression on the MediaAgent computer.

• Use Storage Policy Settings

Click to use the settings enabled on deduplicated storage policy copy.

This option applies when subclient is associated with a storage policy copy that is deduplicated. See Copy Properties (Deduplication) - Advanced tab for compression settings on deduplicated storage policy copy.

• Off

Click to disable software compression.

Note that hardware compression has priority over the software compression. Hardware compression is established in the Data Path Properties dialog box. The above software compression option will take effect when the data path is associated with a disk library, or when hardware compression is disabled in the data path associated with tape libraries.



For non-deduplicated storage policy copy, select **On Client** or **On MediaAgent** options to turn on compression, depending upon your environment.

Resource Tuning

Indicates the processes used by the client to transfer data based and whether bandwidth throttling is enabled or not.

Network Agents

Specifies the number of data pipes/processes that the client uses to transfer data over a network. Increasing this value may provide better throughput if the network and the network configuration in your environment can support it. On non-UNIX computers, the default value is 2 and a maximum of 4 can be established if necessary. On UNIX computers the default value is 1 and a maximum of 2 can be established if necessary.

• Throttle Network Bandwidth (MB/HR)

Specifies whether the backup throughput is controlled or not. (By default this option is not selected and therefore the throughput is not controlled). When selected, use the space to specify a value for the throughput. By default, this is set to 500. The minimum value is 1 and there is no limit to the maximum value. (In this case the backup throughput will be restricted to the maximum bandwidth on the network.)

Use this option to set the backup throughput, based on the network bandwidth in your environment. Use this option to reduce the backup throughput, so that the entire network bandwidth is not consumed, especially in slow links. Increasing this value will end up consuming the bandwidth with the maximum throughput limited to the network bandwidth capability.

Note that throttling is done on a per Network Agent basis.

Application Read Size

This option specifies the amount of application data (such as SQL data, Windows File System data, and virtual machine data) backup jobs will read for each unit transferred to the MediaAgent.

The default value for this options is 64KB; however, this value may be increased to reduce the amount of data read from the given application, which in turn reduces the amount of I/O operations performed against it. As a result, overall backup performance may increase. However, backup memory usage may also increase, which may inadvertently consume additional resources from the application. Thus, it is recommended that this value be set at either the default value or match the block size directed by the application.

DEDUPLICATION

Use this tab to establish the options for deduplication on the subclient. It indicates whether deduplication for the subclient is enabled or disabled, and if enabled whether the signature generation (a component of deduplication) is performed on the client or MediaAgent computer.

Note that deduplication is supported on disk storage devices. So the deduplication options are applicable only if the subclient is associated with a Storage Policy containing disk storage.

On Client

Click to enable signature generation on the client computer.

On MediaAgent

Click to enable signature generation on the MediaAgent computer.

Back to Top

Filters

Use this dialog box to add, modify, or view the filters on the selected subclient.

Include Global Filters

Displays a list of options for enabling or disabling Global Filters which can be used in addition to the filters set at the subclient level to exclude data from data protection operations for this subclient. To change the setting, select one of the following values from the list:

- OFF Disables Global Filters for this subclient.
- **ON** Enables Global Filters for this subclient.
- Use Cell Level Policy Enables or disables Global Filters for this subclient depending on whether the Use Global Filters on All Subclients option is enabled or disabled on the Control Panel (Global Filters) dialog. If the Use Global Filters on All Subclients option is enabled, then the Use Cell Level Policy option will enable Global Filters on this subclient. If the Use Global Filters on All Subclients option is disabled, then the Use Cell Level Policy option will disable Global Filters on this subclient.

Exclude the following folders

Displays entries that will be excluded from data protection operations for this subclient.

Exclude the folders that contain the following patterns

Displays wildcard patterns to filter mailboxes from backups. The pattern you enter will be applied to all content defined for the subclient. Enter each wildcard pattern on a separate line. For a comprehensive wildcard list, see Wildcards.

Wildcard Example	Description
Sent*	To filter out a folder which begins with Sent, specify the name of the folder and the asterisk * wildcard with no delimiters.
Sent Items\test*	To filter out a subfolder called test, specify the full path including the leader \setminus backslash.
\test	To filter out any path that ends in a folder name, use the full path including the leader $\$ backslash and the asterisk $*$ wildcard for the first level.

Add

Click to manually add an entry to be included in, or excluded from, data protection operations for this subclient.

Edit

Click to manually edit an entry to be included in, or excluded from, data protection operations for this subclient.

Delete

Click to delete a selected filter entry.

Back to Top

Wildcards

The supported wildcards include:

Wildcards	Description

*	Any number of any characters. For example:
	Accounting*
	• For search operations, the above wildcard pattern returns search results for any messages or items that match the pattern "Accounting" followed by any number of any characters, found in any of the following fields (where applicable): Subject, From, To, Cc, Bcc, Content, or Attachment; (e.g., Accounting Meeting Minutes, Accounting Manager, Accounting Records, etc.).
	• For filtering operations, the above wildcard pattern filters any mailbox folder name that begins with "Accounting" followed by any number of any characters (e.g., Accounting Mailbox, Accounting Folder, etc.). For more filtering examples using this wildcard character, see the note at the bottom of this page.
	• For auto-discovery operations, the above wildcard pattern auto-discovers any mailbox display name that begins with "Accounting" followed by any number of any characters (e.g., Accounting Mailbox, Accounting Manager, etc.).
?	Any one character. For example:
	user_group?For search operations, the above wildcard pattern returns search results for any messages or items that match the pattern
	beginning with "user_group" followed by any one character, found in any of the following fields (where applicable): Subject, From, To, Cc, Bcc, Content, or Attachment; (e.g., user_groupA, user_group1, etc.).
	• For filtering operations, the above wildcard pattern filters any mailbox folder name that begins with "user_group" followed by any one character (e.g., user_groupA, user_group1, etc.).
	• For auto-discovery operations, the above wildcard pattern auto-discovers any mailbox display name that begins with "user_group" followed by any one character (e.g., user_groupA, user_group1, etc.).
[]	Any range of characters. For example: [تا] im
	 For filtering operations, the above wildcard pattern excludes from data protection operations any mailbox folder name that begins with "J" or "T" and ends with "im" (e.g., Jim, Tim).
	• For auto-discovery operations, the above wildcard pattern auto-discovers any mailbox display name that begins with "J" or "T" and ends with "im" (e.g., Jim, Tim).
	[a-k]Lee
	• For filtering operations, the above wildcard pattern excludes from data protection operations any mailbox folder name that begins with any character in the range of "a" through "k" inclusive and that ends with "Lee" (e.g., aLee, bLee, etc.).
	• For auto-discovery operations, the above wildcard pattern auto-discovers any mailbox display name that begins with any character in the range of "a" through "k" inclusive and that ends with "Lee" (e.g., aLee, bLee, etc.).
	This wildcard cannot be used for search operations.
[!]	The negation of a range of characters. For example:
	[!ei]nsure
	• For filtering operations, the above wildcard pattern excludes from data protection operations any mailbox folder name that ends with "nsure" but does not begin with "e" or "i" (e.g., unsure).
	• For auto-discovery operations, the above wildcard pattern auto-discovers any mailbox display name that ends with "nsure" but does not begin with "e" or "i" (e.g., unsure).
	[!a-k]Lee
	• For filtering operations, the above wildcard pattern excludes from data protection operations any mailbox folder name that does not begin with "a" through "k" and that ends with "Lee" (e.g., xLee, yLee, etc.).
	• For filtering operations, the above wildcard pattern excludes from data protection operations any mailbox folder name that
	 For filtering operations, the above wildcard pattern excludes from data protection operations any mailbox folder name that does not begin with "a" through "k" and that ends with "Lee" (e.g., xLee, yLee, etc.). For auto-discovery operations, the above wildcard pattern auto-discovers any mailbox display name that does not begin
<u>\</u>	 For filtering operations, the above wildcard pattern excludes from data protection operations any mailbox folder name that does not begin with "a" through "k" and that ends with "Lee" (e.g., xLee, yLee, etc.). For auto-discovery operations, the above wildcard pattern auto-discovers any mailbox display name that does not begin with "a" through "k" and that ends with "Lee" (e.g., xLee, yLee, etc.).
<u> </u>	 For filtering operations, the above wildcard pattern excludes from data protection operations any mailbox folder name that does not begin with "a" through "k" and that ends with "Lee" (e.g., xLee, yLee, etc.). For auto-discovery operations, the above wildcard pattern auto-discovers any mailbox display name that does not begin with "a" through "k" and that ends with "Lee" (e.g., xLee, yLee, etc.). This wildcard cannot be used for search operations. You can also use a combination of wildcards in a single expression, if the wildcards are supported for the type of operation you are performing. For example, if you wanted to auto-discover all mailbox display names beginning with any characters in the range of "A" through "K" inclusive followed by any number of any characters, you would enter the following wildcard
<u>\</u>	 For filtering operations, the above wildcard pattern excludes from data protection operations any mailbox folder name that does not begin with "a" through "k" and that ends with "Lee" (e.g., xLee, yLee, etc.). For auto-discovery operations, the above wildcard pattern auto-discovers any mailbox display name that does not begin with "a" through "k" and that ends with "Lee" (e.g., xLee, yLee, etc.). This wildcard cannot be used for search operations. You can also use a combination of wildcards in a single expression, if the wildcards are supported for the type of operation you are performing. For example, if you wanted to auto-discover all mailbox display names beginning with any characters in the range of "A" through "K" inclusive followed by any number of any characters, you would enter the following wildcard combination: [A-K]* Keep in mind that the path entered for the subclient filter is based on what level is being filtered out. The examples provided below illustrate this point:
<u></u>	 For filtering operations, the above wildcard pattern excludes from data protection operations any mailbox folder name that does not begin with "a" through "k" and that ends with "Lee" (e.g., xLee, yLee, etc.). For auto-discovery operations, the above wildcard pattern auto-discovers any mailbox display name that does not begin with "a" through "k" and that ends with "Lee" (e.g., xLee, yLee, etc.). This wildcard cannot be used for search operations. You can also use a combination of wildcards in a single expression, if the wildcards are supported for the type of operation you are performing. For example, if you wanted to auto-discover all mailbox display names beginning with any characters in the range of "A" through "K" inclusive followed by any number of any characters, you would enter the following wildcard combination: [A-K]* Keep in mind that the path entered for the subclient filter is based on what level is being filtered out. The examples provided below illustrate this point: To filter out a root folder called "Sent Items", specify the name of the folder and the asterisk "*" wildcard with no delimiters, as shown in the following example:
<u>~</u> §	 For filtering operations, the above wildcard pattern excludes from data protection operations any mailbox folder name that does not begin with "a" through "k" and that ends with "Lee" (e.g., xLee, yLee, etc.). For auto-discovery operations, the above wildcard pattern auto-discovers any mailbox display name that does not begin with "a" through "k" and that ends with "Lee" (e.g., xLee, yLee, etc.). This wildcard cannot be used for search operations. You can also use a combination of wildcards in a single expression, if the wildcards are supported for the type of operation you are performing. For example, if you wanted to auto-discover all mailbox display names beginning with any characters in the range of "A" through "K" inclusive followed by any number of any characters, you would enter the following wildcard combination: [A-K]* Keep in mind that the path entered for the subclient filter is based on what level is being filtered out. The examples provided below illustrate this point: To filter out a root folder called "Sent Items", specify the name of the folder and the asterisk "*" wildcard with no delimiters, as shown in the following example: Sent*
<u></u>	 For filtering operations, the above wildcard pattern excludes from data protection operations any mailbox folder name that does not begin with "a" through "k" and that ends with "Lee" (e.g., xLee, yLee, etc.). For auto-discovery operations, the above wildcard pattern auto-discovers any mailbox display name that does not begin with "a" through "k" and that ends with "Lee" (e.g., xLee, yLee, etc.). This wildcard cannot be used for search operations. You can also use a combination of wildcards in a single expression, if the wildcards are supported for the type of operation you are performing. For example, if you wanted to auto-discover all mailbox display names beginning with any characters in the range of "A" through "K" inclusive followed by any number of any characters, you would enter the following wildcard combination: [A-K]* Keep in mind that the path entered for the subclient filter is based on what level is being filtered out. The examples provided below illustrate this point: To filter out a root folder called "Sent Items", specify the name of the folder and the asterisk "*" wildcard with no delimiters, as shown in the following example: Sent* To filter out a subfolder called "test", specify the full path including the leader "\", as shown in the following example:
<u>~</u>	 For filtering operations, the above wildcard pattern excludes from data protection operations any mailbox folder name that does not begin with "a" through "k" and that ends with "Lee" (e.g., xLee, yLee, etc.). For auto-discovery operations, the above wildcard pattern auto-discovers any mailbox display name that does not begin with "a" through "k" and that ends with "Lee" (e.g., xLee, yLee, etc.). This wildcard cannot be used for search operations. You can also use a combination of wildcards in a single expression, if the wildcards are supported for the type of operation you are performing. For example, if you wanted to auto-discover all mailbox display names beginning with any characters in the range of "A" through "K" inclusive followed by any number of any characters, you would enter the following wildcard combination: [A-K]* Keep in mind that the path entered for the subclient filter is based on what level is being filtered out. The examples provided below illustrate this point: To filter out a root folder called "Sent Items", specify the name of the folder and the asterisk "*" wildcard with no delimiters, as shown in the following example: Sent*
<u>\$</u>	 For filtering operations, the above wildcard pattern excludes from data protection operations any mailbox folder name that does not begin with "a" through "k" and that ends with "Lee" (e.g., xLee, yLee, etc.). For auto-discovery operations, the above wildcard pattern auto-discovers any mailbox display name that does not begin with "a" through "k" and that ends with "Lee" (e.g., xLee, yLee, etc.). This wildcard cannot be used for search operations. You can also use a combination of wildcards in a single expression, if the wildcards are supported for the type of operation you are performing. For example, if you wanted to auto-discover all mailbox display names beginning with any characters in the range of "A" through "K" inclusive followed by any number of any characters, you would enter the following wildcard combination: [A-K]* Keep in mind that the path entered for the subclient filter is based on what level is being filtered out. The examples provided below illustrate this point: To filter out a root folder called "Sent Items", specify the name of the folder and the asterisk "*" wildcard with no delimiters, as shown in the following example: Sent* To filter out a subfolder called "test", specify the full path including the leader "\", as shown in the following example: Sent Items\test* To filter out any path that ends in a folder name, use the full path including the leader "\" and the asterisk "*" wildcard for the first level, as shown in the following example:
<u>\$</u>	 For filtering operations, the above wildcard pattern excludes from data protection operations any mailbox folder name that does not begin with "a" through "k" and that ends with "Lee" (e.g., xLee, yLee, etc.). For auto-discovery operations, the above wildcard pattern auto-discovers any mailbox display name that does not begin with "a" through "k" and that ends with "Lee" (e.g., xLee, yLee, etc.). For auto-discovery operations, the above wildcard pattern auto-discovers any mailbox display name that does not begin with "a" through "k" and that ends with "Lee" (e.g., xLee, yLee, etc.). This wildcard cannot be used for search operations. You can also use a combination of wildcards in a single expression, if the wildcards are supported for the type of operation you are performing. For example, if you wanted to auto-discover all mailbox display names beginning with any characters in the range of "A" through "K" inclusive followed by any number of any characters, you would enter the following wildcard combination: [A-K]* Keep in mind that the path entered for the subclient filter is based on what level is being filtered out. The examples provided below illustrate this point: To filter out a root folder called "Sent Items", specify the name of the folder and the asterisk "*" wildcard with no delimiters, as shown in the following example: Sent* To filter out a subfolder called "test", specify the full path including the leader "\", as shown in the following example: Sent Items\test* To filter out any path that ends in a folder name, use the full path including the leader "\" and the asterisk "*" wildcard for

I I	
	• To filter all directories that begin with a particular word on all drives (e.g. My_Filter), use the global filter:
	*:**\My_Filter***
	• If you know the drive letter to filter, use the subclient filter as follows:
	C:**\My_Filter***
	 To filter every directory named "temp" on all drives, use the global filter:
	*:**\temp**
	• Or use the subclient filter:
	C:**\temp**
	• To filter every "recycler" directory on all drives, use the global filter:
	*:**\RECYCLER**
	Or use the subclient filter:
	C:**\RECYCLER**
1	Do not use "temp*" when all you want to filter is temp, as it will get "template" and other directories with word "temp".

Back To Top

Encryption

Use this dialog box to select the data encryption options for the selected content. When accessing this dialog box from the Subclient Properties Encryption tab, this setting applies only to the selected subclient content for operations run from the CommCell Console. When accessing this dialog box from the Instance Properties Encryption tab, this setting applies only to third-party Command Line operations. The functionality is not propagated to the Subclient Properties Encryption tabs.

None

When selected, no encryption will take place during a data protection operations.

Media Only (MediaAgent Side)

When selected, for data protection operations, data is transmitted without encryption and then encrypted prior to storage. During data recovery operations, data is decrypted by the client.

When using this setting in conjunction with the client property **With a Pass-Phrase**, you will be required to provide a pass-phrase for data recovery operations unless you export the client pass-phrase to the destination client(s). When using pass-phrase security for third-party Command Line operations or DataArchiver Agents stub recovery operations, you must export the pass- phrase to the destination client.

Network and Media (Agent Side)

When selected, for data protection operations, data is encrypted before transmission and is stored encrypted on the media. During data recovery operations, data is decrypted by the client.

When using this setting in conjunction with the client property **With a Pass-Phrase**, you will be required to provide a pass-phrase for data recovery operations unless you export the client pass-phrase to the destination clients.

Network Only (Agent Encrypts, MediaAgent Decrypts)

When selected, for data protection operations, data is encrypted for transmission and then decrypted prior to storage on the media. During data recovery operations, data is encrypted by the MediaAgent and then decrypted in the client.

When using this setting in conjunction with the client property **With a Pass-Phrase**, you will not be required to provide a pass-phrase for data recovery operations.

Script Preview

Click to display the backup script, based on the current subclient configuration, that will be submitted to RMAN when backups are performed for the selected Oracle subclient.

Job Initiation

Select from the following options. Note that all the options described in this help may not be available and only the options displayed in the dialog box are applicable to the operation for which the information is being displayed.

Immediate

Run This Job Now

Specifies this job will run immediately.

Schedule

Specifies this job will be scheduled. When you click Configure, the Schedule Details dialog box will open and allow you to configure the schedule pattern.

Result file location on CommServe

This option is only applicable for List Media operations. Specifies the name of the file in which the results of the scheduled list media job must be saved. Click **Browse** to access to the **Directory Browse** dialog box which allows you to select the folder / file in the CommServe computer.

Automatic Copy

Specifies that an auxiliary copy operation will be performed at the interval specified. This operation will occur when new data that must be copied is found on the primary copy.

Interval

The time interval in which the Automatic Copy will be performed. The default interval is 30 minutes.

Save As Script

Click to open the Save As Script dialog, which allows you to save this operation and the selected options as a script file (in XML format). The script can later be executed from the Command Line Interface using qoperation execute command.

When you save an operation as a script, each option in the dialog will have a corresponding xml parameter in the script file. When executing the script, you can modify the value for any of these XML parameters as per need.

To view the XML values for each of the options in the dialog, see the following:

Operations Supporting Save As Script

Configure Alert

Provides the necessary options to configure the alerts associated with this operation.

• Add/Modify Alert

When clicked, opens the Alert Wizard to configure necessary alerts for this operation.

Delete Alert

When clicked, deletes any existing alerts that are already configured.

Advanced

Click to select additional options.

Script Preview

Click to display the restore script, based on the selected restore options, that will be submitted to RMAN when restores are performed for the selected Oracle client.

Startup

Select from the following options. Note that all the options described in this help may not be available and only the options displayed in the dialog box are applicable to the operation for which the information is being displayed.

Priority

• Use Default Priority

If selected, the default priority for this type of job will be used in determining how the Job Manager will allocate resources for this job.

• Change Priority

Use this option to manually specify the priority for the job, between 0 (highest priority) and 999 (lowest priority). The Job Manager will use the priority setting when allocating the required resources. This is useful if you have jobs that are very important and must complete, or jobs that can be moved to a lower priority.

Start up in suspended state

Specifies that this job will start in the Job Controller in a suspended state and cannot run until the job is manually resumed using the **Resume** option. This option can be used to add a level of manual control when a job is started. For example, you could schedule jobs to start in the suspended state and then choose which scheduled jobs complete by resuming the operation started in the suspended state.

Description

Use this field to enter a description about the entity. This description can include information about the entity's content, cautionary notes, etc.

Alert

Use this tab to configure an alert for a schedule policy.

Configure Alert

• Alert

The currently configured Alert.

Add/Modify Alert

When clicked, opens the Alert Wizard to configure alerts for this operation.

• Delete Alert

When clicked, deletes any existing alerts that are already configured.